

software
technical
reference



hp LaserJet 9055mfp
hp LaserJet 9065mfp



HP LaserJet 9055mfp/9065mfp

Software Technical Reference

Copyright

(c) 2004 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 2, 4/2004

Trademarks

Adobe (R), Adobe Photoshop (R), Acrobat (R), PostScript (R), and the Acrobat logo (R) are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Java (TM) is a US trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc.

Linux is a U.S. registered trademark of Linus Torvalds

Helvetica* and Times* are trademarks of Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries in the U.S. and other countries/regions.

Microsoft (R), Windows (R), and Windows NT (R) are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Pentium (R) is a trademark or registered trademark of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

TrueType (TM) is a US trademark of Apple Computer, Inc.

UNIX (R) is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

EnergyStar (R) and the Energy Star logo (R) are US registered marks of the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

Table of contents

1 Purpose and scope	1
Introduction	1
HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp	2
Printing-system software CD-ROM.....	3
HP LaserJet print drivers	4
Printing-system components	4
Printing-system and installer	4
HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp software CD-ROM for Windows systems	4
Installer features	6
Installable components	7
Print drivers	7
PCL 6 and PS drivers	7
Windows 98, Me, NT 4.0, 2000, XP, and Server 2003 driver versions	7
Macintosh and Macintosh-compatible system-driver versions	8
Additional driver availability	8
HP LaserJet documentation	9
HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp Quick Reference Guide	9
HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing-system install notes	10
Wall poster for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.....	11
HP LaserJet 9055mfp/9065mfp system administrator guide.....	11
HP Driver Preconfiguration guide.....	12
HP Embedded Web Server user guide.....	12
HP Jetdirect administrator's guide.....	13
HP Device Installer Customization Wizard.....	13
Structure and availability of the software CD-ROM	14
In-box file layout	14
HP LaserJet software CD-ROM, Windows partition	14
HP LaserJet software CD-ROM, Macintosh partition	15
Availability and fulfillment	15
In-box CD-ROMs	15
Web deployment	16
Printing-system software	16
Standalone drivers	16
Other operating systems	17
Software component availability	17
Software component localization	19
Additional productivity tools	22
HP Web Jetadmin	22
2 Software description	25
Introduction.....	25
Supported operating systems	25
Technology background information	26

Driver Configuration.....	26
Bidirectional communication.....	26
Enterprise AutoConfiguration.....	27
HP Driver Preconfiguration	30
Lockable features	30
Continuous export	31
HP Embedded Web Server	31
The EWS frame.....	32
Information tab	32
Links to off-product solutions.....	33
Device Status page	34
Configuration page	35
Settings tab	36
Configure device	37
Alerts	38
Networking tab	39
Configuration section	39
Security section	40
Diagnostics section	40
Network settings	40
HP Toolbox	40
HP Toolbox requirements.....	40
To view the HP Toolbox.....	42
The HP Toolbox frame	42
Status Tab.....	43
Alerts tab.....	44
Set up Status Alerts page.....	45
Administrative Settings page.....	46
Euro character	46
Remote firmware update	47
Determining the current level of firmware	47
Downloading the new firmware from the HP Web site	47
Remote firmware update using FTP through a browser	48
Remote firmware update by using FTP on a direct network connection	48
Windows operating systems	49
Macintosh operating systems	49
Remote firmware update through a local Windows port	50
Windows 98 or Windows Me	50
Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003	51
Remote firmware update through a Windows network	51
Remote firmware update for UNIX systems	52
Remote firmware update using Fetch (Mac OS 9.x only)	52
Remote firmware update using the HP LaserJet Utility (Mac OS 9.x only)	52
Remote firmware update using the LPR command	53
Remote firmware update using HP Web Jetadmin	53
MFP messages during the firmware update	54
Troubleshooting a firmware update	55
Printing .PDF documents from a command line	56
File printing by using FTP through a browser	56
Command-line printing by using FTP on a direct network connection	56
Windows operating systems	56
Macintosh operating systems	57
Command-line printing by using a local Windows port	57
Windows 98 or Windows Me	58
Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003	58

Command-line printing in a Windows network	58
Command-line printing in UNIX systems	59
File printing using Fetch (Mac OS 9.x only)	59
File printing by using the HP LaserJet Utility (Mac OS 9.x only)	59
Command-line printing using the LPR command	60
Driver-feature comparison in various operating systems	60
Job stream output	61
Stream output modes	61
Connectivity	61
Bidirectional communication	62
HP Driver Preconfiguration	62
UI features	62
Help features	63
Constraint support	63
Document layout	64
Job storage	65
Custom preference storage/recall	65
Print controls	65
Watermarks	66
Paper sizes	67
Paper types	68
Paper sources	69
Alternative source/paper type	70
Printing destination	70
Installable options	70
PS-specific features	71

3 HP traditional print drivers for Windows 73

Introduction	73
HP traditional PCL 6 driver features	73
Access to drivers	73
Access to drivers in Windows 98 and Windows Me	74
Help system	74
What's this? Help	74
Context-sensitive Help	74
Constraint messages	75
Bubble Help	76
Finishing tab features	77
Print Task Quick Sets	77
Default Print Settings	78
Booklet on 11x17.....	81
Booklet on A3.....	81
Booklet on A4.....	81
Booklet on Letter.....	81
User Guide Print Settings	82
Type new Quick Set name here	82
Document Options	82
Print on Both Sides check box	82
Automatically printing on both sides	82
Flip Pages Up	83
Booklet printing	83
Book and booklet printing	84
Pages per Sheet	85
Print Page Borders	86

Page Order	86
Document preview image	86
Print Quality group box	87
Print Quality Details for the PCL 6 driver	87
Current Setting group box	87
Output Settings	87
Font Settings group box	88
EconoMode.....	88
Output tab features	89
Print Task Quick Sets	89
Finishing Options.....	90
Document preview image	90
Output Bin Options	91
Effects tab features	92
Print Task Quick Sets	92
Fit To Page group box	93
Print Document On setting	93
Scale to Fit option	93
% of Normal Size option	94
Watermarks group box	94
Watermarks drop-down menu	94
First Page Only check box	95
Edit button (Watermark Details)	95
Current Watermarks	96
Watermark Message	96
Message Angle	96
Document preview image	96
Font Attributes	96
Paper tab features	98
Print Task Quick Sets	98
Paper Options group box	99
Size is: drop-down menu.....	99
Use Different Paper/Covers check box.....	100
Source Is: drop-down menu.....	100
Type is: drop-down menu	100
Custom button	101
Name drop-down menu	102
Dynamic command button	103
Custom size options (width and height controls)	104
Custom width and height control limits	104
Dynamic measurement units button	105
Close button	105
Use Different Paper/Covers options.....	106
First Page options	108
Front Cover from Feeder options.....	108
Front Cover options.....	109
Other Pages options	110
Last Page options	111
Back Cover options	112
Back Cover from Feeder options.....	113
Document preview image	114
MFP image.....	115
Job Storage tab features	115
Job Storage tab	116
Print Task Quick Sets	117

Status group box (unlabeled).....	117
Job Storage Mode options	117
Off	117
Proof and Hold	117
Private Job	118
Using a PIN for Private Job	118
Quick Copy	118
Stored Job	118
Job Notification Options	119
User Name	119
Job Name	119
PIN	120
Using Job Storage options when printing	120
Releasing a Job Storage print job	120
Deleting a Job Storage print job	121
Basics tab features	122
Print Task Quick Sets	123
Copies option	123
Orientation options	123
Document preview image	124
About	124
MFP Properties tabs	125
NT Forms tab features	125
Configuring the trays	126
Configure tab features	126
Paper Handling Options group box	127
HP Post Insertion Kit	128
Mopier Enabled	128
Optional Paper Destinations	129
Punch Unit	129
Optional Paper Sources	129
Other Options	129
More configuration options	130
Automatic configuration	132
MFP image	133
HP traditional PS driver features	133
PS 3 emulation support for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp	133
Access to drivers	133
What's this Help	134
Page Setup tab features	135
Advanced tab features.....	136
Paper/Output settings.....	136
Graphic settings.....	137
Document Options settings.....	137
Page Layout Option.....	137
PostScript Options.....	137
Printer Features.....	138
Job Storage features.....	140
Job Storage tab	141
Status group box (unlabeled).....	141
Job Storage Mode	142
Off	142
Proof and Hold	142
Private Job	142
Using a PIN for Private Job	143

Quick Copy	143
Stored Job	143
Job Identification options.....	144
User Name.....	144
Job Name.....	144
PIN.....	144
Using Job Storage options when printing	145
Releasing a Job Storage print job	145
Deleting a Job Storage print job	145
Device Settings tab	146
Form to Tray Assignment	147
Font Substitution Table	148
PostScript Device Settings	148
Available PostScript Memory	148
Output Protocol	148
Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job	149
Send Ctrl-D After Each Job	149
Job Timeout	149
Wait Timeout	149
Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline	149
Maximum Font Size to Download as Outline	149
Installable Options	149
Tray 5	150
Printer Hard Disk.....	150
Accessory Output Bin	150
Job Storage.....	150
HP Post Insertion Kit.....	150
Punch Unit.....	150
Printer Memory	150
Mopier Mode	151
Mopier mode and collation	151

4 HP PCL 6 and PS unidrivers for Windows 153

Introduction	153
HP PCL 6 and PS unidriver features	153
Access to drivers	153
Help system	154
What's this? Help	154
Context-sensitive Help	154
Incompatible Print Settings (constraint) messages	154
Advanced tab features	156
Paper/Output settings	157
Copy Count	157
Collated	157
Graphic settings	158
TrueType Font	158
Document Options	158
Advanced Printing Features	158
Print Optimizations (HP PCL 6 unidriver only)	158
PostScript Options (HP PS unidriver only)	158
PostScript Output Option	159
TrueType Font Download Option	159
PostScript Language Level	159
Send PostScript Error Handler	159

Mirrored Output	159
Negative Output.....	159
Printer Features	159
Print All Text as Black	160
Send TrueType as Bitmap (PCL 6 only)	160
Smoothing.....	160
Layout Options	160
Page Order	160
Paper/Quality tab features	161
Print Task Quick Sets	162
Default Print Settings	162
Booklet on 11x17.....	166
Booklet on A3.....	166
Booklet on A4.....	166
Booklet on Letter.....	166
User Guide Print Settings	166
Type new Quick Set name here	166
Paper Options group box	167
Size is:.....	167
Use Different Paper/Covers check box.....	168
Source Is: drop-down menu.....	168
Type is: drop-down menu	168
Use Different Paper/Covers options.....	169
Front Cover from Feeder options.....	170
Front Cover options.....	171
First Page options	173
Other Pages options	173
Last Page options	174
Back Cover options	175
Back Cover from Feeder options.....	176
Document preview image	177
Print Quality group box	178
Effects tab features	179
Print Task Quick Sets	179
Resizing options group box	180
Actual Size setting.....	180
Print Document On setting	180
Scale to Fit option	180
% of Normal Size option	181
Document preview image	181
Watermarks group box	181
Current watermarks	182
Watermark message	183
Message angle	183
Font attributes	183
Name	183
Color	184
Shading	184
Size	184
Style	184
Default settings	184
Finishing tab features	185
Print Task Quick Sets group box	185
Document Options group box	186
Print on Both Sides check box	186

Automatically printing on both sides	186
Flip Pages Up	186
Booklet layout	187
Book and booklet printing	187
Pages per Sheet	188
Print Page Borders	188
Page Order	188
Document preview image	189
Orientation group box	189
Output tab features.....	190
Print Task Quick Sets	190
Output Options.....	191
Document preview image	191
Output Bin Options	192
Job Storage tab features	192
Job Storage tab	193
Print Task Quick Sets.....	194
Status group box (unlabeled).....	194
Job Storage Mode	194
Off	194
Proof and Hold	194
Private Job	195
Using a PIN for Private Job	195
Quick Copy	195
Stored Job	195
Job Notification Options	196
User Name	196
Job Name	197
PIN	197
Using Job Storage options when printing	197
Releasing a Job Storage print job	198
Deleting a Job Storage print job	198
MFP Properties tabs.....	198
Device Settings	198
Form to Tray Assignment	199
External Fonts (PCL 6 only)	200
Installing external fonts	201
Removing external fonts	201
Installable Options	201
Automatic Configuration.....	202
Tray 5	202
Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing) - PS only.....	202
Accessory Output Bin	202
HP Post Insertion Kit.....	202
Punch Unit.....	202
MFP Memory	202
Printer Hard Disk.....	202
Job Storage.....	203
Mopier Mode	203
PostScript Passthrough - PS only.....	204

5 Installing Windows printing-system components 205

Introduction	205
Supported Windows operating systems	205

System requirements	206
Font support	206
Basic fonts	206
Default fonts	206
Installation instructions	211
General installation for Windows 98, Me, NT 4.0, 2000, and XP	212
Installing from the printing-system CD-ROM	212
Installing from a network or from downloaded files	212
Detailed Windows installation	212
Typical Installation dialog box sequence	213
Custom Installation	241
Installing print drivers by using Add Printer.....	243
Installer Customization Wizard for Windows	244
Installer customization wizard.....	244
Running the installer customization wizard.....	244
Dialogs.....	245
Distribution.....	265
Command-line silent install	266
Point and Print installation for Windows 98, Me, NT 4.0, 2000, XP, and 2003	266
Setting a default printer	267

6 Installation for Macintosh and Linux operating systems 269

Introduction	269
System requirements	269
Macintosh	269
Linux	270
UNIX.....	270
Macintosh	270
Macintosh component descriptions	270
HP LaserJet PPDs	270
PDEs (Mac OS X only, 10.1 and later)	270
HP Toolbox.....	271
HP Embedded Web Server	271
Install notes	271
Online help	271
Screen fonts (Mac OS classic)	271
Font support	271
Installing the Macintosh printing system	274
To install the HP LaserJet printing-system software for the Macintosh OS	275
To set up an AppleTalk networked MFP with Mac OS 9.x	275
To set up an MFP with Mac OS X	275
To set up an IP/LPR networked MFP with Mac OS 9.x	276
Uninstalling the Macintosh printing system	276
In-box disk layout	276
Folders and files added through installation of the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp software (Mac OS)	276
Mac OS Classic installation	276
Main Install dialog box sequence	277
HP LaserJet Screen Fonts Installer dialog box sequence	280
Mac OS X installation	282
Main Install dialog box sequence	282

7 Engineering Detail	287
Introduction	287
Media attributes	287
Paper sources and destinations	287
Paper-tray configurations	288
Paper-source commands	288
Media types and sizes	289
PCL 6 custom paper sizes	292
Paper type commands	293
Enabling or disabling HP Toolbox support.....	294
 Index	 295

List of tables

Table 1-1.	Features of the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp	2
Table 1-2.	CD-ROM versions	15
Table 1-3.	Software component availability for HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp	17
Table 1-4.	Software component localization by language, A-I	19
Table 1-5.	Software component localization by language, J-Z	20
Table 1-6.	HP Web Jetadmin support	22
Table 2-1.	Enterprise Autoconfiguration availability in Microsoft Windows and Microsoft Share.....	28
Table 2-2.	Enterprise Autoconfiguration availability in Novell Netware environments.....	29
Table 2-3.	Operating systems that support HP Driver Preconfiguration	31
Table 2-4.	HP Toolbox availability in Microsoft Windows and Microsoft Share.....	41
Table 2-5.	Toolbox availability in Novell Netware environments.....	41
Table 2-6.	Update messages	54
Table 2-7.	Troubleshooting a firmware update	55
Table 2-8.	Troubleshooting a firmware update failure	55
Table 2-9.	Driver support for job stream output feature	61
Table 2-10.	Driver support for stream output modes feature	61
Table 2-11.	Driver support for connectivity features	61
Table 2-12.	Driver support for bidirectional communication features	62
Table 2-13.	Driver support for HP Driver Preconfiguration	62
Table 2-14.	Driver support for UI features	62
Table 2-15.	Driver support for Help features	63
Table 2-16.	Driver support for constraints	63
Table 2-17.	Driver support for document layout features	64
Table 2-18.	Driver support for job storage features	65
Table 2-19.	Driver support for custom preference storage/recall features	65
Table 2-20.	Driver support for print controls	65
Table 2-21.	Driver support for watermarks feature	66
Table 2-22.	Driver support for paper sizes	67
Table 2-23.	Driver support for paper types	68
Table 2-24.	Driver support for paper sources	69
Table 2-25.	Driver support for alternate source/paper type feature	70
Table 2-26.	Driver support for printing destination feature	70
Table 2-27.	Driver support for installable options	70
Table 2-28.	Driver support for PS-specific features	71
Table 3-1.	Print Task Quick Set default values for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp	78
Table 3-2.	Page orientation	83
Table 3-3.	Name drop-down menu text strings	103
Table 3-4.	PCL 6 custom paper sizes	105
Table 3-5.	Close dialog box text strings	106
Table 3-6.	Driver mopier mode and collation settings	128
Table 3-7.	Driver Mopier mode and collation settings	151
Table 4-1.	Print Task Quick Set default values for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp	163
Table 4-2.	Page orientation	186
Table 4-3.	Driver Mopier mode and collation settings	203

Table 5-1.	Default fonts	207
Table 5-2.	Additional PS 3 fonts	209
Table 5-3.	Choose Setup Language dialog box text strings	215
Table 5-4.	Preparing to Install dialog box text strings	216
Table 5-5.	Welcome dialog box text strings	217
Table 5-6.	HP Software License Agreement dialog box text strings	218
Table 5-7.	Printer Connection dialog box text strings	219
Table 5-8.	Network Setup dialog box text strings	220
Table 5-9.	Connection type dialog box text strings	221
Table 5-10.	Cable Connection dialog box text strings	222
Table 5-11.	Print Job Management dialog box text strings	223
Table 5-12.	Recommended Network Setup dialog box text strings	224
Table 5-13.	Identify Printer dialog box text strings	225
Table 5-14.	Select Printer dialog box text strings	228
Table 5-15.	Network Configuration Options dialog box text strings	230
Table 5-16.	Set Network Communication Mode dialog box text strings	232
Table 5-17.	Model dialog box text strings	233
Table 5-18.	Installation Type dialog box text strings	234
Table 5-19.	Features dialog box text strings	236
Table 5-20.	Printer Name dialog box text strings	237
Table 5-21.	Printer Sharing dialog box text strings	238
Table 5-22.	Client Driver Support dialog box text strings	239
Table 5-23.	Printer Location and Comment dialog box text strings	240
Table 5-24.	Ready to Install dialog box text strings	241
Table 5-25.	Custom Installation dialog box text strings	243
Table 5-26.	Installer Customization Wizard Welcome dialog box text strings	246
Table 5-27.	Language selection dialog box text strings	247
Table 5-28.	Printer Port dialog box text strings	249
Table 5-29.	Specify Printer dialog box text strings	251
Table 5-30.	IP Settings dialog box text strings	252
Table 5-31.	Model dialog box text strings	254
Table 5-32.	Features dialog box text strings	255
Table 5-33.	Driver Configuration dialog box text strings	256
Table 5-34.	Driver Configuration preconfigure driver dialog box text strings	257
Table 5-35.	Printer Name dialog box text strings	258
Table 5-36.	Printer Sharing dialog box text strings	259
Table 5-37.	Client Driver Support dialog box text strings	260
Table 5-38.	Printer Location and Comment dialog box text strings	261
Table 5-39.	Custom Installer Location dialog box text strings	262
Table 5-40.	Change Current Destination Folder dialog box text strings	263
Table 5-41.	Installing dialog box text strings	264
Table 5-42.	Finish dialog box text strings	265
Table 6-1.	HP LaserJet for Macintosh installer splash screen dialog box text strings	277
Table 6-2.	HP LaserJet Installer dialog box text strings (easy install)	278
Table 6-3.	HP LaserJet Installer dialog box text strings (custom install)	279
Table 6-4.	Installing dialog box text strings	279
Table 6-5.	Installation successful dialog box text strings	280
Table 6-6.	HP LaserJet Screen Fonts splash screen dialog box text strings	280
Table 6-7.	HP LaserJet Screen Fonts installer dialog box text strings (1 of 2)	281
Table 6-8.	HP LaserJet Screen Fonts installer dialog box text strings (2 of 2)	281
Table 6-9.	Installation was successful dialog box text strings	282
Table 6-10.	HP LaserJet for Macintosh installer splash screen dialog box text strings	282
Table 6-11.	HP LaserJet Installer dialog box text strings (easy install)	283
Table 6-12.	HP LaserJet Installer dialog box text strings (custom install)	284
Table 6-13.	Installing dialog box text strings	285

Table 7-1.	HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp paper sources and destinations	287
Table 7-2.	Media tray configurations for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.....	288
Table 7-3.	Paper-source commands	288
Table 7-4.	Supported features and attributes by driver	289
Table 7-5.	Supported input media types	291
Table 7-6.	PCL 6 custom paper sizes	292
Table 7-7.	Paper-type commands	293

List of figures

Figure 1-1.	Installation software CD-ROM main screen	5
Figure 2-1.	Device Status page on the Information tab	34
Figure 2-2.	Configuration page on Information tab	35
Figure 2-3.	Settings tab - Configure Device	37
Figure 2-4.	Configurable Alerts page	38
Figure 2-5.	Networking tab - Configuration section.....	39
Figure 2-6.	The HP Toolbox Device Status page.....	43
Figure 2-7.	Supplies Status page.....	44
Figure 2-8.	Set up Status Alerts page.....	45
Figure 2-9.	Administrative Settings page.....	46
Figure 3-1.	A typical constraint message with an OK button.....	75
Figure 3-2.	A property page with a Bubble Help icon	76
Figure 3-3.	The default appearance of the Finishing tab	77
Figure 3-4.	Printing a booklet	85
Figure 3-5.	Page-order preview images	86
Figure 3-6.	Print Quality Details dialog box for HP traditional PCL 6 driver	87
Figure 3-7.	The default appearance of the Output tab	89
Figure 3-8.	Effects tab	92
Figure 3-9.	Preview images - Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right)	93
Figure 3-10.	Watermark Details	95
Figure 3-11.	Paper tab	98
Figure 3-12.	Paper Options group box (default).....	99
Figure 3-13.	Custom Paper Size dialog box	101
Figure 3-14.	First Page options	108
Figure 3-15.	Front Cover from Feeder options.....	109
Figure 3-16.	Front Cover Option	110
Figure 3-17.	Other Pages options	111
Figure 3-18.	Last Page options	112
Figure 3-19.	Back Cover setting	113
Figure 3-20.	Back Cover from Feeder options.....	114
Figure 3-21.	Job Storage tab	116
Figure 3-22.	Basics tab	122
Figure 3-23.	About This Driver dialog box	124
Figure 3-24.	Driver NT Forms tab	125
Figure 3-25.	Configure tab	127
Figure 3-26.	More Configuration Options dialog box	130
Figure 3-27.	Configure Font DIMMs dialog box	131
Figure 3-28.	Page Setup tab	135
Figure 3-29.	Advanced tab	136
Figure 3-30.	Job Storage tab	141
Figure 3-31.	Device Settings tab in Windows NT 4.0	146
Figure 3-32.	Device Options tab in Windows 98	147
Figure 4-1.	An Incompatible Print Settings message	155
Figure 4-2.	The default appearance of the Advanced tab	156
Figure 4-3.	Paper/Quality tab	161

Figure 4-4.	Paper Options group box	167
Figure 4-5.	Front Cover from Feeder options	171
Figure 4-6.	Front Cover options	172
Figure 4-7.	First Page options	173
Figure 4-8.	Other Pages options	174
Figure 4-9.	Last Page options	175
Figure 4-10.	Back Cover setting	176
Figure 4-11.	Back Cover from Feeder options	177
Figure 4-12.	Effects tab	179
Figure 4-13.	Preview images - Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right)	180
Figure 4-14.	Watermark Details	182
Figure 4-15.	Finishing tab	185
Figure 4-16.	Page-order preview images	188
Figure 4-17.	The default appearance of the Output tab	190
Figure 4-18.	Job Storage tab	193
Figure 4-19.	Device Settings tab	199
Figure 4-20.	Font DIMM Installer dialog box	200
Figure 5-1.	Installation path	214
Figure 5-2.	Choose Setup Language dialog box	215
Figure 5-3.	Preparing to Install dialog box	216
Figure 5-4.	Welcome dialog box	217
Figure 5-5.	HP Software License Agreement dialog box	218
Figure 5-6.	Printer Connection dialog box	219
Figure 5-7.	Network Setup dialog box	220
Figure 5-8.	Connection type dialog box	221
Figure 5-9.	Cable Connection dialog box	222
Figure 5-10.	Print Job Management dialog box	223
Figure 5-11.	Recommended Network Setup dialog box	224
Figure 5-12.	Identify Printer dialog box	225
Figure 5-13.	Select Printer (1 of 2) dialog box	226
Figure 5-14.	Select Printer (2 of 2) dialog box	227
Figure 5-15.	Network Configuration Options dialog box	229
Figure 5-16.	Set Network Communication Mode dialog box	231
Figure 5-17.	Model dialog box	233
Figure 5-18.	Installation Type dialog box	234
Figure 5-19.	Features dialog box	235
Figure 5-20.	Printer Name dialog box	236
Figure 5-21.	Printer Sharing Setup dialog box	237
Figure 5-22.	Client Driver Support dialog box	239
Figure 5-23.	Printer Location and Comment dialog box	240
Figure 5-24.	Ready to Install dialog box	241
Figure 5-25.	Features dialog box, Custom Installation	242
Figure 5-26.	Installer Customization Wizard Welcome dialog box	245
Figure 5-27.	Language dialog box	246
Figure 5-28.	Printer Port dialog box	248
Figure 5-29.	Specify Printer dialog box	250
Figure 5-30.	IP Settings dialog box	252
Figure 5-31.	New IPX Port dialog box	253
Figure 5-32.	Model dialog box	254
Figure 5-33.	Features dialog box	255
Figure 5-34.	Driver Configuration dialog box	256
Figure 5-35.	Driver Configuration preconfigure driver dialog box	257
Figure 5-36.	Printer Name dialog box	258
Figure 5-37.	Printer Sharing dialog box	259
Figure 5-38.	Client Driver Support dialog box	260

Figure 5-39.	Printer Location and Comment support dialog box.....	261
Figure 5-40.	Custom Installer Location dialog box.....	262
Figure 5-41.	Change Current Destination Folder dialog box.....	263
Figure 5-42.	Installing dialog box.....	264
Figure 5-43.	Finish dialog box.....	265
Figure 6-1.	HP LaserJet for Macintosh installer splash screen dialog box	277
Figure 6-2.	HP LaserJet Installer dialog box (easy install)	277
Figure 6-3.	HP LaserJet Installer dialog box (custom install)	278
Figure 6-4.	Installing dialog box	279
Figure 6-5.	Installation was successful dialog box	279
Figure 6-6.	HP LaserJet Screen Fonts splash screen dialog box	280
Figure 6-7.	HP LaserJet Screen Fonts installer dialog box	281
Figure 6-8.	Installation was successful dialog box	281
Figure 6-9.	HP LaserJet for Macintosh installer splash screen dialog box	282
Figure 6-10.	HP LaserJet Installer dialog box (easy install)	283
Figure 6-11.	HP LaserJet Installer dialog box (custom install)	284
Figure 6-12.	Installing dialog box	285

1

Purpose and scope

Introduction

This software technical reference (STR) provides information about and troubleshooting tips for the printing-system software for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp. The information in this STR applies only if the HP Print Kit is installed in the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.

This document is prepared in an electronic format to serve as a quick-reference tool for Customer Care Center (CCC) agents, support engineers, system administrators, management information systems (MIS) personnel, and HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp end users, as appropriate.

Note

This STR describes drivers that are shipped with the printing-system software CD-ROM. This STR does *not* cover drivers that might be released for use by support personnel.

The following information is included in this technical reference:

- descriptions of drivers and platforms with system modifications
- procedures for installing and uninstalling software components
- descriptions of problems that can arise while using the MFP, and known solutions to those problems

Note

An addendum to this STR includes system modification information and descriptions of known software issues and workarounds.

The following table contains descriptions of the two multifunction products (MFPs) that are described in this STR.

Note

MFP configurations might vary among countries/regions.

HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp

Table 1-1. Features of the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp

Feature	HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp
Memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 256 megabytes (MB) of print random-access memory (RAM), with additional 64 MB and 128 MB of RAM for HP Print Kit• Additional 256 MB of copier RAM• 20 gigabyte (GB) hard disk
Speed	<p>For the HP LaserJet 9055mfp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 55 pages per minute (ppm) for A4-size media• 55 ppm Letter-size media <p>For the HP LaserJet 9065mfp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 65 ppm for A4-size media• 65 ppm Letter-size media
Connectivity	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (IEEE) 1284 type-C parallel connection• HP Jetdirect print server enhanced input/output (EIO) network card• Foreign Interface Harness connection (FIH)• One expansion slot is available to support an HP Jetdirect EIO card

Table 1-1. Features of the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp (continued)

Feature	HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp
Paper handling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One 100-sheet multipurpose tray (tray 1); maximum media size, 314 by 459 millimeter (mm) (12.36 by 18.07 inches) ● Two 500-sheet trays (trays 2 and 3); maximum media size, 314 by 459 mm (12.36 by 18.07 inches) ● One 1,500-sheet tray (tray 4); maximum media size, 314 by 459 mm (12.36 by 18.07 inches) ● One optional 4,000-sheet tray (tray 5), configurable for narrow or wide-format media ● Duplexing unit; supports all standard media sizes; does not support custom sizes, labels, or transparencies ● Optional HP 3,000-Sheet Stapler/Stacker; maximum paper size, 306 by 470 mm (12 by 18.5 inches) ● Optional HP 2,500-sheet Multifunction Finisher; maximum paper size, 306 by 470 mm (12 by 18.5 inches) ● Optional 2-, 3-, 4-, and Swedish-hole Punch Kits ● Optional HP Post-Insertion Kit
Resolution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 600 dots per inch (dpi)
Toner	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 50,000-page toner bottle

¹ This is additional memory for the MFP when in copier mode. Base memory , total memory for the is 312 MB.

Printing-system software CD-ROM

This section contains information about the following topics:

- [HP LaserJet print drivers](#)
- [Printing-system components](#)
- [HP LaserJet documentation](#)

HP LaserJet print drivers

HP LaserJet print drivers for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp control the print settings. These print drivers differ, depending on the operating system (OS) environment. The following drivers are available on the printing-system software CD-ROM:

- HP traditional printer command language (PCL) 6 driver for Windows 98, Windows Me, and Windows NT 4.0
- HP traditional PostScript(R) 3 emulation (PS) driver for Windows 98, Windows Me, and Windows NT 4.0
- HP PCL 6 unidriver for Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003
- HP PS unidriver for Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003
- Mac PostScript printer descriptions (PPDs) for Mac 9.x and Mac OS X (10.1 or later)
- UNIX Model Script
- Linux print drivers and model script

You gain access to the drivers through onscreen windows, or driver tabs, that offer dialog boxes with print settings. The driver tabs are available in the software application that you use to send your print jobs to the MFP and from your computer control panel.

The graphical user interface (GUI) of the driver tabs might differ from driver to driver. The print driver for Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 is the new HP unidriver, with a user interface look and feel that is consistent across the PCL 6 and PS drivers. The print drivers for Windows 98, Windows Me, and Windows NT 4.0 are the HP traditional PCL 6 driver and the HP traditional PS driver.

See [Chapter 3, HP traditional print drivers for Windows](#) and [Chapter 4, HP PCL 6 and PS unidrivers for Windows](#) for detailed information about each of the HP print drivers.

Printing-system components

Printing-system and installer

The following sections contain information about the printing-system software and the installer on the software CD-ROM that came with the MFP.

HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp software CD-ROM for Windows systems

For the Microsoft Windows environment (Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003), the HP LaserJet 9055mfp software CD-ROM or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM provides an interactive software window that you can use not only to install the print drivers and related components, but also to gain access to online user documentation, a customization utility, Adobe Acrobat Reader software, and optional HP software.

The following illustration shows the main screen of the HP LaserJet 9055mfp software CD-ROM or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM, which appears when you insert the printing-system software CD-ROM in your CD-ROM drive. If the screen does not appear when you insert the software CD-ROM, click **Start**, click **Run**, click **Browse...**, navigate to the root directory of the software CD-ROM, and then double-click the SETUP.EXE file to start the installer.

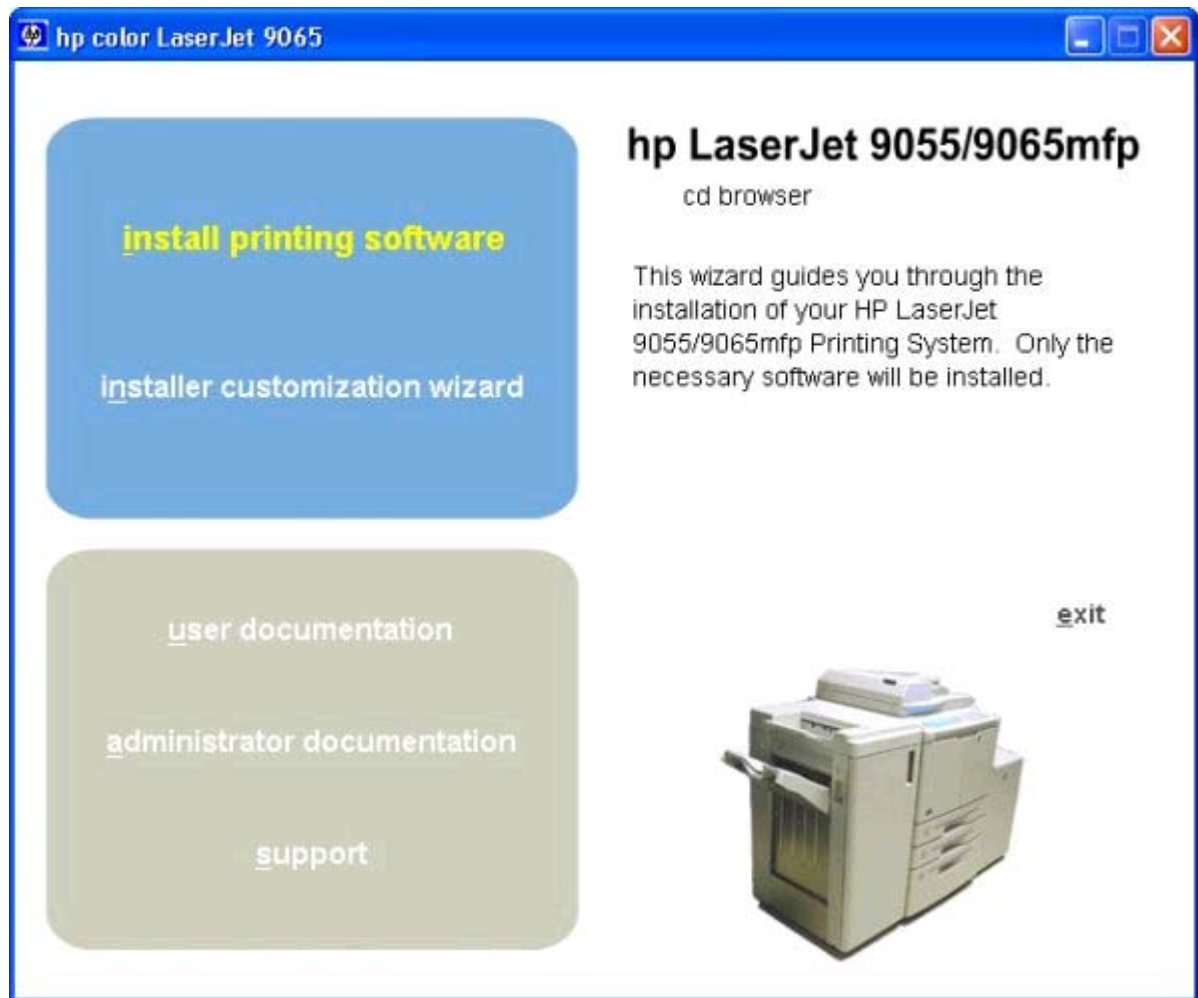


Figure 1-1. Installation software CD-ROM main screen

The main screen of the software CD-ROM contains installation options in the upper left panel and documentation options in the lower left panel. In the following list of options, the text that appears above the image of the MFP is approximately the same text that appears in the panel on the right when you put the cursor on the option.

Note

The options on your MFP might vary from the illustration.

install printing software. This wizard guides you through the installation of your HP LaserJet 9055/9065 printing-system software. You are given the choice of performing a Typical Installation or a Custom Installation. If you select Typical Installation, only the necessary software is installed. If you select Custom Installation, you can select the components you want to install.

installer customization wizard. Enables you to customize the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp installer by presetting the options for installation in a response file. The installer that you have customized can then be used for silent, unattended installation.

user documentation. View the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp user documentation. The following document options are available when you click this option:

- **printable quick reference guide**
- **quick reference guide**
- **install notes**
- **wall poster**

administrator documentation. View the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp administrator documentation. The following document options are available when you click this option:

- **system administrator guide**
- **hp driver pre-configuration user guide**
- **embedded web server user guide**
- **hp jetdirect guide**

Note

For systems that do not have Adobe Acrobat Reader 4.0 or later installed, you are given the option to install that software. Clicking any of the links to documentation that is provided in the Adobe Acrobat Portable Document Format (PDF) file format opens a dialog box from which you can install Adobe Acrobat Reader software from the HP LaserJet 9055mfp software CD-ROM or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM.

support. To increase productivity and get the most use from your HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp, view a list of optional software programs available for installation and links to HP Web sites. The following options are available:

- Click **hp web jetadmin** to download HP Web Jetadmin software from the Web for a Web browser-based network-product-management tool.
- Click **supplies** for information about ordering HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing supplies.
- Click **product information** for HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp support information and updates.
- Click **hp.com** to go to the HP home Web page for products and services, support, drivers, and HP online stores.

Installer features

The common installer is designed to provide a simple and consistent installation method for the MFP. The common installer is available for the Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 operating systems.

The common installer offers the following features:

- The HP LaserJet 9055mfp software CD-ROM or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM features an interactive software interface. See [HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp software CD-ROM for Windows systems](#).
- Acrobat Reader is available.
- The installer is Web-enabled, providing access to the HP Web site for the latest software components and drivers.

- Network connection is integrated so that you can install drivers and connect to a network product in a single process.
- The selection dialog box sets the operating-system language as the default language (for Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 only). You can use the installer to select any of the languages on the HP LaserJet 9055mfp software CD-ROM or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM.

The HP LaserJet 9055mfp software CD-ROM and the HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM also includes the following features:

- the HP LaserJet Uninstaller Utility
- the HP Customization Utility for custom installations

All of the Windows system components are installed by using the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing-system installer. The installer automatically senses your language of choice and your operating system. You can select the type of installation you prefer: Typical Installation or Custom Installation.

Installable components

This section provides information about the various installable components that are available either with the HP LaserJet 9055mfp software CD-ROM or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM or from the HP Web site.

Print drivers

The printing system for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp includes the following print drivers.

PCL 6 and PS drivers

The following drivers are available for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp:

- The HP traditional PCL 6 drivers for Windows 98, Windows Me, and Windows NT 4.0.
- The HP traditional PS driver for Windows 98, Windows Me, and Windows NT 4.0.
- The HP PCL 6 and PS unidrivers for Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003.

All of the drivers provide access to the MFP paper-handling and print-quality features, and are described in chapter 3 of this reference document.

Note

If you select a Typical Installation during installation of the printing-system software, the PCL 6 driver is installed by default.

Windows 98, Me, NT 4.0, 2000, XP, and Server 2003 driver versions

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp PCL 6 print drivers support Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 operating systems. The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp PPD software provides PS feature support for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.

Note

Do not install and use the HP LaserJet 9055mfp software with the HP LaserJet 9065mfp. Likewise, do not install and use the HP LaserJet 9065mfp software with the HP LaserJet 9055mfp.

If you are using an HP traditional driver, you can view the print driver version number by clicking the HP logo in the lower-left corner of the following HP PCL 6 print-driver tabs:

- Configure
- Finishing
- Effects
- Paper
- Job Storage
- Basics

If you are using an HP unidriver in Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 environments, follow these steps to find driver version information:

- 1 Click **Start**.
- 2 Click **Settings**.
- 3 Click **Printers** (or **Printers and Faxes** in Windows XP and Windows Server 2003).
- 4 Right-click the MFP icon.
- 5 Click **Properties**.
- 6 Click the **About** tab.

Macintosh and Macintosh-compatible system-driver versions

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing solution for Macintosh is composed of the Print Center for OS X and the Apple LaserWriter driver for OS 9, which are provided with the operating system, and HP-created PPD files. The driver uses these files to determine the features and PS commands that the MFP supports. Bidirectional support in AppleTalk connections supports autoconfiguration of the software. The following are installable components:

- the HP LaserJet Installer for Mac OS 9, and Mac OS X.
- the HP LaserJet Screen Fonts Installer.
- SYSTEM/EXTENSIONS/PRODUCT DESCRIPTIONS (for Mac OS 9).
- LIBRARY/PRINTERS/PPDS/CONTENTS/RESOURCES/LANGUAGE.LPROJ (for Mac OS X).
- the HP LaserJet Utility, an HP utility that is installed in the HP LaserJet folder of Mac OS 9. The HP LaserJet Utility provides configuration and management support for PS.
- online Help, an HTML-based printer and utility help that can be viewed through a browser or in the Macintosh OS Help Center (in English only).
- install notes.

Additional driver availability

The following additional drivers are available from your HP distributor or from the Web site:

- UNIX model scripts. For further information about UNIX drivers, click **hp printer installation software** at http://www.hp.com/support/net_printing.
- Linux drivers. For further information about Linux drivers for HP LaserJet products, go to <http://www.hp.com/go/linux> or visit the HP Linux support home page at <http://hp.sourceforge.net>.

HP LaserJet documentation

This section describes the documentation that is available to users and administrators for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.

Access to HP LaserJet documents depends on the kind of document and its location. Some documents can be opened from the installer CD Browser. Others are found on the software CD-ROM and can be opened by navigating to the folder where they reside. Still others are available on the Web through links in the installer CD Browser or CD-ROM folders.

Documents are available in the following formats:

- **Portable Document Format (.PDF).** The HP LaserJet 9055mfp software CD-ROM and the HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM include Adobe(R) Acrobat Reader(R) for viewing online documentation. When you click a documentation link to a .PDF document on the software CD-ROM, the installer scans the system for an installed .PDF reader. If the installer cannot find a reader, the installer presents the option to install the Adobe Acrobat Reader.

Note

Adobe Acrobat Reader 4.0 or later is required to view the documents on the HP LaserJet 9055mfp software CD-ROM or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM.

- **Compiled HTML (.CHM).** When you click a documentation link to a .CHM document, a Microsoft HTML Viewer opens the file on your computer screen. The .CHM files can reside either on the printing-system software CD or on the Web.
- **Hypertext Markup (.HTM).** This is the format for links to Web pages using Hypertext Markup Language (HTML). You must have a Web connection and Web browser to view these files. The .HTM link contains JavaScript code that links directly to the guide on the Web. The .HTM link directs your browser software to the guide on the Web.
- **Rich Text format (.RTF).** This is a text file. You can navigate to .RTF files and open them in any text editor, such as NotePad or WordPad.

HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp Quick Reference Guide

HP LaserJet 9055mfp/9065mfp Quick Reference Guide is a reference guide for end users that describes the basic features of the MFP.

To view this guide, click **user documentation** in the installer CD Browser, and then click **quick reference guide**. The guide is displayed as a Windows Help file (.CHM file). This readable, onscreen version of the guide is provided in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

The screen-readable version (.CHM) of the *Quick Reference Guide* for the HP LaserJet 9055mfp or for the HP LaserJet 9065mfp is also available in English on the MFP software CD-ROM. To open the guide from the software CD-ROM, navigate to the **<language>** folder for your language, and then to the **Manuals** folder. There, open the file that has this file name:

- LJ9055MFP_QUICK-REF_ENWWW.CHM for the HP LaserJet 9055mfp
- LJ9065MFP_QUICK-REF_ENWWW.CHM for the HP LaserJet 9065mfp

For languages other than English, the software CD-ROM contains hyperlinks to the *Quick Reference Guide*. To gain access to the guide in a language other than English, the computer must be connected to the Internet. To view the guide, navigate to the **<language>** folder for your language, and then to the **Manuals** folder. There, to open the guide (in .PDF format), click the hyperlink that has one of the following file names:

- LJ9055MFP_QUICK-REF_XXWW.HTM for the HP LaserJet 9055mfp
- LJ9065MFP_QUICK-REF_XXWW.HTM for the HP LaserJet 9065mfp

Note

The "XX" in the file name varies in each language. For instance, the hyperlink name for the French version of the guide is LJ9055MFP_QUICK-REF_FRWW.HTM (or LJ9065MFP_QUICK-REF_FRWW.HTM).

To print the *Quick Reference Guide*, click **printable quick reference guide**. The guide is displayed as a PDF file, which you can print. This document is also available on the software CD-ROM. To open the PDF version of the guide, navigate to the **<language>** folder for your language, and then to the **Manuals** folder. There, open the file that has one of the following names:

- LJ9055MFP_QUICK-REF_ENWW.PDF for the HP LaserJet 9055mfp
- LJ9065MFP_QUICK-REF_ENWW.PDF for the HP LaserJet 9065mfp

The English version of the *Quick Reference Guide* resides on the printing-system software CD-ROM in the **English/Manuals** folder.

For languages other than English, the software CD-ROM contains hyperlinks to the printable version of the *Quick Reference Guide*. To gain access to the guide in a language other than English, the computer must be connected to the Internet. To view the guide, navigate to the **<language>** folder for your language, and then to the **Manuals** folder. There, to open the guide (in .PDF format), click the hyperlink that has one of the following names:

- LJ9055MFP_QUICK-REFPDF_XXWW.HTM for the HP LaserJet 9055mfp
- LJ9065MFP_QUICK-REFPDF_XXWW.HTM for the HP LaserJet 9065mfp

Note

The "XX" in the file name for the link varies in each language. For instance, the hyperlink for the French version of the guide is LJ9065MFP_QUICK-REFPDF_FRWW.HTM.

When you have the .PDF file open, you can click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing-system install notes

The *HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp Printing System Install Notes* is a document (in .RTF format) that contains important information about MFP features, instructions for installing the printing-system software, and technical assistance.

To view this file from the software CD-ROM, click **user documentation** on the main screen in the installer CD Browser, and then click **install notes**.

You can also open the file by inserting the software CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive and navigating to **<language>**. There, open the file that has one of the following file names:

- LJ9055MFP_INSTALL-NOTE_XXWW.RTF for the HP LaserJet 9055mfp
- LJ9065MFP_INSTALL-NOTE_XXWW.RTF for the HP LaserJet 9065mfp

Note

The "XX" in the file name varies in each language. For instance, the file name for the English version of the document is LJ9055MFP_INSTALL-NOTE_ENWW.RTF or LJ9065MFP_INSTALL-NOTE_ENWW.RTF. The file name for the French version of the document is LJ9055MFP_INSTALL-NOTE_FRWW.RTF or LJ9065MFP_INSTALL-NOTE_FRWW.RTF.

When you have the file open in a text editor (such as NotePad or WordPad), you can click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

Wall poster for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp

The wall poster is a chart (in .PDF format) intended for end users that shows the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp and its components .

To view the wall poster, click **user documentation** in the main screen in the the installer CD Browser, and then click **wall poster**

You can also gain access to the guide by inserting the software CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive, navigating to **English**, and then to **Manuals**. There, open the file with one of the following file names:

- LJ9055MFP_POSTER_ENWW.PDF
- LJ9065MFP_POSTER_ENWW.PDF

For languages other than English, the software CD-ROM contains hyperlinks to the wall poster. To gain access to the wall poster in a language other than English, the computer must be connected to the Internet. To view the poster, navigate to the **<language>** folder for your language, and then to the **Manuals** folder. There, to open the wall poster, click the hyperlink that has one of the following names:

- LJ9055MFP_POSTER_XXWW.HTM for the HP LaserJet 9055mfp
- LJ9065MFP_POSTER_XXWW.HTM for the HP LaserJet 9065mfp

Note

The "XX" in the hyperlink varies in each language. In French, for instance, the file name is LJ9055MFP_POSTER_FRWW.HTM or LJ9065MFP_POSTER_FRWW.HTM.

When you have the file open, you can click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP LaserJet 9055mfp/9065mfp system administrator guide

The *HP LaserJet 9055mfp/9065mfp Administrator Guide* (in .PDF format) contains information about key operator functions; multifunction peripheral (MFP) service, repairs, and supplies; MFP labels; and control-panel operation. It is intended for use by system administrators and advanced users.

To view this guide, click **administrator documentation** on the main screen in the installer CD Browser, and then click **system administrator guide**

You can also gain access to the guide by inserting the software CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive, navigating to **English**, and then to **Manuals**. There, open the file with one of the following file names:

- LJ9055MFP_ADMIN_ENWW.PDF
- LJ9065MFP_ADMIN_ENWW.PDF

For languages other than English, the software CD-ROM contains hyperlinks to the *HP LaserJet 9055mfp/9065mfp Administrator Guide*. To gain access to the guide in a language other than English, the computer must be connected to the Internet. To view the guide, navigate to the **<language>** folder for your language, and then to the **Manuals** folder. There, to open the guide, click the hyperlink that has one of the following names :

- LJ9055MFP_ADMIN_XXWW.HTM for the HP LaserJet 9055mfp
- LJ9065MFP_ADMIN_XXWW.HTM for the HP LaserJet 9065mfp

Note

The "XX" in the hyperlink varies in each language. In French, for instance, the file name is LJ9055MFP_ADMIN_FRWW.HTM or LJ9065MFP_ADMIN_FRWW.HTM.

When you have the file open in Acrobat Reader, you can click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP Driver Preconfiguration guide

The *HP Driver Preconfiguration Guide* is a guide (in .PDF format) for preconfiguring drivers in network environments.

To view this guide, click **administrator documentation** on the main screen in the installer CD Browser, and then click **hp driver pre-configuration user guide**.

You can also gain access to the guide by inserting the software CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive, navigating to **English**, and then to **Manuals**. There, open the file that has the following file name:

- PRECONFIG_SUPPORT_ENWW.PDF

Note

The *HP Driver Preconfiguration Guide* is available only in English on the software CD-ROM.

When you have the file open in Acrobat Reader, you can click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP Embedded Web Server user guide

The *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide* (in .PDF format) provides information about device status, settings, and networking for the HP LaserJet 9055mfp and the HP LaserJet 9065mfp.

To view this guide, click **administrator documentation** on the main screen in the installer CD Browser, and then click **embedded web server user guide**

You can also gain access to the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide* by inserting the software CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive, navigating to the **<language>** folder for your language, and then to the **Manuals** folder. There, open the file with the following file name:

- EWS7_USE_ENWW.PDF

For languages other than English, the software CD-ROM contains hyperlinks to the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*. To gain access to the guide in a language other than English, the computer must be connected to the Internet. To view the guide, navigate to the **<language>** folder for your language, and then to the **Manuals** folder. There, to open the guide, click the hyperlink that has the following name:

- EWS7_USE_XXWW.HTM for the HP LaserJet 9055mfp

Note

The "XX" in the file name varies in each language. In In French, the hyperlink name is EWS7_USE_FRWW.HTM.

When you have the file open, you can click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP Jetdirect administrator's guide

The *HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide* is a network administrator's guide (in .PDF format) to information about connecting the MFP directly to a network. To view this guide, click **administrator documentation** on the main screen in the installer CD Browser, and then click **hp jetdirect guide**.

You can also gain access to the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide* by inserting the software CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive, navigating to the **<language>** folder for your language, and then to the **Manuals** folder. There, click the following file name to gain access to the guide:

- HPJDAG_ENWW.PDF

For languages other than English, the software CD-ROM contains hyperlinks to the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*. To gain access to the guide in a language other than English, the computer must be connected to the Internet. To view the guide, navigate to the **<language>** folder for your language, and then to the **Manuals** folder. There, to open the guide, click the hyperlink that has the following name:

- EWS7_USE_XXWW.HTM for the HP LaserJet 9055mfp

Note

The "XX" in the file name varies in each language. In In French, the hyperlink name is HPJDAG_FRWW.PDF.

When you have the file open, you can click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP Device Installer Customization Wizard

The *HP Device Installer Customization Wizard* (in .RTF format) provides network administrators with information about pre-selectable options and installation settings for the Installer Customization Wizard.

You can gain access to the *HP Device Installer Customization Wizard* by inserting the software CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive and navigating to the **<language>** folder for your language. There, open the file that has the following file name:

- CUSTOMIZATIONDOC.RTF

Note

The file name is the same for all languages. The document itself has been localized. To open the French version of the document, for instance, navigate to the **français** folder.

When you have the file open in a text editor (such as NotePad or WordPad), you can click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

Structure and availability of the software CD-ROM

The software CD-ROMs for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp contain a variety of files for installing the printing-system software on your computer. This section describes the files that are available on the software CD-ROMs, as well as additional support and fulfillment information.

In-box file layout

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing-system software consists of two partitions: one for installation using Windows operating systems, and the other for Macintosh operating systems. The files include documentation files and files that are required to install and uninstall the printing-system components.

HP LaserJet software CD-ROM, Windows partition

The root directory in the Windows partition of the software CD-ROM contains the AUTORUN.EXE file and the SETUP.EXE file, as well as the following directories:

- autorun
- Fonts
- System32
- Temp
- toolbox
- Language directories for all the languages that are on the software CD-ROM

The printing-system files for each language reside in the following directories:

- Drivers
- Manuals
- Reader

File layouts differ by language for the European and Asian versions of the software CD-ROM.

To view the files, insert the HP LaserJet 9055mfp software CD-ROM or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM, right-click **Start**, click **Explore**, and then select the CD-ROM drive.

HP LaserJet software CD-ROM, Macintosh partition

The files contained in the Macintosh partition of the HP LaserJet software CD-ROM are grouped by language and reside in the following directories:

- Root directory
- HP LASERJET INSTALLERS (for Macintosh operating systems)
- PDF (for guides and manuals)

File layouts differ by language for the European and Asian versions of the software CD-ROM.

Availability and fulfillment

This section provides information about the availability of the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp software and related software and firmware. Printing-system software on CD-ROM is available from HP fulfillment centers.

In-box CD-ROMs

The HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM HP and the LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM are available in three regional versions. The following table lists the three versions of the software CD-ROM, along with the languages each version supports.

Table 1-2. CD-ROM versions

CD-ROM version	Languages supported
Americas/Euro1	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Dutch (Nederland)• English• French (Français)• German (Deutsch)• Italian (Italiano)• Portuguese (Português) - Brazilian• Spanish (Español)• Swedish (Svenska)
Asian	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Chinese (Simplified)• Chinese (Traditional)• English• Korean

Table 1-2. CD-ROM versions (continued)

CD-ROM version	Languages supported
Euro2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Czech (Cesky) (Windows OSs only) • Danish (Dansk) • English • Finnish (Suomi) • Hungarian (Magyar) (Windows OSs only) • Norwegian (Norsk) • Polish (Polski) (Windows OSs only) • Russian (Russ) (Windows OSs only) • Turkish (Turkçe)

¹ Drivers for various languages do not necessarily correspond to geographic regions. European languages, for instance, are distributed on two CD-ROMs, Americas/Euro1 and Euro2.

Web deployment

Web deployment is the preferred method for obtaining the latest software. The Web site offers a notification option for automatic e-mail notification about new software releases.

Printing-system software

The HP LaserJet 9055mfp printing-system software is available for download from: http://www.hp.com/go/lj9055mfp_software. The HP LaserJet 9065mfp printing-system software is available from http://www.hp.com/go/lj9065mfp_software.

The printing-system software supports the following operating systems.

Note

If your computer is running a 64-bit operating system, you must install a 64-bit print driver. Both 64-bit print drivers and 32-bit print drivers are available on the printing-system software CD-ROM. For more information about installing print drivers for Windows, see [Chapter 5, Installing Windows printing-system components](#).

- Windows 98 and Windows Me
- Windows NT 4.0
- Windows XP Professional (32-bit) and Windows Server 2003 (32-bit)
- Windows XP Home Edition
- Windows 2000 (32-bit)

Standalone drivers

The HP PCL 6 and PS drivers are available individually to support the following operating systems:

- Windows 98 and Windows Me
- Windows NT 4.0
- Windows 2000 (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit) and Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit)

- Mac 9.x
- Mac OS X (10.1 or later)

Other operating systems

Drivers and related software are available for these additional operating environments:

- UNIX
- Linux

Software component availability

The following table lists the availability of HP LaserJet software components by operating system.

Note

In the following table, "98/Me" refers to Windows 98 and Windows Me; "2K" refers to Windows 2000; "4.0" refers to Windows NT 4.0; "XP" refers to Windows XP; and "Mac" refers to Macintosh operating systems.

Table 1-3. Software component availability for HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp

Component	98/Me	4.0	2K/XP ²	Mac	UNIX	Linux
Drivers						
HP traditional PCL 6 driver	x	x				
HP traditional PS driver	x	x				
HP PCL 6 unidriver			x			
HP PS unidriver			x			
PS Driver and PostScript Printer Description (PPD)	x	x				
Mac PPD				x		
UNIX Model Script					x	
Linux printing drivers and model script						x
Installers						
Common Windows Installer	x	x	x			
CD Browser	x	x	x			
Customization Utility	x	x	x			
Fonts	x	x	x			
INF File (Add Printer)	x	x	x			
Font Installer ¹	x	x	x	x		
Macintosh Installer for OS 9				x		
Macintosh Installer for OS X				x		
Bidirectional communication						

Table 1-3. Software component availability for HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp (continued)

Component	98/Me	4.0	2K/XP ²	Mac	UNIX	Linux
Network Bidirectional Communications	x	x	x			
Direct Connect Bidirectional Communications						
Enterprise Autoconfiguration	x	x	x			
Macintosh AppleTalk				x		
Remote management and status						
Web Jetadmin		x	x		x	x
Applet for Web Jetadmin		x	x		x	x
Macintosh LJ Utility				x		
HP Toolbox	x		x	x		
Driver Autoconfiguration	x	x	x			
Online Documentation						
Adobe Acrobat Reader	x	x	x	x		
<i>HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp Administrator Guide</i>	x	x	x	x		
<i>HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp Quick Reference Guide</i>	x	x	x	x		
<i>HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp Install Notes</i>	x	x	x	x		
HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp wall poster	x	x	x	x		
HP Embedded Web Server User Guide	x	x	x	x		
<i>HP Driver Preconfiguration Guide</i>	x	x	x	x		
<i>HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide</i>	x	x	x	x		
<i>HP Device Installer Customization Wizard</i>	x	x	x	x		
Mac PS Driver Help (for Mac OS 9.x only)				x		
Help systems	x	x	x	x		
Other						
PS Fonts	x	x	x	x		

¹ Supported as a standalone utility.

² This information also applies to Windows Server 2003.

Software component localization

The following table provides localization information about the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing-system software. The information in this table does not necessarily reflect the in-box solutions.

Table 1-4. Software component localization by language, A-I

Component ¹	Operating system	CS	DA	DE	EN	FI	FR	HU	IT	NL
PS PPD	98, 4.0, 2000, XP, 2003	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Toolbox	98, 2000, XP, 2003, Mac OS 10.2+		x	x	x	x	x		x	x
Macintosh PS PPD	Mac		x	x	x	x	x		x	x
Macintosh LJ Utility	Mac		x	x	x	x	x		x	x
Macintosh Install Notes	Mac		x	x	x	x	x		x	x
PCL 6	98, 4.0, 2000, XP, 2003	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Printing System Install Notes	98, 4.0, 2000, XP, 2003	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Common Windows Installer	98, 4.0, 2000	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Web Jetadmin	4.0, 2000, UNIX	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Web Jetadmin Help	4.0, 2000, UNIX	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Embedded Web Server	98, 4.0, 2000, XP, 2003		x	x	x	x	x		x	x
Online manuals (PDF)	98, 4.0, 2000, XP, 2003	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Standard fonts	98, 4.0, 2000, XP, 2003	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Table 1-4. Software component localization by language, A-I (continued)

Component ¹	Operating system	CS	DA	DE	EN	FI	FR	HU	IT	NL
PS 3 fonts	98, 4.0, 2000, XP, 2003	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

¹ Components that are not available in a specific language are supported in English.

² The English version of the HP Toolbox is used.

Language key:

CS = Czech

DN = Danish

NL = Dutch

EN = English

FI = Finnish

FR = French

DE = German

HU = Hungarian

IT = Italian

Table 1-5. Software component localization by language, J-Z

Component ¹	Operating system	KO	NO	PT	PL	RU	SC	ES	SV	TC	TR
PS PPD	98, 4.0, 2000, XP, 2003	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Toolbox	98, 2000, XP, 2003, Mac OS 10.2+		x	x	x			x	x		
Macintosh PS PPD	Mac	x	x	x			x	x	x	x	x
Macintosh LJ Utility	Mac	x	x	x				x	x		
Macintosh Install Notes	Mac	x	x	x			x	x	x	x	
PCL 6	98, 4.0, 2000, XP, 2003	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Table 1-5. Software component localization by language, J-Z (continued)

Component ¹	Operating system	KO	NO	PT	PL	RU	SC	ES	SV	TC	TR
Printing System Install Notes	98, 4.0, 2000, XP, 2003	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Common Windows Installer	98, 4.0, 2000	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Web Jetadmin	4.0, 2000, UNIX	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Web Jetadmin Help	4.0, 2000, UNIX	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Embedded Web Server ²	98, 4.0, 2000, XP, 2003		x	x				x	x		
Online manuals (PDF)	98, 4.0, 2000, XP, 2003	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Standard fonts	98, 4.0, 2000, XP, 2003		x	x	x	x		x	x		x
PS 3 fonts	98, 4.0, 2000, XP, 2003		x	x	x	x		x	x		x

¹ Components that are not available in a specific language are supported in English.

² The **Networking** tab in the Embedded Web Server appears in English, French, Italian, German, and Spanish only.

Language key:

KO = Korean

NO = Norwegian

PT = Portuguese

PL = Polish

RU = Russian

SC = Simplified Chinese

SV = Swedish

ES = Spanish

TC = Traditional Chinese

Additional productivity tools

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing-system software offers the following productivity and product-management tools.

HP Web Jetadmin

Use HP Web Jetadmin to manage HP Jetdirect connected products within your intranet by using a browser. HP Web Jetadmin is a browser-based management tool and should be installed only on the network administrator's computer.

When it is installed on a host server, any client can use HP Web Jetadmin through a supported Web browser (such as Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 and 6.0, or Netscape Navigator 7.0) by browsing to the HP Web Jetadmin host. HP Web Jetadmin 7.0 and later versions have the following features:

- task-oriented user interface that provides configurable views for network managers
- customizable user profiles that can be customized to let network administrators include only the function that is being viewed or used
- routing of instant e-mail notification of hardware failure, low supplies, and other MFP problems to different people
- remote installation and management from anywhere by using only a standard Web browser
- advanced automatic discovery of peripherals on the network without manually typing information about each MFP into a database
- simple integration into enterprise-management packages
- capacity to find peripherals based on parameters such as the Internet protocol (IP) address and MFP name
- capacity to organize peripherals into logical groups, with an option that provides virtual office maps for easy navigation

HP Web Jetadmin can be used for access to the HP Embedded Web Server, supplies ordering, and remote firmware updates (for supported MFPs).

The HP LaserJet 9055mfp software CD-ROM and HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM provide the following link to download the latest version of the HP Web Jetadmin software:
<http://www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin>.

Click **support** on the main screen in the installer CD Browser, and then click **hp web jetadmin**. The following table shows the supporting operating systems and hardware for HP Web Jetadmin.

Table 1-6. HP Web Jetadmin support

Protocols	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• TCP/IP• IPX/SPX
------------------	--

Table 1-6. HP Web Jetadmin support (continued)

<p>Compatible operating systems</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional, Server, and Advanced Server ● Microsoft Windows XP Professional with service pack 1 and Windows Server 2003 ● Microsoft Windows NT Server and Workstation with service pack 3 or later ● Red Hat Linux 8.0 ● SuSE Linux v. 8.1 <p>Shared print queue creation support</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional, Server and Advanced Server ● Microsoft Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003 ● Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 Server and Workstation ● HP-UX 11.0 ● Red Hat Linux 8.0 ● Solaris 2.6, 7 and 8 ● SuSE Linux v 8.1 ● Novell NetWare 5.1 and 6.0 (IPX only) using Netware Client 4.83 - using HP Web Jetadmin only on a Microsoft Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 system
<p>Supported products</p>	<p>All HP and non-HP products connected through HP Jetdirect print servers, and standard Management Information Base-compliant (MIB-compliant) third-party network -connected products</p>
<p>Supported browsers</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 and 6.0, for Windows only ● Netscape 7.0 (English) for for all operating systems
<p>Supported products</p>	<p>All HP and non-HP products connected through HP Jetdirect print servers, and standard MIB-compliant third-party network connected products</p>

2

Software description

Introduction

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp comes with software and installers for Microsoft (R) Windows (R) and Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh systems. Linux, and UNIX (R) systems are supported, and software is available on the Web. For information about specific system installers, drivers, and components, see the section that corresponds to that system.

This chapter contains information about the following topics:

- [Supported operating systems](#)
- [Technology background information](#)

Supported operating systems

The support for Windows OSs offers a full-featured configuration of the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp; support for OSs that are not described in this document offer varying levels of functionality. The following operating systems (OSs) are supported by the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing-system software, including PCL 6 drivers and PS drivers:

- Windows 98
- Windows Millennium Edition (Me)
- Windows NT (R) (Service packs 3 through 6)
- Windows 2000 (Service packs 1 and 2)
- Windows XP Home Edition and Windows XP Professional (Service pack 1)
- Windows Server 2003

Note

Throughout this manual, Windows XP is used to denote Windows XP Home Edition, Windows XP Professional, and Windows Server 2003 unless noted otherwise.

The following operating environments are also supported by the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp:

- Mac OS 9 and Mac OS X (10.1 or later)
- Linux (available at <http://www.hp.com/go/linux>)

- UNIX (available at http://www.hp.com/go/jetdirectunix_software)
- HP mobile printing driver (available at <http://www.hp.com/support/mpd100>)
- Windows Terminal Server
- Citrix Terminal Server
- Windows Cluster Server 8
- HP OpenVMS (available at <http://h71000.www7.hp.com/>)

For more information about the HP LaserJet 9055mfp, go to: <http://www.hp.com/support/lj9055mfp>.

For more information about the HP LaserJet 9065mfp, go to: <http://www.hp.com/support/lj9065mfp>.

Technology background information

This section contains information about the following topics:

- [Driver Configuration](#)
- [HP Driver Preconfiguration](#)
- [HP Embedded Web Server](#)
- [HP Toolbox](#)
- [Euro character](#)
- [Remote firmware update](#)
- [Printing .PDF documents from a command line](#)
- [Driver-feature comparison in various operating systems](#)

Driver Configuration

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp drivers feature bidirectional communication technology which, in supported environments, provides automatic discovery and driver configuration for MFP accessories. Some accessories that are automatically discovered and configured are the optional 4,000-sheet tray (tray 5), the HP Multifunction Finisher, the HP Post Insertion Kit, and the HP Hole Punch Kit.

Automatic discovery and driver configuration through bidirectional communication occurs in the following circumstances:

- Upon first installation of a driver, using Enterprise Autoconfiguration (EAC)
- When you use the **Update Now** feature for a driver that is already installed

Bidirectional communication

In environments that support bidirectional communication, the computer communicates with the MFP during installation, determines the physical configuration, and then configures the driver accordingly.

Bidirectional communication is the MFP capability to respond to data inquiries from the computer and report back information, such as what type of print media is available or what accessories are connected to the MFP. If the connection does not have this capability (that is, if it has no bidirectional mode), it can only accept commands from the host and cannot report back information to the host computer.

Bidirectional communication depends on your network operating system and on the type of connection you have between your computer and your MFP.

When you install HP Toolbox, bidirectional communication is always enabled. Installing HP Toolbox activates the HP Network Registry Agent (HPNRA) to ensure constant communication between your computer and the MFP. When you install a driver without installing HP Toolbox at the same time, bidirectional communication is enabled only to configure the driver, and is then disabled unless the driver's **Update Now** feature is used to update the driver.

Enterprise AutoConfiguration

Enterprise AutoConfiguration (EAC) uses bidirectional communication to provide autoconfiguration functionality for installation of the print driver over a network, whether you use the installer on your print-system software CD-ROM or the Add Printer wizard to install the driver. Driver installation that includes EAC is configured with the same settings as the physical configuration of the device. Configuration occurs without user interaction. If bidirectional-communication software has been installed previously, EAC is not activated, and the pre-existing bidirectional-communication software is used to configure the print driver.

If bidirectional communication software has not been installed, EAC installs bidirectional-communication software that allows it to communicate with the MFP and automatically match the print driver with the actual MFP configuration. EAC is activated during installation of the driver or whenever the **Update Now** feature is used.

If the configuration of the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp changes after installation, the driver can be automatically updated with the new configuration in environments that support bidirectional communication by using the **Update Now** feature. For example, if the HP LaserJet 9065mfp is installed and an optional paper-handling accessory is added later, you can use the **Update Now** feature to query the MFP and update the settings to match the MFP's configuration.

The **Update Now** feature triggers the driver to recheck the registry for new information. The feature automatically updates the registry and changes the configuration information that appears on the **Configure** tab if you are using a traditional HP PCL driver, and on the **Device Settings** tab if you are using an HP PCL or PS unidriver.

Note

If you are using an HP PCL or PS unidriver, you must select **Update Now** through the **Automatic Configuration** setting in the HP PS or PCL unidriver's **Device Settings** tab. If you are using an HP traditional PCL 6 driver, you must click the **Update Now** button on the **Configure** tab. The Update Now feature is not available with the HP traditional PS driver.

The following tables show the availability of Enterprise Autoconfiguration for various operating systems and network environments that support bidirectional communication.

Table 2-1. Enterprise Autoconfiguration availability in Microsoft Windows and Microsoft Share

Method	Connection type		Microsoft Windows					Microsoft Share ¹			
			98	Me	NT 4.0	2000	XP	2000/XP host with 2000/XP client	NT 4.0 host with NT 4.0 client	Other	
Installer	Direct connect	Parallel									
		Network	Jetdirect	TCP/IP	x	x	x	x	x	x	x ²
	IPX/SPX			x	x	x	x	x	x	x ²	
	Standard		TCP/IP (HP)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x ²	
			TCP/IP (MS)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x ²	
			IPX/SPX (HP)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x ²	

Table 2-1. Enterprise Autoconfiguration availability in Microsoft Windows and Microsoft Share (continued)

Add Printer	Direct connect	Parallel										
		Network	Jetdirect	TCP/IP	x	x	x	x	x	x		
	IPX/SPX			x	x	x	x	x	x	x ²		
	Standard		TCP/IP (HP)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x ²		
			TCP/IP (MS)				x	x	x	x ²		
			IPX/SPX (HP)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x ²		

¹ This column represents the following Microsoft Share configurations:
 2000, XP, or 2003 host with NT 4.0, 98, or Me client
 NT 4.0 host with 2000, XP, 2003, 98, or Me client
 98 or Me host with any client

² In this environment, client machines use Point and Print to download the configured driver from the host.

Table 2-2. Enterprise Autoconfiguration availability in Novell Netware environments

Method	Connection type		Novell				
			Netware 4.x		Netware 5.x		
			Bindery queue	NDS queue	Bindery queue	NT 4.0	
Installer	Direct connect	Universal serial bus (USB)					
		Parallel					
	Network	Jetdirect	TCP/IP	x	x	x	x
			IPX/SPX				
		Standard	TCP/IP (HP)				
			TCP/IP (MS ¹)				
	IPX/SPX (HP)						

¹ Bidirectional functionality is supported only with the client software from Novell. It is not supported with Microsoft (MS) Client Service for NetWare.

HP Driver Preconfiguration

HP Driver Preconfiguration is most beneficial when configuring print drivers for multiple workstations or print servers for print queues that share the same configuration. Two types of features can be configured: device settings and printing preferences settings. The driver is configured to match the MFP hardware so that gaining access to all of the MFP accessories through the driver is enabled correctly (for example, for duplexing units and additional input trays). Most driver feature settings can also be configured.

HP Preconfiguration configures the driver to match the accessories installed on the MFP, or to match the settings made by IT administrators in the configuration (.CFG) file (for example, optional trays, total amount of memory, job storage settings, mopier settings).

The preconfiguration process consists of three basic steps: driver acquisition, driver preconfiguration, and driver installation and deployment. These steps can be accomplished in different ways, depending on the tool that is being used to define the configuration.

The configuration process for driver preconfiguration is supported through three distinct tools. All three are designed with the same basic UI controls for interacting with the configuration (.CFG) file, but are packaged differently, either to support established MFP installation workflows or to leave the deployment and installation of the driver entirely up to the user. These tools are:

- **HP Driver Configuration Editor.** The HP Driver Configuration Editor is a small standalone Windows application that the administrator can use to open the .CFG file associated with a particular driver and make modifications that are applied when that driver is installed on the target computer. It is intended for use in environments where there is an established process for deploying drivers. To support any Novell or HP Print Server Appliance (PSA) Point and Print environments, this is the preconfiguration tool of choice. It is used in the way that any ordinary Windows application is used.
- **The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin.** HP Web JetAdmin provides a queue creation application that can be used to create printers on any Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows 2003 server or workstation. The HP Web JetAdmin Driver Configuration Plugin adds a number of screens to the existing queue creation workflow from which the drivers that are being installed for the queues can be customized as part of the process. The plug-in is limited to Internet Explorer browsers. Netscape Navigator (TM) is not supported.
- **HP Customization Utility/Silent Installer.** The Customization Utility features an install-time mode of HP Driver Preconfiguration. IT administrators can use the utility to preconfigure the drivers for a printing-system software driver installation with the silent installer.

Lockable features

The following driver features can be locked to prevent end-users from changing settings:

- **Print on Both Sides (Duplex)**
- **Media Type**
- **Paper Source**
- **Output Bin**

When a feature is locked, the selected default option is the only option that is available to users. Generally, the feature is simply disabled in the driver UI after it has been installed.

Continuous export

The term "continuous export" refers to the ability of the driver to copy the last set of driver settings back to the working copy of the preconfiguration file. Using this feature, the exported values can be applied when a compatible version of the driver is used to upgrade the print driver. For instance, if orientation is set to "Landscape" in an installed version of the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp PCL 6 driver for Windows NT 4.0, then the orientation setting in the newly upgraded HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp PCL 6 driver for Windows XP and Windows Server 2003 is automatically set to "Landscape." The continuous export feature functions transparently from the user's perspective and works only between drivers from identical models.

Note

Not all of the driver parameters can be exported; however, the list is always the same for those that can be preconfigured.

The following table shows drivers and operating systems that support HP Driver Preconfiguration.

Table 2-3. Operating systems that support HP Driver Preconfiguration

Driver	Windows 98	Windows Me	Windows NT 4.0	Windows 2000	Windows XP ²
HP traditional PCL 6	Yes	Yes	Yes	N/A ¹	N/A
HP traditional PS	No	No	No	N/A	N/A
HP PCL 6 unidriver	N/A	N/A	N/A	Yes	Yes
HP PS unidriver	N/A	N/A	N/A	Yes	Yes

¹ N/A: Not applicable; the driver is not supported in this operating system.

² This information also applies to Windows Server 2003.

HP Embedded Web Server

The HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) is a standard feature for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.

The EWS provides a simple, easy-to-use solution for one-to-one product management. In offices that have a limited number of products, remote management of printing devices can be accomplished without installing any management software, such as HP Web Jetadmin. The only requirement is that the management console have a supported Web browser.

In environments with a larger number of products, where one-to-one management is impractical, the HP Embedded Web Server and HP Web Jetadmin work together to provide scalable remote product management. Use HP Web Jetadmin for consolidated management tasks, when you want to perform operations on a selected set of products instead of on individual products. For such environments, HP provides hooks between the HP Embedded Web Server and HP Web Jetadmin so that you can configure HP Embedded Web Server features on multiple products in one operation. For example, you can set the security password for the HP Embedded Web Server simultaneously on a population of products.

For additional information and a copy of the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*, go to: <http://www.hp.com/support/lj9055mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/lj9065mfp>.

To view information about the MFP by using the HP Embedded Web Server, open a supported Web browser and type in the MFP transmission control protocol/internet protocol (TCP/IP) address or host name. To find the TCP/IP address, look for **IP Address** on the enhanced input/output (EIO) Jetdirect page, in the **TCP/IP** section. To find the host name of the MFP, look for **Host Name** in the **TCP/IP** section.

You also can view information about an installed HP Jetdirect print server by clicking the **Networking** tab in the HP Embedded Web Server window.

To print a copy of the EIO Jetdirect page from the control panel display, follow these steps:

- 1 Press the Mode selection button until the light comes on next to **Print**. (The Mode selection key has two arrows pointing in a circular direction.)
- 2 Touch **MENUS**.
- 3 Touch **INFORMATION**.
- 4 Touch **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
- 5 Look in the configuration page section marked "Printer Information" for the firmware date code. The firmware date code looks something like this: 20031002 07.000.0. (The EIO Jetdirect page is the second page of the Configuration Page printout.)

The EWS frame

Each page in the EWS has a frame with a top banner, two category tabs, a left-aligned navigation menu bar, and a main-content area. Selecting one of the category tabs causes the corresponding left-aligned navigation bar to appear. The left-aligned navigation menu includes links to content appropriate for that tab. The main-content area displays information and options in response to navigation tab selections menu bar selections.

See the following sections for more information about each tab or area:

- [Information tab](#)
- [Settings tab](#)
- [Networking tab](#)

Information tab

The following information is available on the HP Embedded Web Server **Information** tab. To view the information, click the menu items on the left side of the HP Embedded Web Server **Information** tab.

Not all of the pages on the tab are shown in this document. For more information, see the *HP EWS User Guide*.

- **Device Status page.** This page provides current status information about your MFP.
- **Configuration page.** This page provides information about the configuration of your MFP.
- **Supplies Status.** This page provides information about the print cartridge and the total pages that have printed, and the serial number of the MFP.
- **Event log.** This page provides information about reported MFP errors.
- **Usage page.** This page provides a page count for each size of media that has passed through the device, as well as the number of duplexed pages.
- **Device Information.** This page shows device information, such as the MFP TCP/IP address and serial number.
- **Print.** You can use this page to print documents that are print-ready, such as those generated by a "print to file" driver option (PRN) extension by default, Printer Control Language (PCL) documents, PostScript (PS) documents, Portable File Documents (PDF), and text (TXT) files.

Links to off-product solutions

Links within the pages of the HP Web Server provide an easy way to locate information or complete tasks.

- **hp instant support.** This link connects you to a set of dynamic Web resources that help you solve specific problems and determine additional services that might be available for your device. Specific status and configuration information about the MFP is retained and directed to the "Solve a Problem" Web site. This site offers targeted support content and messages to help resolve problems as quickly as possible.
- **Product Support.** This link connects to an HP product support page from which you can search for information, contact the HP customer care home page, or find additional resources for your MFP.

Device Status page

Status information (such as whether the MFP is online or the toner is low) is available through your Web browser on a computer that is linked directly to the MFP. You can view this information without physically going to the MFP to identify the status. The following illustration shows how this information is presented on the MFP Web page.

hp LaserJet 9065mfp / 192.168.0.10
hp LaserJet 9065mfp

Information Settings Networking [Log In](#)

Device Status

Ready

Stop Continue

Supplies

Black Toner: **OK**
Order HP Part: Q3681C (Americas), Q3682C (Europe), Q3683C (Asia Pacific)

Front Staples: **OK**
Order HP Part: Q3641A

Rear Staples: **OK**
Order HP Part: Q3641A

[Supplies Details](#)

Media

Input/Output	Status	Size	Type
Tray 1		LETTER	PLAIN
Tray 2		A3	PLAIN
Tray 3		B4 (JIS)	PLAIN
Tray 4		LETTER	PLAIN
Tray 5		LETTER	PLAIN
UPPER OUTPUT		N/A	N/A
MAIN OUTPUT		N/A	N/A

[Change Settings](#)

Capabilities

Duplex: OFF
Mopier: ON
1: TRAY 1, 100 Sheets
2: TRAY 2, 500 Sheets
3: TRAY 3, 500 Sheets
4: TRAY 4, 1500 Sheets
5: TRAY 5, 4000 Sheets

Figure 2-1. Device Status page on the Information tab

Configuration page

You can gain access to the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp configuration page remotely through the HP Embedded Web Server. The HP Embedded Web Server configuration page provides configuration information about the MFP in the same way as the configuration page printed from the MFP. The following illustration shows an example of a configuration page viewed remotely through the HP Embedded Web Server.

The screenshot shows the HP Embedded Web Server interface for an hp LaserJet 9065mfp. The top navigation bar includes 'Information', 'Settings', and 'Networking' tabs, with 'Log In' on the right. The left sidebar contains a menu with 'Device Status', 'Configuration Page', 'Supplies Status', 'Event Log', 'Usage Page', 'Device Information', and 'Print'. Below this is an 'Other Links' section with 'hp instant support' and 'Product Support'.

The main content area is titled 'Configuration Page' and is divided into several sections:

- Device Information:**

Product Name:	hp LaserJet 9065mfp
Device Name:	hp LaserJet 9065mfp
Device Model:	CXXXXA
Device Serial Number:	CNZZX91001
Print Controller Serial Number:	S46XXXXXXXX
PRCB Firmware Version:	
ICB Firmware Version:	C7-0202
Print Controller Firmware:	20030808 06.030.5
Service ID:	00000
PS Wait Time-out:	300 seconds
- Installed Personalities and Options:**

Print Controller:	
PCL	(20010402)
PCLXL	(20010402)
POSTSCRIPT	(20010402)
PDF	(20021216)
MIME	(105)
DIMM Slot 1:	Side 1: 8 MB Flash Side 2: 8 MB Flash
DIMM Slot 2:	Side 1: 128 MB SDRAM Side 2: 128 MB SDRAM
DIMM Slot 3:	Empty
DIMM Slot 4:	Empty
EIO 1:	HP J6073A
EIO 2:	HP JetDirect J6057A
DISK Storage:	18949 MB Capacity
- Memory:**

Print Controller Memory:	256 MB
Copy Controller Memory:	64 MB
DWS:	6.0

Automatic Resource Saving Enabled
- Print Controller Security:**

Control Panel Lock:	NONE
Control Panel Password:	DISABLED
Device Type: DISK	Write Protect: DISABLED
- Paper Trays and Options:**

Default Paper Size:	LETTER
Tray 1 Size:	LETTER
Tray 1 Type:	PLAIN
Tray 2 Size:	A3
Tray 3 Size:	B4(JIS)
Tray 4 Size:	LETTER
Tray 5 Size:	LETTER
Duplex Unit	
Stapler Unit	
Hole Punch Unit	

Figure 2-2. Configuration page on Information tab

Settings tab

The following information is available on the HP Embedded Web Server **Settings** tab. To view the information, click the menu items on the left side of the HP Embedded Web Server **Settings** tab.

Not all of the pages on the tab are shown in this document. For more information, see the *HP EWS User Guide*.

- **Configure Device.** You can use the Configure Device page to print device information pages and configure the device *remotely*.
- **Email Server.** Use the Email Server page to configure e-mail settings for outgoing e-mail.
- **Alerts.** IT Administrators can set up the MFP to send alerts to anyone through e-mail messages.
- **AutoSend.** Use the AutoSend page to send device configuration and supplies-usage information periodically to your service provider.
- **Security.** Use this page to manage security on the MFP.
- **Edit Other Links.** Use the Edit Other Links page to add or customize up to five links to the Web sites of your choice.
- **Device Information.** Use the Device Information page to provide a name of your choice for the device, assign an asset number, and configure the company name, the person to contact about the device, and the device's physical location.
- **Language.** Use the Language page to select the language in which the EWS pages appear.
- **Time Services.** Use the Time Services page to manage network time settings on the MFP.
- **Ordering Information.** Use the Ordering Information page to write specific ordering information for supplies.
- **Weekly Timer.** The Weekly Timer enables an IT Administrator to schedule a block of time when the device is inoperable by a walk-up user.
- **Copy Monitor.** The Copy Monitor page provides configuration settings for the device's Electronic Copy Monitor (ECM) feature.

Configure device

You can obtain MFP configuration information through a Web browser by opening the MFP HP Embedded Web Server page and changing any of the basic configuration information on the **Settings** tab. Security and password controls give management information system managers the level of control that they require within their environments. The following illustration shows an example of MFP options that can be configured remotely.

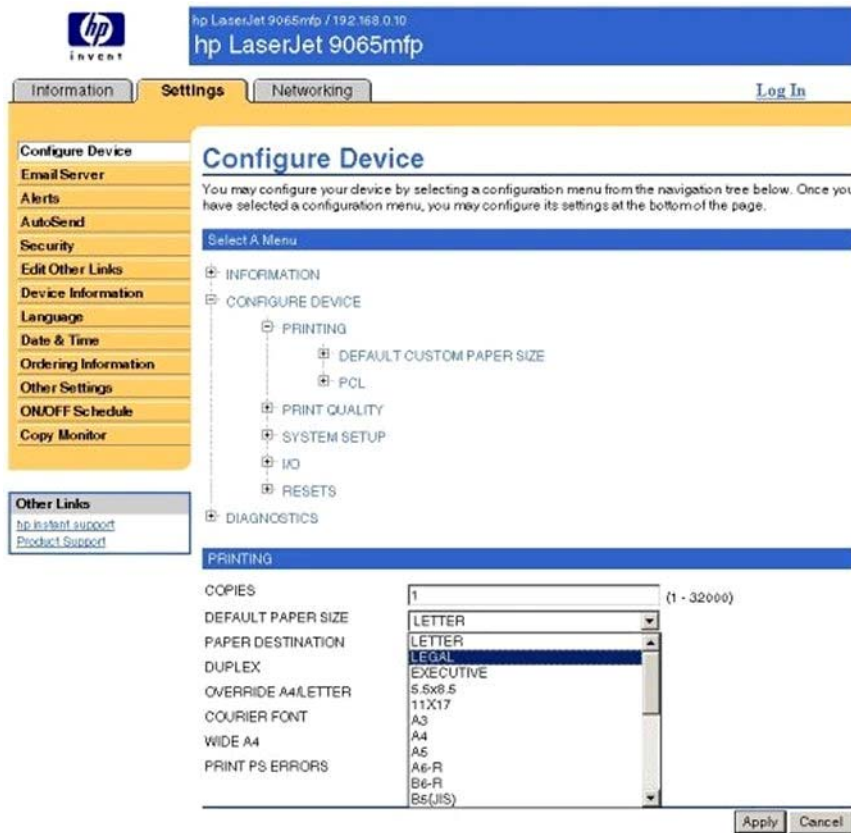


Figure 2-3. Settings tab - Configure Device

Alerts

The MFP can automatically send e-mail alerts about printing problems or job status to specified e-mail addresses. For example, if toner is low, the MFP can notify the person who is responsible for ordering or changing the toner bottle. If a MFP failure occurs, the MFP can send an e-mail alert directly to the person who is responsible for fixing the problem. These e-mail alerts can be configured to be sent to any device that can accept e-mail, such as digital phones, pagers, and personal digital assistants (PDAs). In large environments, administrators can route e-mail addresses to list-servers or URLs for expanded notification.

The screenshot shows the HP LaserJet 9065mfp web interface. At the top, there is a blue header with the HP logo and the text 'hp LaserJet 9065mfp / 192.168.0.10' and 'hp LaserJet 9065mfp'. Below the header, there are tabs for 'Information', 'Settings', and 'Networking', with 'Settings' being the active tab. A 'Log In' link is also present. On the left side, there is a navigation menu with options like 'Configure Device', 'Email Server', 'Alerts', 'AutoSend', 'Security', 'Edit Other Links', 'Device Information', 'Language', 'Date & Time', 'Ordering Information', 'Other Settings', 'ON/OFF Schedule', and 'Copy Monitor'. The main content area is titled 'Alerts - setup' and is divided into four steps:

- Step 1: Type the list name**: A text input field for 'List Name' with 'List 1' entered.
- Step 2: Type the alert destinations**: A text area for 'Alert Destinations' containing 'admin@your.company.com;'. Below this, there are instructions on how to format destinations (e.g., email addresses, mobile devices, or website URLs).
- Step 3: Select Alerts**: A table with columns for 'Alert Name', 'Selected', and 'Threshold'. The table lists various alerts with checkboxes for selection and input fields for thresholds.
- Step 4: Select e-mail attachments (optional)**: A section for selecting attachments to include in email alerts.

Alert Name	Selected	Threshold
Replace toner bottle	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Replace toner bottle (Out)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Load Front Stapler	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Load Rear Stapler	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Remove Paper Jam	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/> minutes elapsed
Close Drawers, Doors And Covers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/> minutes elapsed
Tray Open	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/> minutes elapsed
Tray Empty (Load)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/> minutes elapsed

Figure 2-4.

Configurable Alerts page

Networking tab

The following options are available on the tab on the HP Embedded Web Server **Networking** tab.

Not all the pages on the tab are shown in this document. For more information, see the *HP EWS User Guide*.

The screenshot shows the HP Embedded Web Server interface for the 'hp LaserJet 9065mfp'. The 'Networking' tab is selected, and the 'Configuration' section is active. The left sidebar contains a menu with three main categories: CONFIGURATION (Network Settings, Other Settings, Privacy Settings, Select Language), SECURITY (Settings, Authorization, Mgmt. Protocols), and DIAGNOSTICS (Network Statistics, Protocol Info, Configuration Page, Configuration Page). Below the menu are 'Other Links' for Help, Support, and HP Home. The main content area is titled 'Network Settings' and has sub-tabs for TCP/IP, IPX/SPX, AppleTalk, DLC/LLC, and SNMP. The 'TCP/IP' sub-tab is selected, showing the 'IP Configuration Method' set to 'BOOTP'. A note states: 'Note: A change in IP Address will result in loss of connectivity to the browser.' The form includes fields for Host Name (HP LaserJet 9065mfp), IP Address (192.168.0.10), Subnet Mask (255.255.255.0), Default Gateway (192.68.0.200), Domain Name, Primary WINS Server, Secondary WINS Server, Syslog Server, Syslog Maximum Messages (10), Syslog Priority (7), Idle Timeout (270 Seconds), TTL/SLP (4), System Contact, System Location, LPD Banner Page (Enable), and Default IP (Legacy Default IP). A checkbox is checked for 'Send DHCP requests if IP address is Auto IP (169.254.x.x) or Legacy Default IP'. 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

Figure 2-5. Networking tab - Configuration section

The menu on the left side of the screen contains other networking options under three categories: configuration, security, and diagnostics. For more information, see the *HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide*.

Configuration section

- Network Settings
- Other Settings
- Privacy Settings
- Select Language

Security section

- Settings
- Authorization
- Mgmt. Protocols

Diagnostics section

- Network Statistics
- Protocol Info
- Configuration Page

Network settings

From the **Networking** tab, you can enable and configure the following network protocols:

- TCP/IP
- IPX/SPX
- AppleTalk
- Data link control/logical link control (DLC/LLC)
- Simple network management protocol (SNMP)

HP Toolbox

The HP Toolbox is a tool for end users that is made up of a series of Web pages and a supporting Windows-based and Macintosh-based software programs. The HP Toolbox provides links to MFP status information and enables you to receive alerts for MFP events.

HP Toolbox requirements

The HP Toolbox is supported only for Windows 98 and later operating systems (Windows Me, Windows 2000, and 32-bit Windows XP), and Macintosh OS 10.2 and later operating systems. You must have performed a complete printing-system software installation in order to use HP Toolbox.

On a network connection, bidirectional communication is supported through a transmission control protocol/internet protocol (TCP/IP) or an information retrieval experiment/sequenced packet exchange (IPX/SPX) connection.

Note

The following Web browser versions (or later) are required for full HP Toolbox functionality: Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) 5.5, Netscape 6.2, or Opera 7. The HP Toolbox functions best with more-recent browser versions: Microsoft IE 6 and later, Netscape 7 and later, Opera 7 and later.

The following tables provide information about the availability of the HP Toolbox in various operating systems and network environments.

Table 2-4. HP Toolbox availability in Microsoft Windows and Microsoft Share

Method	Connection type		Microsoft Windows					Microsoft Share		
			98	Me	NT 4.0	2000	XP	98/NT 4.0 host ²	2000/XP host ²	
Installer	Direct connect	Parallel ³								
		Network	Jetdirect	IPX/SPX	x	x		x	x	x
	Installer			x	x		x	x	x	x
	Standard		TCP/IP (HP)	x	x		x	x	x	x
		TCP/IP (MS)	x	x		x	x	x	x	
		IPX/SPX (HP)	x	x		x	x	x	x	

1 The HP Toolbox is not supported in the Windows NT 4.0 OS.

2 When using Microsoft Share, the HP Toolbox must be installed on both the host and the client machines.

3 The HP Toolbox is not supported with direct-connect shares.

Table 2-5. Toolbox availability in Novell Netware environments

Method	Connection type		Novell				
			Netware 4.x		Netware 5.x		
			Bindery queue	NDS queue	Bindery queue	NDS queue	

Table 2-5. Toolbox availability in Novell Netware environments (continued)

Installer	Network	Jetdirect	TCP/IP	x	x	x	x
			IPX/SPX	x	x	x	x
		TCP/IP	TCP/IP (HP)	x	x	x	x
			TCP/IP (MS ¹)	x	x	x	x
			IPX/SPX (HP)	x	x	x	x

¹ Bidirectional functionality is supported only with the client software from Novell. It is not supported with Microsoft Client Service for NetWare.

To view the HP Toolbox

Open the HP Toolbox in one of these ways:

- Double-click the **hp Toolbox Device Status and Alerts** icon in the system tray.
- On the **Start** menu, click **Programs**, click **HP LaserJet 9055mfp** or **HP LaserJet 9065mfp**, and then click **HP LaserJet toolbox**. The HP Toolbox opens in a Web browser.

The HP Toolbox software contains two tabs: the **Device** tab and the **Alerts** tab. These tabs are on local browser pages that are installed when you install the HP Toolbox utility as part of a Custom Installation. You do not need an Internet service provider to view them.

The HP Toolbox also contains an area with links to the HP Web site. Although you do not need to have Internet access to open and use the HP Toolbox, you must have Internet access in order to gain access to the site that is associated with the link in the **Other Links** area.

The HP Toolbox frame

Each page in the HP Toolbox has a frame with a top banner, two category tabs, a left-aligned navigation menu bar, and a main-content area. Selecting one of the category tabs causes the corresponding left-aligned navigation bar to appear. The left-aligned navigation menu includes links to content that is appropriate for that tab. The main-content area displays information and options in response to navigation tab selections or from selections in the menu bar.

See the following sections for more information about each tab or area:

- [Status Tab](#)
- [Alerts tab](#)

Status Tab

The **Status** tab provides the following options:

- **Device Status page.** This page shows the percentage of life remaining for each consumable; the status and configuration information for the input trays and output bins; and the accessories that are installed on the computer.
- **Supplies Status page.** This page shows the levels remaining for all consumables and the HP Part Numbers for each consumable. (It is helpful to have the part numbers available when it is time to order supplies.)
- **HP Toolbox links.** This area contains links to the **Device Select** page, the **Current Alerts** page, and the **Text Only** page (for viewing HP Toolbox pages in a text-only format).

The following illustration shows the HP Toolbox **Device Status** page.

hp LaserJet 9065 - 32dhcp521.boi.hp.com - hp LaserJet 9065mfp PCL 6
toolbox

About toolbox

Status Alerts

Device Status
Supplies Status

toolbox Links
[Select a device](#)
[View current alerts](#)
[Text only page](#)

Device Status

Ready

Continue

Supplies

Black Toner: **OK**
Order HP Part: Q3681C (Americas), Q3682C (Europe), Q3683C (Asia Pacific)

Front Staples: **OK**
Order HP Part: Q3641A

Rear Staples: **OK**
Order HP Part: Q3641A

[Supplies Details](#)

Media

Input/Output	Status	Size	Type
Tray 1		11X17	PLAIN
Tray 2		LETTER	PLAIN
Tray 3		11X17	PLAIN
Tray 4		LETTER-R	PLAIN
Tray 5		LETTER	PLAIN
UPPER OUTPUT	OK	N/A	N/A
MAIN OUTPUT	OK	N/A	N/A

Capabilities

Device Serial Number: CNBBC91001
Print Controller Serial Number: S46XXXXXXXX
ICB Firmware Version: D8-0000
PRCB Firmware Version:
C1: 37-B002
C2: 15-B000
C3: 16-EBG0

Figure 2-6. The HP Toolbox Device Status page

The following illustration shows the HP Toolbox **Supplies Status** page.

hp LaserJet 9065 - 32dhp521.boi.hp.com - hp LaserJet 9065mfp PCL 6
toolbox

About toolbox

Status Alerts


Device Status

Supplies Status

toolbox Links

- Select a device
- View current alerts
- Text only page

Customer Installable

 Black Toner Order HP Part: Q3681C (Americas), Q3682C (Europe), Q3683C (Asia Pacific)	
Toner Low Reached:	NO
Pages Printed Since Low:	0


 Staple Cartridge Order HP Part: Q3641A	
Front Staples:	OK
Rear Staples:	OK

Figure 2-7. Supplies Status page

Alerts tab

From the **Alerts** tab, you can view the following pages:

- **Set up Status Alerts**
- **Administrative Settings**

Set up Status Alerts page

The following illustration shows the **Set up Status Alerts** page.

hp LaserJet 9065 - 32dhcp521.boi.hp.com - hp LaserJet 9065mfp PCL 6
toolbox

About toolbox

Status Alerts

Set up Status Alerts

Administrative Settings

toolbox Links

Select a device

View current alerts

Text only page

Alerts will be sent only while printing from this computer

Turn on alerts

Turn off alerts

Show alert when:

Printer cannot print (e.g. paper out)

HP supply needs to be ordered

Warning (device has an error but can continue)

Show alert as:

Pop-up message

System tray icon

Apply Reset Cancel

Figure 2-8. Set up Status Alerts page

The **Set up Status Alerts** page provides radio buttons to turn status alerts on or off. When you turn on alerts, you can then select the check boxes in the **Show alert when:** category to generate alerts when different events occur with the MFP. The following events can be selected to generate alerts:

- Printer (MFP) cannot print (e.g. paper out)
- HP supply needs to be ordered (for example, when the toner is low)
- Warning (device has an error but can continue)

Note

HP Toolbox is an end-user utility for viewing product status. Accordingly, this page can be used to turn alerts on and off, to determine the conditions in which alerts appear, and to select the format in which they appear. To configure the alerts themselves, use the HP Embedded Web Server.

Use the check boxes in the **Show alerts as:** category to select the type of alert notification that will occur at the computer when an alert is received. The following types of alert notifications are available:

- Pop-up message
- System tray icon

The following buttons appear at the bottom of the **Set up Status Alerts** page:

- **Apply.** Click this button to save the alerts that you set. When you click **Apply**, the HP Toolbox displays a page that confirms that the settings were saved.
- **Reset.** Click this button to return the settings to the state they were in before you opened the **Set up Status Alerts** page.
- **Cancel.** Click this button to cancel any changes and return to the **Device Status** page.

Administrative Settings page

The following illustration shows the **Administrative Settings** page.

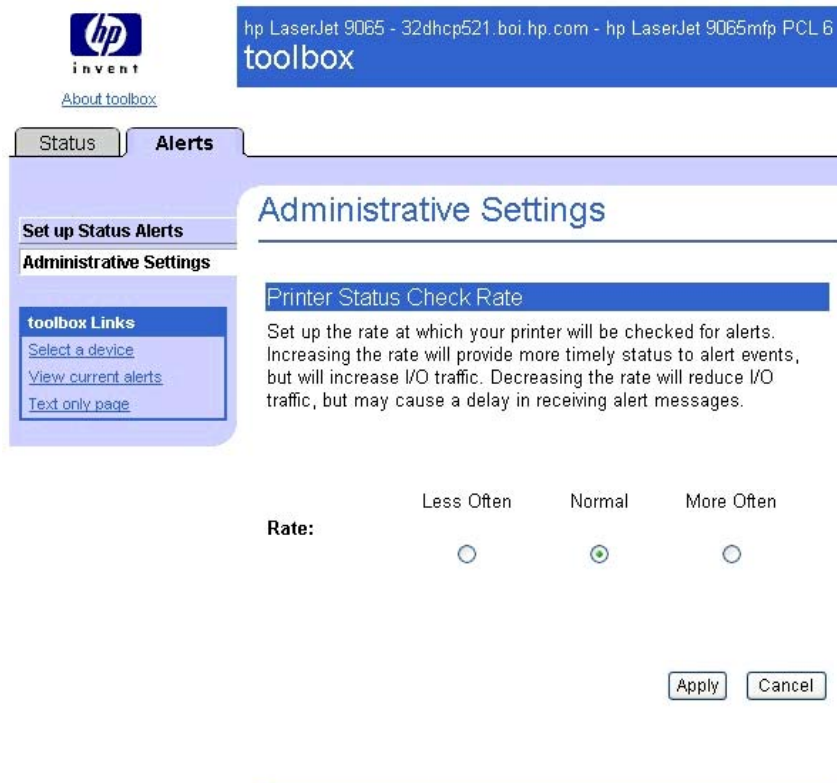


Figure 2-9. Administrative Settings page

The **Administrative Settings** page provides radio buttons to adjust the status check rate, which is how often the MFP is checked for alerts. The following rates can be selected:

- **Less Often.** This rate reduces input/output (I/O) traffic, but can cause some alerts to be delayed.
- **Normal.** This is the default rate setting.
- **More Often.** This rate provides the fastest alert notification, but causes more I/O traffic.

Euro character

The euro is the name for the currency of the European Union (EU). This unit was launched on January 1, 1999. The euro has changed the way business is conducted in Europe and has affected every company and industry in the world. It is vital that companies understand and prepare for the changes the euro brings.

This HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp includes euro characters for each of the internal fonts. The MFP can print the euro character in the Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 operating systems. Hewlett-Packard is committed to maximizing document portability through supporting and promoting euro-symbol standards.

Remote firmware update

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp features a remote firmware update capability. The method for downloading remote firmware updates from the Web site is similar to that used to download the latest printing-system software and print drivers.

The process for remotely upgrading MFP firmware involves three steps:

- 1 Determine the current level of firmware installed on the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.
- 2 Go to the HP Web site and download the latest firmware to your computer.
- 3 Download the new firmware to the MFP.

Determining the current level of firmware

To determine the current level of firmware, view the configuration page. To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.

- 1 Press the Mode selection button until the light comes on next to **Print**. (The Mode selection key has two arrows pointing in a circular direction.)
- 2 Touch **MENUS**.
- 3 Touch **INFORMATION**.
- 4 Touch **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
- 5 Look in the configuration page section marked "Printer Information" for the firmware date code. The firmware date code looks something like this: 20031002 07.000.0.

Downloading the new firmware from the HP Web site

For support information about downloading new firmware from the Web, go to http://www.hp.com/support/lj9055mfp_firmware or http://www.hp.com/support/lj9065mfp_firmware.

The MFP can receive an .RFU update to a MFP as long as it is in a **READY** state. The MFP waits for all of the I/O channels to become idle before performing the update.

Note

If the firmware update involves a change in the format of nonvolatile random-access memory (NVRAM), any menu settings that are changed from the default settings return to default settings. The settings must be changed again if you want them to be different from the defaults. Examples of settings that are affected in this way are tray types, default symbol sets, and Web access alerts.

The elapsed time for an update depends on the I/O transfer time, as well as the time that it takes for the MFP to reinitialize. The I/O transfer time depends on a number of things, including the speed of the host computer that is sending the update and the I/O method (parallel or network). The reinitialization time depends on the specific hardware configuration of the MFP, such as the number of EIO devices installed, the presence of external paper-handling devices, and the amount of memory installed.

If the remote firmware update process is interrupted before the firmware is downloaded (while **RECEIVING UPGRADE** appears on the control panel display), the firmware file must be sent again. If power is lost during the flash dual inline memory module (DIMM) update (while **UPGRADING PRINTER** appears on the control panel display), the update is interrupted and the message **RESEND UPGRADE** appears (in English only) on the control panel display. The update must now be sent only by a computer that is attached to the parallel port of the MFP.

Finally, any print jobs ahead of the .RFU job in the queue are printed before the update is processed.

Use one of the following methods to update your MFP.

Remote firmware update using FTP through a browser

Complete the following steps to update the MFP firmware by using FTP through a browser.

Note

The following instructions can be used on Windows or Mac operating systems.

- 1 Take note of the TCP/IP address on the EIO Jetdirect page. The Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware](#).
- 2 Open a browser window.
- 3 In the address line of the browser, type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`, where <IPADDRESS> is the TCP/IP address of your MFP. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `FTP 192.168.0.90`
- 4 Locate the downloaded .RFU file for the MFP.
- 5 Drag and drop the .RFU file onto the **PORT1** icon in the browser window.

Note

The MFP automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel.

Remote firmware update by using FTP on a direct network connection

If the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp uses a direct network connection, use file transfer protocol (FTP) to update your HP LaserJet firmware. Complete the following steps for your operating system.

Windows operating systems

- 1 Take note of the TCP/IP address on the EIO Jetdirect page. The HP Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware](#).

Note

Before connecting to the MFP, make sure that the MFP is not in PowerSave mode. Also make sure that any error messages are cleared from the control panel display.

- 2 Open a command window on your computer.
- 3 Type `ftp <TCP/IP MFP ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `ftp 192.168.0.90`.
- 4 Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
- 5 When prompted for the user name, press **Enter**.
- 6 When prompted for the password, press **Enter**.
- 7 Type `bin` at the command prompt.
- 8 Press **Enter**. The message **200 Types set to I, Using binary mode to transfer files** appears in the command window.
- 9 Type `put <FILENAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the .RFU file that was downloaded from the Web, including the path. For example, type `put C:\LJ\9055FW.RFU` and then press **Enter**.

Note

If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "c:\My Documents\LJ\9055fw.rfu"`

The following series of messages appears in the command window:

- **200 PORT command successful**
- **150 Opening BINARY mode data connection**
- **226 Ready**
- **226 Processing Job**
- **226 Transfer complete**

After these messages appear, a message containing transfer speed information appears.

- 10 The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the MFP. This can take about five minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the MFP or computer.

Note

The MFP automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel.

- 11 At the command prompt, type `bye` to exit the FTP command.
- 12 At the command prompt, type `exit` to return to the Windows interface.

Macintosh operating systems

- 1 Take note of the TCP/IP address on the EIO Jetdirect page. The Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware](#).
- 2 Open a Terminal window on your Macintosh. You can find the Terminal application on the computer hard drive under the Applications/Utilities folder.

- 3 Type `FTP <TCP/IP MFP ADDRESS>` For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `FTP 192.168.0.90`
- 4 Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
- 5 When prompted for a user name and password, press **Enter**.
- 6 Type `put <path>`, where `<path>` is the location where the .RFU file was downloaded from the Web, including the path. For example, type `put /username/desktop/9055fw.rfu` and then press **Enter**.

Note

If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "/user name/desktop/9055FW.RFU"`
To ensure that the entire proper path to the .RFU file is placed in the `put` command, type `put` and a space, and then drag and drop the .RFU file onto the terminal window. The complete path to the file will be placed after the `put` command automatically.

- 7 The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the MFP. This can take about five minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the MFP or computer.

Note

The MFP automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel.

Remote firmware update through a local Windows port

If the MFP is connected through a local port (parallel), then you can send the .RFU file directly to the MFP by using a `COPY` command from a command prompt or an MS-DOS (R) window. At the command prompt, perform the following steps for your operating system.

Windows 98 or Windows Me

- 1 From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type:
`Mode lpt1:,,p`

Note

If the MFP is attached to a parallel port other than LPT1, then substitute the proper LPT port number in the `mode` command.

- 2 Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The response you receive should be similar to these examples:
> **LPT1 Not Rerouted**
> **Resident portion of MODE loaded**
> **Infinite retry on parallel printer time-out**
- 3 At a command prompt, type `copy /b <FILENAME> <PORTNAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the .RFU file (including the path) and `<PORTNAME>` is the name of the appropriate MFP port (such as LPT1). For example, `C:\>copy/b c:\9055fw.rfu lpt1`

Note

If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy/b "c:\My Documents\9055fw.rfu" lpt1`

- 4 Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The messages described in the section [MFP messages during the firmware update](#) appear on the control panel.

Note

The MFP automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel.

- 5 Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.
- 6 Type `exit` at the command prompt to close the command window.

Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003

The .RFU file can be sent directly to the MFP by typing a **copy** command at a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window.

- 1 At a command prompt, type `copy /b <FILENAME> <PORTNAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the .RFU file (including the path) and `<PORTNAME>` is the name of the appropriate MFP port (such as LPT1). For example, `C:\>copy/b c:\9055fw.rfu lpt1`

Note

If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy/b "c:\My Documents\9055fw.rfu" lpt1`

- 2 Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The messages described in the section [MFP messages during the firmware update](#) appear on the control panel.

Note

The MFP automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel.

- 3 At the command prompt, type `exit` to close the command window.

Remote firmware update through a Windows network

If the MFP is shared on a Windows network, follow these instructions.

- 1 From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `copy /B <FILENAME> \<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the .RFU file (including the path), `<COMPUTERNAME>` is the name of the computer from which the MFP is being shared, and `<SHARENAME>` is the MFP share name. For example, `C:\>copy /B c:\9055fw.rfu \\your_server\your_computer`

Note

If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy/b "c:\My Documents\9055fw.rfu" \\your_server\your_computer`

- 2 Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The messages described in the section [MFP messages during the firmware update](#) appear on the control panel. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.

Note

The MFP automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel.

Remote firmware update for UNIX systems

For UNIX systems, any command method that delivers the .RFU file to the MFP is acceptable, including the following:

- 1 At the command prompt, type `<$cp /home/yourmachine/FILENAME/dev/parallel>`, where `</home/yourmachine/FILENAME>` contains the .RFU file.

Note

The MFP automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel.

Remote firmware update using Fetch (Mac OS 9.x only)

For Mac OS 9.x, a shareware program called Fetch provides FTP control for a `put` command. Download and install the program from: <http://download.cnet.com/downloads/0-10207-100-525613.html>.

Complete the following steps to update the MFP firmware by using Fetch.

- 1 Start the program by clicking on the **Fetch** icon.
- 2 Type the IP address of the MFP in the **Host:** box.
- 3 Click the **Put Files** button and browse to the location of the .RFU file.
- 4 Double-click the file to select it and download it to the MFP. A confirmation message appears in the main window.
- 5 Click **OK**.

Note

The MFP automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel.

Remote firmware update using the HP LaserJet Utility (Mac OS 9.x only)

Complete the following steps to update the firmware by using the HP LaserJet Utility.

- 1 Make sure that you have the tools and files that are necessary for the update. You will need the HP LaserJet Utility and the 9055FW.RFU file or the 9065FW.RFU file, which is the firmware file for the MFP.
The HP LaserJet Utility can be found on the HP LaserJet 9055mfp printing-system software CD-ROM or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp printing-system software CD-ROM that came with the MFP. If you do not have the CD-ROM, you can obtain the HP LaserJet Utility by downloading the latest MFP installer from: <http://www.hp.com>.
The firmware file (9055FW.RFU or 9065FW.RFU) can be downloaded from: http://www.hp.com/support/lj9055mfp_firmware or http://www.hp.com/support/lj9065mfp_firmware.
See [Downloading the new firmware from the HP Web site](#) for more information.
After you have the firmware file and the HP LaserJet Utility, you are ready to begin the update process.
- 2 Open the HP LaserJet Utility.
- 3 Click **Select Printer** and locate the MFP that you would like to update on the network. Select the MFP on the right side of the dialog box, and click **OK**. An information dialog box for the HP LaserJet 9055mfp or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp appears.

- 4 On the left side of the information dialog box, click **Files**. A dialog box appears where you can select a file to be downloaded to the MFP.
- 5 Click **Select File**.
- 6 Locate the 9055FW.RFU file or the 9065FW.RFU file on your hard disk, and click the file name to highlight it. Click **Select**. The **Files** dialog boxes update to show the 9055FW.RFU file or the 9065FW.RFU file under **File to download**.
- 7 Click **Download**. The HP LaserJet Utility starts downloading the file to the MFP. A progress bar shows how much of the file has been downloaded. While the file is downloading, the **RECEIVING UPGRADE** message appears on the control panel display on the MFP. After the file has downloaded to the MFP the **PERFORMING UPGRADE** message appears on the control-panel display.

Note

The MFP automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel.

Remote firmware update using the LPR command

Note

This remote firmware update method is for use in Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003.

Complete the following steps to update the firmware by using the LPR command.

- 1 From a command window, type `lpr -P <IPADDRESS> -S <IPADDRESS> -o l <FILENAME>` -OR- `lpr -S <IPADDRESS> -Pbins <FILENAME>`, where `<IPADDRESS>` can be either the TCP/IP address or the hostname of the MFP, and where `<FILENAME>` is the filename of the .RFU file.

Note

The parameter (-o l) consists of a lowercase "O", not a zero, and a lowercase "L", not the numeral 1. This parameter sets the transport protocol to binary mode.

- 2 Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The messages described in the section [MFP messages during the firmware update](#) appear on the control panel.

Note

The MFP automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel.

- 3 Type `exit` at the command prompt to close the command window.

Remote firmware update using HP Web Jetadmin

This procedure requires that you install HP Web Jetadmin version 7.0 or later on your computer. Complete the following steps to update a single MFP through HP Web Jetadmin after downloading the .RFU file from the HP Web site.

- 1 Start HP Web Jetadmin.
- 2 Type the TCP/IP address or IP host name of the MFP in the **Quick Device Find** field, and then click **Go**. The MFP Status window opens.
- 3 Open the **Device Management** folder in the drop-down list in the Navigation panel. Navigate to the **Device Lists** folder.
- 4 Expand the **Device Lists** folder and select **All Devices**. Locate the MFP that you want to update in the list of products, and click to select it.

- 5 Locate the drop-down box for **Device Tools** in the upper-right corner of the window. Select **Update Printer Firmware** from the **choose action** list.
- 6 If the name of the .RFU file is not listed in the **All Available Images** dialog box, click **Browse** in the **Upload New Firmware Image** dialog box and navigate to the location of the .RFU file that you downloaded from the Web at the start of this procedure. If the filename is listed, select it.
- 7 Click **Upload** to move the .RFU file from your hard drive to the HP Web Jetadmin server.
- 8 Refresh the browser.
- 9 Select the .RFU file from the **Printer Firmware Update** drop-down menu.
- 10 Click **Update Firmware**. HP Web Jetadmin sends the selected .RFU file to the MFP. The messages described in the section [MFP messages during the firmware update](#) appear on the control panel.

Note

The MFP automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel.

HP Web Jetadmin version 7.0 and later can also be used to perform multiple or unattended installations. Complete the following steps for multiple or unattended installations.

- 1 Start HP Web Jetadmin.
- 2 Create a device group. A simple way to do this is to follow these steps:
 - a. Click **Device Management**, then click **All Devices**.
 - b. Shift-click to select products that you want to be included in the group, and then click **OK**.
 - c. When prompted, type a name for the new device group, and then click **OK**.
- 3 To modify several products in a group, click the group name, and then click **Open**.
- 4 The drop-down menu for **Device Group Tools** appears in the right side of the window. Scroll if necessary to view it.
- 5 In the **Device Group Tools** drop-down box, select an action. Type in the appropriate information. Click **Return to Device Group** when finished.

MFP messages during the firmware update

Three messages appear during a normal update process.

Table 2-6. Update messages

MFP message	Explanation
RECEIVING UPGRADE	This message appears from the time the MFP recognizes the beginning of an .RFU update until the time the MFP has verified the validity and integrity of the .RFU update.
UPGRADING PRINTER	This message appears while the MFP is actually reprogramming the firmware.
WAIT FOR PRINTER TO REINITIALIZE	This message appears from the time the MFP has finished reprogramming the DIMM until the MFP reinitializes.

Note

To verify that the firmware update succeeded, print a new Configuration page from the control panel and verify that the firmware date code on the Configuration page has changed.

Troubleshooting a firmware update

The following table lists the causes and results of possible interruptions to the firmware update.

Table 2-7. Troubleshooting a firmware update

Cause	Result
The job was cancelled from the control panel.	No update has occurred.
A break in the I/O stream occurred during send (for example, the parallel cable was removed).	No update has occurred.
A power cycle occurred during RECEIVING UPGRADE .	No update has occurred.
A power cycle occurred during UPGRADING PRINTER .	No update has occurred. Resend the update through a parallel port.
A power cycle occurred during WAIT FOR PRINTER TO REINITIALIZE .	The update has been completed.

Print jobs sent to the MFP while an update is in process do not interrupt the update.

The following table lists possible reasons for the failure of a remote firmware update and the corrective action required for each situation.

Table 2-8. Troubleshooting a firmware update failure

Reason for firmware update failure	Corrective action
The .RFU file is corrupted.	The MFP recognizes that the file is corrupted and rejects the update. Download the file again and send the new file to the MFP. Download the file from: http://www.hp.com/support/lj9055mfp_firmware or http://www.hp.com/support/lj9065mfp_firmware .
The wrong MFP is contained in the .RFU file.	The MFP recognizes the MFP mismatch and rejects the update. Download the correct file and send it to the MFP. Download the file from: http://www.hp.com/support/lj9055mfp_firmware or http://www.hp.com/support/lj9065mfp_firmware .
The upgrade was interrupted.	See Troubleshooting a firmware update .
A flash hardware failure occurred.	Although it is extremely unlikely, the device might have a hardware failure. Call technical support to address the problem (see the flyer that came with the MFP for a local telephone support list).

Note

All HP LaserJet products leave the factory with the latest available firmware version installed. If a remote firmware update fails, the .RFU file must be sent over a parallel port connection.

Printing .PDF documents from a command line

Documents in Portable Document Format (PDF) can be printed by using a command line instead of the Adobe Acrobat or Acrobat Reader programs.

Use one of the following methods to print PDF files to your MFP.

File printing by using FTP through a browser

Complete the following steps to print from a command line by using FTP through a browser.

Note

The following instructions can be used on Windows or Mac operating systems.

- 1 Take note of the TCP/IP address on the EIO Jetdirect page. The Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware](#).
- 2 Open a browser window.
- 3 In the address line of the browser, type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address of your MFP is 192.168.0.90, type `FTP 192.168.0.90`
- 4 Locate the .PDF file for the MFP.
- 5 Drag and drop the .PDF file onto the **PORT1** icon in the browser window.

Command-line printing by using FTP on a direct network connection

If the HP LaserJet 9055mfp or HP LaserJet 9065mfp uses a direct network connection, use file transfer protocol (FTP) to print a PDF document. Complete the following steps for the operating system.

Windows operating systems

- 1 Take note of the TCP/IP address on the EIO Jetdirect page. The Jetdirect page is the second page of the Configuration page printout. To print a Configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware](#).
- 2 Open a command window on your computer.
- 3 Type `ftp <TCP/IP MFP ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `ftp 192.168.0.90`
- 4 Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
- 5 When prompted for the user name, press **Enter**.
- 6 When prompted for the password, press **Enter**.
- 7 Type `bin` at the command prompt.
- 8 Press **Enter**. The message **200 Types set to I, Using binary mode to transfer files** appears in the command window.

- 9 Type `put <FILENAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the .PDF file to be printed, including the path. For example, type `put C:\LJ\9055FW.PDF` and then press **Enter**.

Note

If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "c:\My Documents\LJ\9055fw.pdf"`

The following series of messages appears in the command window:

200 PORT command successful

150 Opening BINARY mode data connection

226 Ready

226 Processing Job

- 10 Your PDF print job prints.

Macintosh operating systems

- 1 Take note of the TCP/IP address on the EIO Jetdirect page. The Jetdirect page is the second page of the Configuration page printout. To print a Configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware](#).
- 2 Open a Terminal window on your Macintosh. You can find the Terminal application on the computer hard drive under the Applications/Utilities folder.
- 3 Type `FTP <TCP/IP MFP ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `FTP 192.168.0.90`
- 4 Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
- 5 When prompted for a user name and password, press **Enter**.
- 6 Type `put <path>`, where `<path>` is the location where the .PDF file was downloaded from the Web. For example, type `put /username/desktop/9055FW.PDF` and then press **Enter**.

Note

If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "/user name/desktop/9055FW.PDF"`

Note

To ensure that the entire proper path to the .PDF file is placed in the `put` command, type `put` and a space and then click and drag the .PDF file onto the terminal window. The complete path to the file will be placed after the `put` command automatically.

- 7 The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the MFP. This can take about five minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the MFP or computer.
- 8 The MFP automatically turns off and on again to activate the update.

Command-line printing by using a local Windows port

To print from the command line by using a local Windows port, follow the instructions in this section for your operating system.

Windows 98 or Windows Me

- 1 From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `Mode lpt1: , , p`

Note

If the MFP is attached to a parallel port other than LPT1, then substitute the proper LPT port number in the `mode` command.

- 2 Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The response you receive should be similar to these examples: **> LPT1 Not Rerouted** , **> Resident portion of MODE loaded**, **> Infinite retry on parallel printer time-out**
- 3 At a command prompt, type `copy /b <FILENAME> <PORTNAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the .PDF file (including the path) and `<PORTNAME>` is the name of the appropriate MFP port (such as LPT1). For example, at the `c:\>` command prompt, type `copy /b c:\9055fw.pdf lpt1`

Note

If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy/b "c:\My Documents\9055fw.pdf"`

- 4 Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The message **PROCESSING JOB** appears on the control panel, and the job prints.
- 5 At the command prompt, type `exit` to close the command window.

Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003

The .PDF file can be sent directly to the MFP by typing a `copy` command at a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window.

- 1 At a command prompt, type `copy /b <FILENAME> <PORTNAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the .PDF file (including the path) and `<PORTNAME>` is the name of the appropriate MFP port (such as LPT1). For example, type `C:\>copy/b c:\9055fw.pdf lpt1`
- 2 Press **Enter** on the keyboard.

Note

If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy/b "c:\My Documents\9055fw.pdf"`. The message **PROCESSING JOB** appears on the control panel, and the job prints.

- 3 At the command prompt, type `exit` to close the command window.

Command-line printing in a Windows network

If the MFP is shared on a Windows network, complete the following steps.

- 1 From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `copy /B <FILENAME> \<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the .PDF file (including the path), `<COMPUTERNAME>` is the name of the computer from which the MFP is being shared, and `<SHARENAME>` is the MFP share name. For example, type `C:\>copy /B c:\9055fw.pdf \\your_server\sharename`

Note

If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy/b /B "c:\My Documents\9055fw.pdf" \\your_server\sharename`

- 2 Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The message **PROCESSING JOB** appears on the control panel, and the job prints. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.

Command-line printing in UNIX systems

For UNIX systems, any command method that delivers the .PDF file to the MFP is acceptable, including the following:

- 1 At the command prompt, type `$cp </home/yourmachine/FILENAME/dev/parallel>`, where `</home/yourmachine/FILENAME>` contains the .PDF file.

File printing using Fetch (Mac OS 9.x only)

For Mac OS 9.x, a shareware program called Fetch provides FTP control for a `Put` command. Download and install the program from: <http://download.cnet.com/downloads/0-10207-100-525613.html>.

Complete the following steps to print by using Fetch.

- 1 Start the program by clicking the **Fetch** icon.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the MFP in the **Host:** box
- 3 Click the **Put Files** button and browse to the location of the .PDF file.
- 4 Double-click the file to select it and download it to the MFP. A confirmation message appears in the main window.
- 5 Click **OK**.

File printing by using the HP LaserJet Utility (Mac OS 9.x only)

Complete the following steps to print a .PDF file by using the HP LaserJet Utility.

- 1 Make sure that you have the tools and files necessary for the update. You will need the HP LaserJet Utility and the .PDF file that you want to print.
The HP LaserJet Utility can be found on the HP LaserJet 9055mfp printing-system software CD-ROM or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp printing-system software CD-ROM that came with the MFP. If you do not have the CD-ROM, you can obtain the HP LaserJet Utility by downloading the latest MFP installer from: <http://www.hp.com>. After you have the HP LaserJet Utility and you know the location of the .PDF file you want to print, you are ready to begin the command-line printing process.
- 2 Open the HP LaserJet Utility.
- 3 Click **Select Printer** and locate the MFP that you would like to upgrade on the network.
- 4 Select the MFP on the right side of the dialog box, and click **OK**. An information dialog box for the HP LaserJet 9055mfp or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp appears.
- 5 On the left side of the **Information** dialog box, click **Files**. A dialog box appears where you can select a file to be downloaded to the MFP.
- 6 Click **Select File**.

- 7 On your hard disk, locate the .PDF file that you want to print, and click the file name to highlight it. Then click **Select**. The **Files** dialog box updates showing the .PDF file that you want to print under **File to download**.
- 8 Click **Download**.
The HP LaserJet Utility starts downloading the file to the MFP. A progress bar keeps you updated on how much of the file has been downloaded. While the file is downloading, the PROCESSING JOB message appears on the control panel display on the MFP, and the the .PDF file prints.

Command-line printing using the LPR command

Note

This command-line printing method is for use in Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003.

Complete the following steps to print a .PDF file using the LPR command.

- 1 Take note of the TCP/IP address on the EIO Jetdirect page. The Jetdirect page is the second page of the Configuration page printout. To print a Configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware](#).
- 2 From a command window, type `lpr -P IPADDRESS -S IPADDRESS -o l FILENAME`
`lpr -S <IPADDRESS> -Pbins <FILENAME>`, where IPADDRESS can be either the TCP/IP address or the host name of the MFP, and where FILENAME is the file name of the .PDF file.

Note

The parameter (-o l) consists of a lowercase "O", not a zero, and a lowercase "L", not the numeral 1. This parameter sets the transport protocol to binary mode.

- 3 The file prints, but no further messages appear in the command prompt window.
- 4 Type `exit` at the command prompt to close the command window.

Driver-feature comparison in various operating systems

The following tables detail the software features that are available for each driver type and for each supported operating system that the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp supports. The printing-system drivers for Windows 98, Windows Me, and Windows NT 4.0 are the HP traditional PCL 6 driver and the HP traditional PS driver. The printing-system driver for Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 is the new HP unidriver, with a user interface look and feel that is consistent across the HP PCL 6 and HP PS unidriver.

For more information about the HP traditional PCL 6 driver and the HP traditional PS driver, see [Chapter 3, HP traditional print drivers for Windows](#). For more information about the HP PCL 6 and HP PS unidriver, see [Chapter 4, HP PCL 6 and PS unidriver for Windows](#).

Job stream output

Table 2-9. Driver support for job stream output feature

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
Driver type	HP unidriver		HP traditional driver		HP traditional driver		Mac
PCL 6 support	x		x		x		
PCL 5 pass-through support	x		x		x		
PS 3		x		x			x
PS 2		x		x		x	x
UTF-8 encoding for PCL	x	x	x	x	x		

Stream output modes

Table 2-10. Driver support for stream output modes feature

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
RAW output	x	x	x		x		
MS EMF output	x	x					
EPS		x		x		x	x

Connectivity

Table 2-11. Driver support for connectivity features

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
Parallel	x	x	x	x	x	x	
Network	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bidirectional communication

Table 2-12. Driver support for bidirectional communication features

Operating System	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
Driver							
Parallel (direct connect)							
Network	x	x	x		x		x

HP Driver Preconfiguration

Table 2-13. Driver support for HP Driver Preconfiguration

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
HP Driver Preconfiguration	x	x	x		x		
Feature lockout	x	x	x		x		
Enterprise Autoconfiguration (EAC)	x	x	x		x		

UI features

Table 2-14. Driver support for UI features

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
UI tabs	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
UI extensions	x	x		x			x
Page preview images	x	x	x		x		
MFP image bitmaps with hot spots			x		x		
Paper size dimensions	x	x	x	x	x	x	

Table 2-14. Driver support for UI features (continued)

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
Page layout graphical representation	x	x	x	x	x	x	
About . . .	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Update now . . .	x	x	x		x		x
Accessibility/disability	x	x	x		x		


Help features

Table 2-15. Driver support for Help features

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
What's this Help (F1)	x	x	x	x	x	x	
Help button	x	x	x		x		
Bubble Help			x		x		x
MS Windows "?" Help	x	x	x	x	x	x	

Constraint support

Table 2-16. Driver support for constraints

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
Constraint messages	x ¹	x ¹	x	x	x	x	x
Unavailable (gray-out) options Driver	x	x	x	x	x		x
Constraint warnings by symbol 	x	x		x		x	

¹ Limited set of constraints.

Document layout

Table 2-17. Driver support for document layout features

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
Print on both sides	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Flip pages up	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Booklet printing	x	x	x		x		x
Pages per sheet (N-up)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Page borders on/off	x	x	x		x		x
Page order	x	x	x		x		x
Print document on (alternative size)	x	x	x		x		
Scale to fit	x	x	x	x	x	x	
Allow scaling from large paper	x	x					
% of normal size	x	x	x	x	x	x	
Portrait	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Landscape	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Rotated by 180 degrees	x	x	x	x	x	x	
Number of copies . . .	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Ignore application collation			x		x		
Mopy	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Job storage

Table 2-18. Driver support for job storage features

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac ¹
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	
Proof and hold	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Private job	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Job name	x	x	x	x	x		x
User name	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
PIN	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Job storage pop-up	x	x	x	x	x	x	
Automatic job and user name	x	x	x	x	x		

¹ Job Storage features are available only in Mac OS 9.x. They are not available for Mac OS X.

Custom preference storage/recall

Table 2-19. Driver support for custom preference storage/recall features

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	
Print task quick sets	x	x	x		x		x
Print quality	x	x	x		x		

Print controls

Table 2-20. Driver support for print controls

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	
EconoMode	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
DWS	x	x	x		x		
Mopier enable	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Print optimizations	x			x			
Resolution (600 dpi)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Table 2-20. Driver support for print controls (continued)

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
Scale patterns (WYSIWYG)	x		x		x		
Font DIMM (on/off)	x		x		x		
Send TrueType as bitmaps	x		x		x		
TrueType fonts		x		x		x	
Print text as black	x	x	x		x		
Smoothing	x	x	x	x	x	x	

Watermarks

Table 2-21. Driver support for watermarks feature

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
First page only	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Custom watermark definition	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Watermark angle	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Watermark font name	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Watermark font color	x	x	x		x	x	x
Watermark font shading	x	x	x		x	x	x
Watermark font size	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Watermark font style	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Paper sizes

Table 2-22. Driver support for paper sizes

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
Letter	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
1/2 Letter+ (Wide)			x				
Statement	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Executive	x	x	x	x	x	x	
Legal	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
5.5x8.5+	x	x	x	x			
8.5x11+	x	x	x	x			
8.5x13			x				
11x17	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
11x17+	x	x	x	x			
A2	x	x					
A3	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
A3+	x	x	x	x			
A4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
A4+	x	x	x	x			
A5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
A5+	x	x	x	x			
A6	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
A6 Card			x				
B4 (JIS)	x	x		x	x	x	x
B4 (JIS)+	x	x	x	x			
B5 (JIS)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
B5 (JIS)+	x	x	x	x			
B5 (ISO)			x				
B6 (JIS)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
C Size Sheet	x	x					
8K	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
16K	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
B4 (JIS)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Table 2-22. Driver support for paper sizes (continued)

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
Executive (JIS)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Double Postcard (JIS)			x		x	x	x
Envelope #10					x	x	x
Envelope Monarch					x	x	x
Envelope C5					x	x	x
Envelope DL					x	x	x
Envelope B5					x	x	x
Custom					x	x	x
PostScript Custom Page Size		x		x			
Custom paper size definition	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Paper types

Table 2-23. Driver support for paper types

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
Unspecified	x	x	x		x	x	x
Plain	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Preprinted	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Letterhead	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Transparency	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Prepunched	x	x	x		x	x	x
Labels	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Tab	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Bond	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Recycled	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Color	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Table 2-23. Driver support for paper types (continued)

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
Light 50-59g/m ²	x x		x	x	x	x	x
Heavy 91-163 g/ m ²	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Cardstock > 164-200 g/m ²	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Rough	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Vellum	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Custom	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Paper sources

Table 2-24. Driver support for paper sources

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PS
Autoselect	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Manual feed in Tray 1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Tray 1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Tray 2	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Tray 3	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Tray 4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Tray 5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Assign paper size to tray	x	x	x	x	x	x	
Assign paper type to tray	x	x	x		x	x	

Alternative source/paper type

Table 2-25. Driver support for alternate source/paper type feature

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	
All pages the same	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Other pages	x	x	x		x		x
Back cover	x	x	x		x		

Printing destination

Table 2-26. Driver support for printing destination feature

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	
Main bin	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Optional output destination device	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Installable options

Table 2-27. Driver support for installable options

Operating system	Windows XP (32-bit), Windows 2000		Windows NT 4.0		Windows 98, Me		Mac
	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	PCL 6	PS	
Total memory	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Additional source trays	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Additional destination devices	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Post Insertion Kit	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Punch unit	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Font DIMM	x		x		x		

PS-specific features

Table 2-28. Driver support for PS-specific features

Operating system	Windows XP	Windows NT 4.0	Windows 98, Me	Mac
Driver	PS	PS	PS	PS
Font substitution	x	x	x	x
PS memory	x	x	x	
Output protocol	x	x	x	
Send CTRL-D before each job	x	x	x	
Send CTRL-D after each job	x	x	x	
Convert gray text to PS gray	x			
Convert gray graphics to PS gray	x			
Add euro currency symbol	x			
Job timeout	x	x	x	
Wait timeout	x	x	x	
Minimum font size to download as outline	x	x		
Minimum font size to download as bitmap	x	x		
PS language level	x	x	x	x
Send error handler	x	x	x	
Mirrored output	x	x	x	
Negative output	x	x	x	
Output options				
Optimize for speed	x	x	x	
Optimize for portability	x	x	x	
Encapsulated (EPS)	x	x	x	x ¹
Archive format	x	x	x	
TrueType font download option				
Outline	x	x	x	
Bitmap	x	x	x	
Native TrueType	x	x	x	

¹ Mac OS 9 through 9.2.2; not supported on Mac OS X or later.

3

HP traditional print drivers for Windows

Introduction

This chapter describes the features of the the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp traditional print drivers. The information in this STR applies only if the HP Print Kit is installed. The chapter contains the following major sections:

- HP traditional PCL 6 driver features. This section describes the PCL 6 drivers for Windows 98, Windows Me, and Windows NT 4.0.
- HP traditional PS driver features. This section describes the PS driver for Windows 98, Windows Me, and Windows NT 4.0.
- Driver-feature comparison in Windows and Macintosh operating systems. The tables in this section provide an overview of print driver features.

You can control print jobs from several places: the MFP control panel, the software program, and the driver user interface. Generally, for features that are common to two or more of these places (for instance, you can select the media input tray from any of them), settings that are established in the software program take precedence over print driver settings. Print driver settings override MFP control-panel settings.

HP traditional PCL 6 driver features

When you install the print drivers in Windows 98, Windows Me, or Windows NT 4.0, the HP traditional PCL 6 driver is installed.

This section describes the options that are available on each tab of the HP traditional PCL 6 print driver interface.

Access to drivers

To gain access to print driver settings from within most software programs, click **File**, click **Print**, and then click **Properties**. These driver settings apply only while the software program is open.

You can also control the print drivers directly from the Printers folder. In Windows NT 4.0, click **Start**, click **Settings**, click **Printers**, right-click the MFP name, and then click **Document Defaults** to gain access to the same set of driver tabs that the software program controls. These driver settings change the default settings used across all software programs.

If you click **Properties** after right-clicking the MFP name, you gain access to a different set of tabs that control the driver behavior and driver connections.

Access to drivers in Windows 98 and Windows Me

In Windows 98 and Windows Me, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**. Right-click the name of the MFP, and then click **Properties** to gain access to all print driver tabs. The following print driver tabs are available in Windows 98 and Windows Me:

- **General** tab
- **Details** tab
- **Sharing** tab
- **Finishing** tab
- **Output** tab
- **Effects** tab
- **Paper** tab
- **Job Storage** tab
- **Basics** tab
- **Configure** tab

HP driver tabs are indicated by the HP logo in the lower left corner of the driver tab. Only HP tabs are documented in this STR.

Help system

The HP PCL 6 traditional print driver includes a full-featured Help system to provide assistance with printing and configuration options.

What's this? Help

What's this? Help is supported in Windows 98, Windows Me, and Windows NT 4.0. You can gain access to What's this? Help messages in any of the following ways:

- Right-click a control and click **What's this?**, and a pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the **?** button at the upper-right corner of the frame, next to the **X**, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. Use this special cursor to select a control, and the pop-up Help window for that feature appears.
- Press the **F1** key, and the Help window for the currently selected control appears.

Context-sensitive Help

Press the **Help** button on a driver tab or in a dialog box, and a context-sensitive Help message appears.

Constraint messages

Constraint messages are unsolicited messages that appear in response to specific actions you take. These messages alert you to selections that are illogical or impossible given the capabilities of the MFP or the current settings of other controls. For example, if you click **Print on Both Sides** and then change the paper type to **Transparency**, a message appears asking you to resolve this conflict.

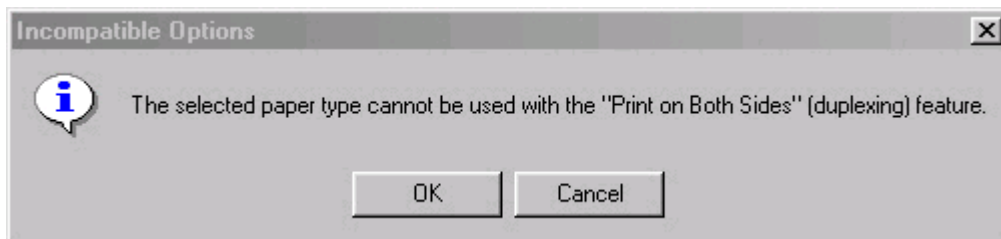


Figure 3-1.

A typical constraint message with an OK button

Whenever a constraint message appears with the **OK** or **Cancel** button, the interpretation of the button is as follows:

- Clicking **OK** accepts the change that was just made, and the driver then resets the conflicting control to a setting that is compatible with the new value.
- Clicking **Cancel** rejects the change that was just made, and the control returns to its previous value.

Bubble Help

Bubble Help features a graphical icon that resembles a cartoon speech bubble with a lowercase "i" in it, representing the international symbol for information. The following illustration shows a Bubble Help icon on a driver tab.

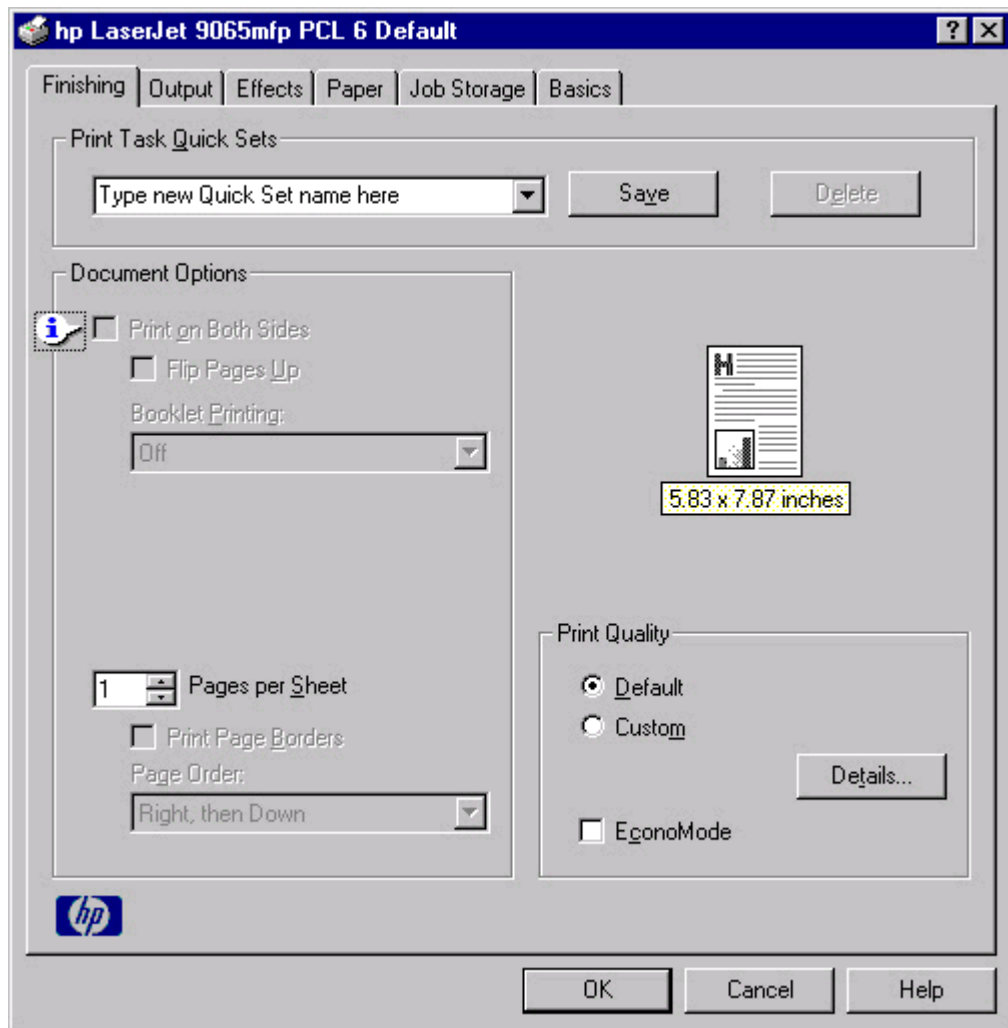


Figure 3-2. A property page with a Bubble Help icon

The bubble typically appears next to a disabled control, although it can also accompany an enabled control if there is an important note concerning its use. Moving the pointer over the bubble changes the arrow to a gloved hand, which indicates that the area underneath the pointer is selectable. When the bubble is selected by using either the mouse or the keyboard, a message box appears that contains a brief explanation about why the control is disabled and what can be done to enable it. If the control is not disabled, the message is a tip or a precaution you should be aware of when using that particular feature.

Finishing tab features

Use the **Finishing** tab to print booklets and control the media output. The following illustration shows the **Finishing** tab.

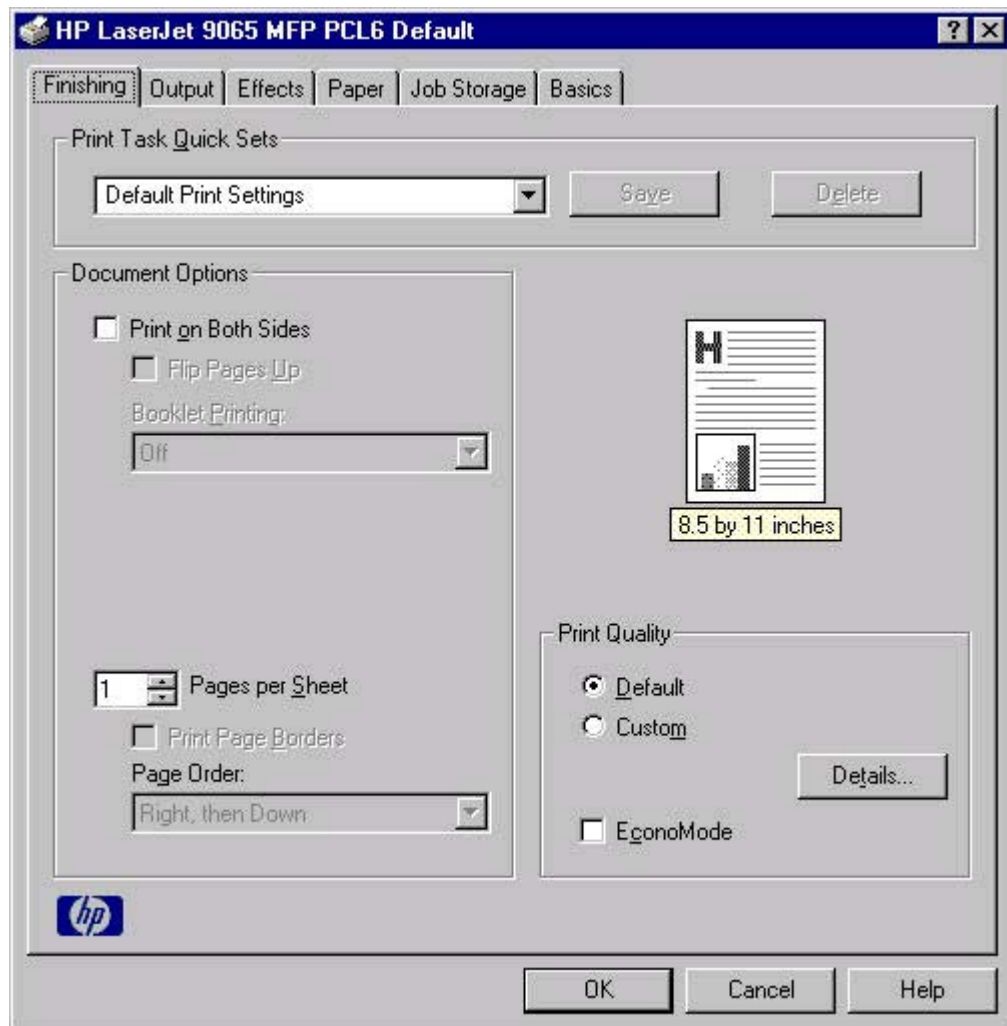


Figure 3-3. The default appearance of the **Finishing** tab

The **Finishing** tab contains the following controls.

- **Print Task Quick Sets** group box
- **Document Options** group box
- Document preview image
- **Print Quality** group box

Print Task Quick Sets

The first group box in the upper portion of the **Finishing** tab is **Print Task Quick Sets**. Any change to the **Print Task Quick Sets** group box that is made on the **Finishing** tab affects the **Print Task Quick Sets** group boxes on all of the **Document Defaults** driver tabs (the **Output** tab, **Effects** tab, **Paper** tab, **Job Storage**, **Basics** tab) because they are all the same control.

Print Task Quick Sets is a setting that is used to store the current combination of driver settings that are found on all of the other print driver tabs. **Print Task Quick Sets** are either preset by network-administrator settings or user-defined printing specifications (such as paper size, pages per sheet, and so on). The **Print Task Quick Sets** control does *not* appear on the driver **Properties** tabs.

Note

Administrators can predefine Print Task Quick Sets for their users. These administrator Print Task Quick Sets are defined on the server and are available to users, but usually cannot be modified by users. Users can also define Print Task Quick Sets for their own use. User-defined Print Task Quick Sets are described later in this section.

The following settings are available in the **Print Task Quick Sets** drop-down menu:

- **Default Print Settings**
- **Booklet on 11x17**
- **Booklet on A3**
- **Booklet on A4**
- **Booklet on Letter**
- **User Guide Print Settings**

Note

The booklet settings are available only when certain output finishing options are selected on the **Configure** tab in the MFP **Properties** driver tabs.

Default Print Settings

When you select **Default Print Settings**, nearly all of the settings are restored to the combination that existed after the driver was installed (the original settings). However, if the attribute combinations that are associated with watermark definitions, custom paper sizes, or the **User Guide Print Settings** quick set have been changed or deleted, the original settings are not restored.

Type a new Quick Set name here appears in the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu automatically if no other driver settings have been changed since the driver was installed, or if all of the driver settings match the original settings. Otherwise, the setting in the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu is the same label that appeared when you last closed the printing **Properties** dialog box by clicking **OK**.

The following table shows the default settings for **Print Task Quick Sets**. See [HP Driver Preconfiguration](#) for information about preconfigurable driver settings.

Table 3-1. Print Task Quick Set default values for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp

Driver feature	Feature setting location	U.S. English Print Task Quick Sets default values	Preconfigurable ¹
Print on Both Sides	Finishing tab, Document Options group box	Off	Yes
Flip Pages Up	Finishing tab, Document Options group box	Unavailable	Yes
Booklet Printing	Finishing tab, Document Options group box	Unavailable	Yes

Table 3-1. Print Task Quick Set default values for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp (continued)

Driver feature	Feature setting location	U.S. English Print Task Quick Sets default values	Preconfigurable¹
Pages per sheet	Finishing tab, Document Options group box	1	Yes
Print page borders	Finishing tab, Document Options group box	Unavailable	Yes
Page order	Finishing tab, Document Options group box	Unavailable	Yes
Default Print Quality	Finishing tab, Print Quality group box	On	Yes
EconoMode	Finishing tab, Print Quality group box	Off	Yes
Print document on	Effects tab, Fit to Page group box	Unavailable - print on the size specified in the Paper/Quality tab	Yes
Size to print on	Effects tab, Fit to Page group box	Actual Size	Yes ²
Scale to fit	Effects tab, Fit to Page group box	Unavailable	Yes
Watermarks	Effects tab	(none)	Yes
Watermarks first page only	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box (Click Edit for Watermark Details)	Unavailable	Yes
Current watermarks	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box (Click Edit for Watermark Details)	(none)	Yes ²
Watermark message	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box (Click Edit for Watermark Details)	(none)	Yes ²
Watermark message angle	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box (Click Edit for Watermark Details)	Diagonal	Yes ²
Watermark message angle (angle)	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box (Click Edit for Watermark Details)	Unavailable unless Angle option is selected	Yes
Watermark font name	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box, Font Attributes group box	Arial	Yes ²
Watermark font color	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box, Font Attributes group box	Gray	Yes

Table 3-1. Print Task Quick Set default values for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp (continued)

Driver feature	Feature setting location	U.S. English Print Task Quick Sets default values	Preconfigurable¹
Watermark font shading	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box, Font Attributes group box	Very Light	Yes ²
Watermark font size	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box, Font Attributes group box	80 for Windows NT and 98, 150 for Windows Me	Yes
Watermark font style	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box, Font Attributes group box	Regular	Yes
Use different paper/covers	Paper tab, Paper Options group box	Off - all of the pages use the same paper	No
Size is:	Paper tab, Paper Options group box	Letter	Yes
Source is:	Paper tab, Paper Options group box	Automatically Select	Yes
Type is:	Paper tab, Paper Options group box	Unspecified	Yes
Unlabeled group box	Job Storage tab	Status message about destination of job	No
Job storage mode	Job Storage tab, Job Storage Mode group box	On	No
Proof and Hold	Job Storage tab, Job Storage Mode group box	Available, not selected	Yes
Private Job	Job Storage tab, Job Storage Mode group box	Job storage mode	No
Quick Copy	Job Storage tab, Job Storage Mode group box	Job storage mode	No
Stored Job	Job Storage tab, Job Storage Mode group box	Job storage mode	No
Require PIN to print option	Job Storage tab, Job Storage Mode group box	Unavailable	No
Windows user name	Job Storage tab, User Name group box	Unavailable	No
Job name	Job Storage tab, Job Name group box	Unavailable	No
PIN to print	Job Storage tab, PIN group box	Unavailable	No
Display Job ID when printing	Job Storage tab, Job Notification Options group box	Unavailable	No

Table 3-1. Print Task Quick Set default values for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp (continued)

Driver feature	Feature setting location	U.S. English Print Task Quick Sets default values	Preconfigurable ¹
Staple	Output tab, Finishing Options group box	(none)	Yes
Punch	Output tab, Finishing Options group box	(none)	Yes
Image Shift	Output tab, Finishing Options group box	Off	Yes
Fold/Stitch	Output tab, Finishing Options group box	(none)	
Bin	Output tab, Output Bin Options group box	Automatically Select	Yes
Copy	Basics tab, Copies group box	1	Yes
Portrait	Basics tab, Orientation group box	On	Yes
Landscape	Basics tab, Orientation group box	Off	Yes
Rotate by 180 degrees	Basics tab, Orientation group box	Off	Yes
About	Basics tab		No

¹ Preconfigurable by using one of the HP Preconfiguration tools. For more information, See [HP Driver Preconfiguration](#) , or go to: <http://www.hp.com/support/lj9055mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/lj9065mfp>.

² Not supported in Windows 98 and Windows Me.

Booklet on 11x17

The **Booklet on 11x17** option provides a **Print Task Quick Sets** for optimal printing of booklets on 11-by-17-inch media. When you select **Booklet on 11x17** and then click **OK**, the settings on the **Finishing**, **Output**, and **Effects** tabs change to accommodate printing the booklet.

Booklet on A3

The **Booklet on A3** option provides a **Print Task Quick Sets** for optimal printing of booklets on A3-size media. When you select **Booklet on A3** and then click **OK**, the settings on the **Finishing**, **Output**, and **Effects** tabs change to accommodate printing the booklet.

Booklet on A4

The **Booklet on A4** option provides a **Print Task Quick Sets** for optimal printing of booklets on A4-size media. When you select **Booklet on A4** and then click **OK**, the settings on the **Finishing**, **Output**, and **Effects** tabs change to accommodate printing the booklet.

Booklet on Letter

The **Booklet on Letter** option provides a **Print Task Quick Sets** for optimal printing of booklets on Letter-size (8.5 by 11 inches) media. When you select **Booklet on Letter** and then click **OK**, the settings on the **Finishing**, **Output**, and **Effects** tabs change to accommodate printing the booklet.

User Guide Print Settings

The **User Guide Print Settings** option provides a Print Task Quick Set for optimal printing of the *Quick Reference Guide* for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.

Type new Quick Set name here

By default, the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu is set to **Type new Quick Set name here**. When you change any of the default settings on any of the **Document Defaults** driver tabs and you want to save the configuration as a Print Task Quick Set, highlight the words **Type new Quick Set name here**, type the name you want for your new Print Task Quick Set, and then click **Save**. The Print Task Quick Sets are saved in the system registry. To delete a Print Task Quick Set, select it in the drop-down menu and click **Delete**.

Note

Administrators can predefine Print Task Quick Sets for their users. These administrator Print Task Quick Sets are defined on the server and are available to users, but usually cannot be modified by users. Users can also define Print Task Quick Sets for their own use.

You can store a maximum of 25 Print Task Quick Sets on a particular system. If you attempt to save too many, a message box appears that reads, "There are too many Print Task Quick Sets defined. Please delete some before adding new ones."

Document Options

The **Document Options** group box contains the following controls.

- **Print on Both Sides** check box
- **Flip Pages Up** option
- **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu
- **Pages Per Sheet** spin box
- **Print Page Borders** check box
- **Page Order** drop-down menu

Print on Both Sides check box

The default setting for the **Print on Both Sides** option is off (not selected). **Print on Both Sides** is available when the following conditions exist:

- **Type is:** on the **Paper** tab is set to any type except for **Labels**, **Transparency**, **Tab**, or **Cardstock**.
- **Size is:** is set to any size except for **A6**, **B6 (JIS)**, **B5 (ISO)**, **Double Postcard (JIS)**, **1/2 Letter+ (wide)**, or **Custom**.

When **Paper Size** is set to Letter, Legal, A4, 11x17, or B4 (JIS), selecting **Print on Both Sides** makes the **Flip Pages Up** and **Booklet Printing** options available.

Automatically printing on both sides

The duplexing unit in the MFP prints on two sides of a sheet of media when the **Print on Both Sides** option is specified in the print job. The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp comes with a duplexing unit installed.

To achieve the best print quality when printing on the second side of the page, the MFP needs to make adjustments to its print modes. When you select a media type, you are, in effect, instructing the MFP to use a group of settings (such as fuser temperature and print speed) to print the media with the best possible quality. This group of settings is known as a mode or print mode, and a different print mode is used with each media type. Print-mode adjustments are automatic when the duplexing unit is used.

Flip Pages Up

The **Flip Pages Up** check box, which is enabled only when **Print on Both Sides** is selected, is used to specify the duplex-binding option. By default, the **Flip Pages Up** check box is not available. The following table demonstrates the results of selecting this box, depending on the paper orientation that is selected on the **Basics** tab.

Table 3-2. Page orientation

Orientation (Basics tab)	Flip Pages Up selected	Flip Pages Up not selected
Portrait	Short-edge binding	Long-edge binding
Landscape	Long-edge binding	Short-edge binding

When **Print on Both Sides** is selected, the document preview image changes to show a spiral binding along either the left edge or the top edge of the page. In addition, a folded-over corner appears in the lower-right portion of the preview image, indicating that printing occurs on the back side. An arrow on the folded-over corner points in the direction that the pages would be flipped if they were bound together.

Short-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a note pad. Long-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

Booklet printing

The **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu is visible when **Print on Both Sides** is selected and a supported media size is selected in the **Size is:** drop-down menu on the **Paper** tab. The **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu offers choices that are based on the current media size. The default setting is **Off**. The other settings have the following format, where **[paper size]** depends on the paper size that is set on the **Paper** tab.

- **[paper size] (Left Binding)**
- **[paper size] (Right Binding)**

When you select **[paper size] (Left Binding)** or **[paper size] (Right Binding)**, the document preview image changes to show the location of the binding. If you change the **Pages per Sheet** setting manually to 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages per sheet, the booklet setting is disabled. See the [Pages per Sheet](#) section of this document for more information.

Booklet printing is disabled when A6 or B6 (JIS) is selected as the media size, and an incompatibility error message appears when you click **OK** to close the driver.

The **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu appears only when the following conditions exist:

- **Print on Both Sides** (on the **Finishing** tab) is selected.
- **%of Normal Size** (on the **Effects** tab) is 100.
- **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is 1.

If any of these conditions is not met (except the first), a Bubble Help appears next to **Booklet Printing** to tell you why it is disabled.

Book and booklet printing

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp supports both book and booklet printing.

A book is a print job that consists of at least two pages and that can have a different media type for the front cover, first page, other pages, or last page, or back cover. Use the **Front Cover from Feeder**, **Front Cover**, **First Page**, **Other Pages**, **Last Page**, **Back Cover**, and **Back Cover from Feeder** settings on the **Paper/Quality** tab (available when you select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box) to select different printing options for the book.

A booklet is a print job that places two pages on each side of a sheet that can be folded into a booklet that is half the size of the media type. Use the **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu on the **Finishing** tab to control booklet settings.

Printing a Booklet

Complete the following steps to print a booklet.

- 1 In the software program, click **File**, click **Print**, and then click **Properties**.
- 2 Click the **Finishing** tab.
To print a booklet on 11x17-, A3-, A4-, or Letter-size media, use the **Print Task Quick Sets** drop-down menu to select **Booklet on 11x17**, **Booklet on A3**, **Booklet on A4**, or **Booklet on Letter**. Continue to step 4.
–or–
Select the **Print on Both Sides** check box. Continue to step 3.
- 3 In the **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu, select the type of booklet printing that you want. The booklet printing type consists of the media size and the location of the binding (for example, **Letter [Left binding]**).

- 4 Click **OK** in the print driver.
- 5 Click **OK** in the print dialog box to print.

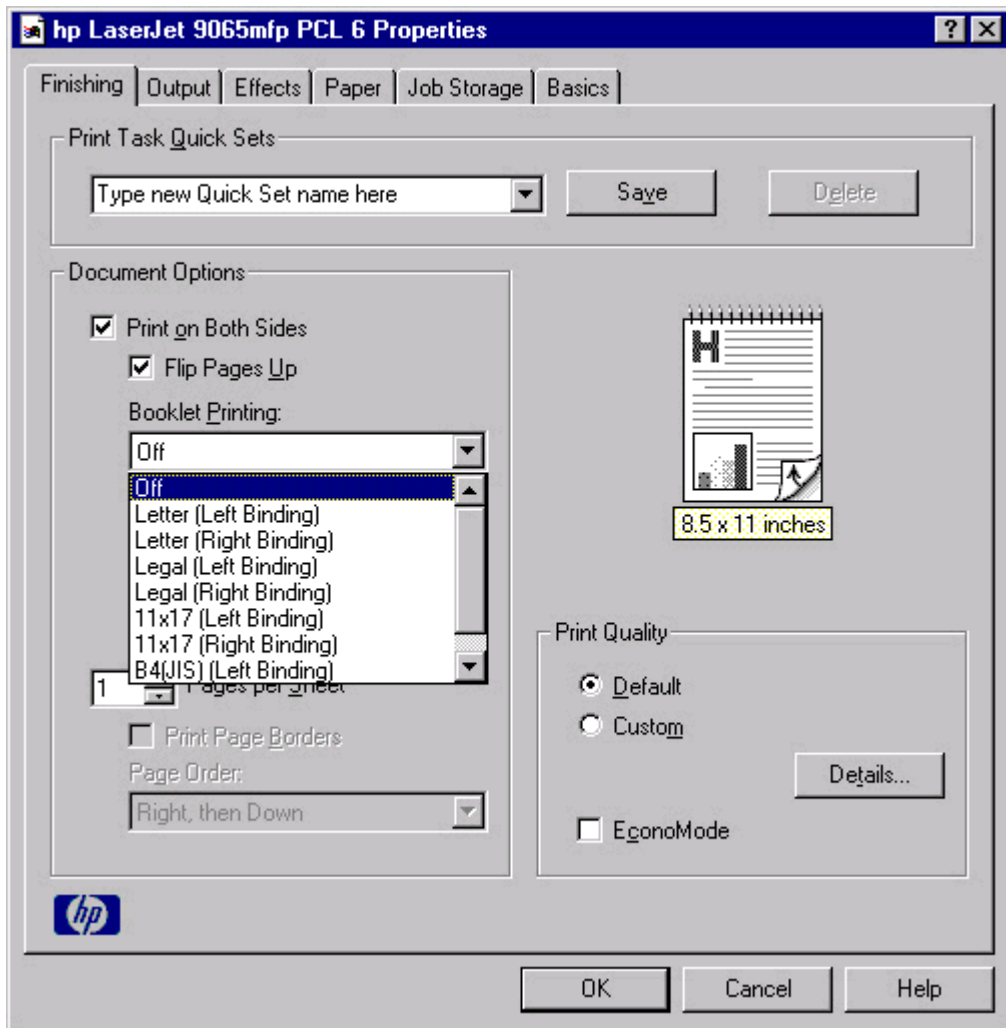


Figure 3-4.

Printing a booklet

Printing a book

You can print a book in which the front cover, first page, other pages, and back cover have different media types. For more information, see [Paper tab features](#) of this chapter.

Pages per Sheet

Use the **Pages per Sheet** option to select the number of pages that you want to print on a single sheet of media. If you choose to print more than one page per sheet, the pages appear smaller and are arranged on the sheet in the order that they would otherwise be printed. The **Pages per Sheet** drop-down menu provides six settings:

- 1 page per sheet (this is the default)
- 2 pages per sheet
- 4 pages per sheet
- 6 pages per sheet

- 9 pages per sheet
- 16 pages per sheet

When you select an option other than **2 pages per sheet**, booklet printing is unavailable.

Print Page Borders

Related controls that are indented beneath the **Pages per Sheet** edit box are **Print Page Borders** and **Page Order**, which become active when **Pages per Sheet** is greater than 1.

Print Page Borders sets a line around each page image on a printed sheet to help visually define the borders of each logical page.

Page Order

The **Page Order** drop-down menu contains four selections:

- **Right, then Down**
- **Down, then Right**
- **Left, then Down**
- **Down, then Left**

The document preview image changes to reflect alterations in these settings, as shown by the examples in the following illustration.

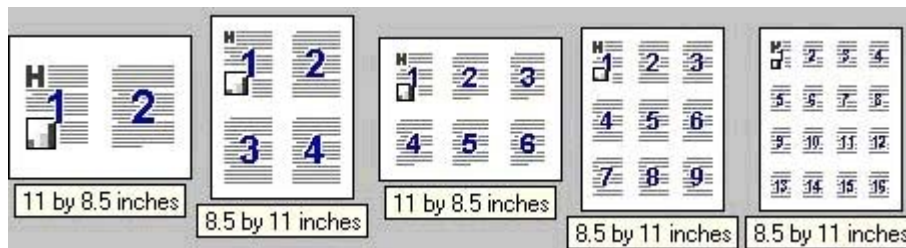


Figure 3-5.

Page-order preview images

- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the **Finishing**, **Output**, **Effects**, **Paper**, and **Basics** tabs.

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking on the image. The dimensions label that appears below the preview image reflects the selected page size. The horizontal dimension is always first, so the order of the numbers reverses when the orientation changes. Click the dimensions label to toggle between English and metric units.

Print Quality group box

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp print driver **Print Quality** group box provides options that output settings and font settings.

The default setting for **Print Quality** is **Default**. To change the default print quality settings, click the **Details** button. Clicking the **Details** button opens the **Print Quality Details** dialog box. The **Print Quality Details** dialog box has different options depending on the driver that you are using.

Print Quality Details for the PCL 6 driver

The **Print Quality Details** dialog box provides the options for print-quality settings in the PCL 6 driver as shown in the following illustration.

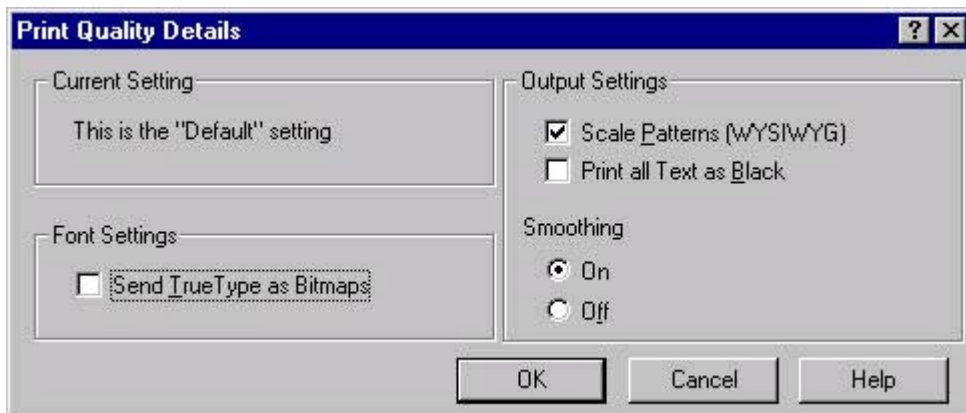


Figure 3-6. Print Quality Details dialog box for HP traditional PCL 6 driver

The following options are available.

- **Current Settings** group box
- **Output Settings** group box
- **Font Settings** group box

Current Setting group box

The **Current Setting** group box has two settings in the HP traditional PCL 6 driver: If , which is the "Default" setting. When you make a change in the the **Print Quality Details** dialog box, the setting changes from **This is the "Default" setting** to **This is a "Custom" setting**. The default resolution is 600 dpi.

Output Settings

The **Output Settings** group box contains controls for pattern scaling, printing all text as black, and smoothing.

The default values for the **Output Settings** are as follows:

- **Scale Patterns (WYSIWYG)** is selected
- **Print all Text as Black** is *not* selected
- **Smoothing** is set to **On**

Scale Patterns (WYSIWYG)

Use the **Scale Patterns (WYSIWYG)** feature to address the moiré effect that is created when certain programs encounter certain patterns. Use this feature to turn off the pattern scaling. What you lose is WYSIWYG with patterns, but the printed result might look better. The feature works only with programs that use vector hatch patterns. This option is selected by default.

Print all Text as Black

The **Print All Text as Black** feature is not selected by default. When the feature is selected, the driver prints all text as black regardless of the original document text color. Color text is printed as black, except for white text, which remains white. (White text is a reliable method of printing reverse typeface against a dark background.) This setting does not affect graphic images on the page, nor does it affect any text that is part of a graphic. **Print All Text as Black** remains enabled only for the current print job. When the current print job is completed, **Print All Text as Black** is automatically disabled.

Smoothing

The **Smoothing** setting is **On** by default. When enabled, this option refines the print quality of characters by smoothing out jagged edges that can occur on the angles and curves of a printed image. Turn off this option if graphics, particularly scanned images, are not printing clearly.

Font Settings group box

In the **Font Settings** group box, the only available option is **Send TrueType as Bitmaps**, which provides an alternative for software programs that cannot easily use TrueType fonts for special graphic purposes, such as shading, rotation, or slanting. The **Send TrueType as Bitmaps** check box is not selected (clear) by default. If you select this option, the driver sends TrueType fonts to the MFP as outlines, which retains the standard format (outlines) of the fonts.

EconoMode

The **EconoMode** check box in the **Print Quality** group box is not selected by default. Select **EconoMode** to decrease the print density and make the printed image appear lighter. The **EconoMode** setting useful when printing drafts or proofs.

Output tab features

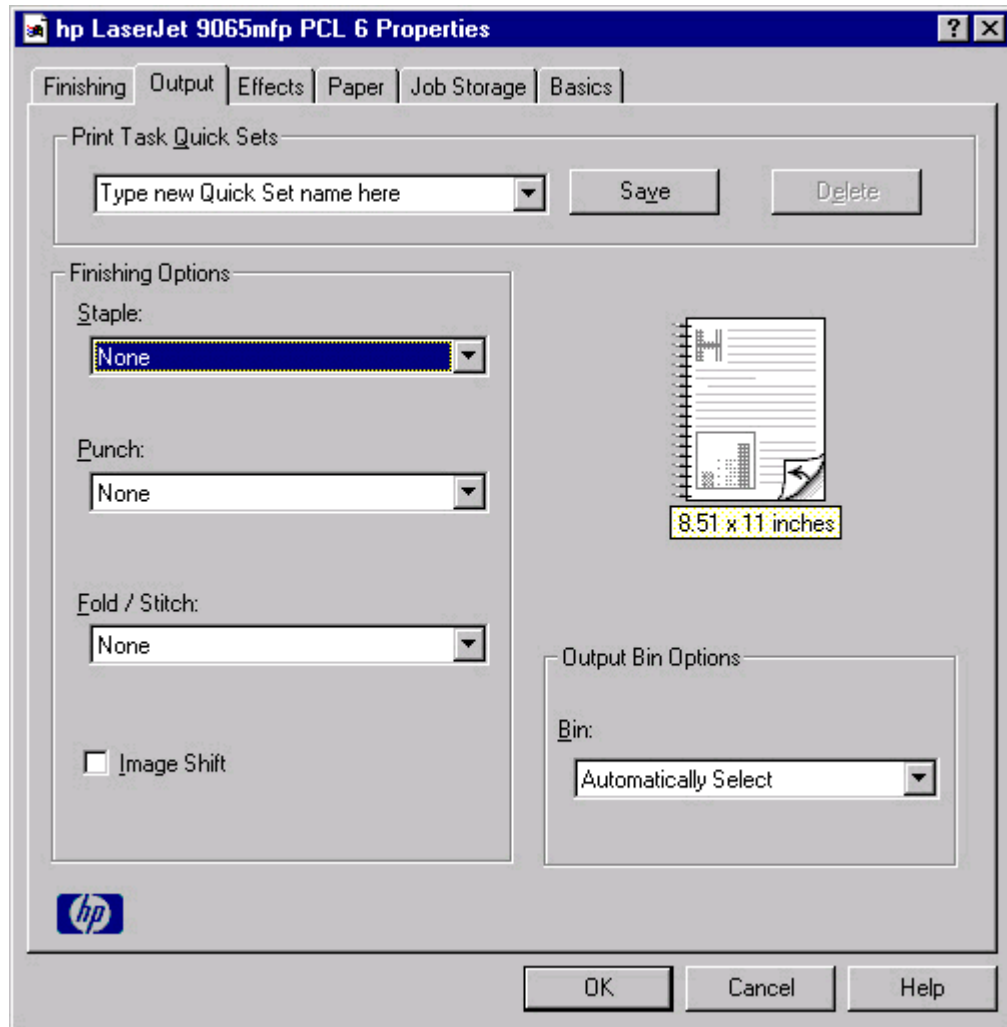


Figure 3-7. The default appearance of the Output tab

The **Output** tab contains the following controls:

- **Print Task Quick Sets** group box
- **Finishing Options** group box
- Document preview image
- **Output Bin Options** group box

Print Task Quick Sets

The **Print Task Quick Sets** control is used to store the current combination of driver settings that are found on all other **Document Defaults** driver tabs. Print Task Quick Sets are either preset (by the administrator) or user-defined printing specifications, such as paper size and pages per sheet. For more information, see the [Finishing tab features](#) section of this chapter.

Finishing Options

The **Finishing Options** group box contains drop-down menus and a check box that you can use to select finishing and output options for a document. Only output options that are configured on the **Configure** tab appear in this group box.

The following output options can be selected in the driver:

- The **Staple** drop-down menu allows you to select how many staples to use and which edge of the document to staple. The staple settings are available only when the HP Multifunction Finisher or the HP 3,000-Sheet Stapler/Stacker is installed. The settings are:
 - **None**
 - **One Staple Left**
 - **One Staple Right**
 - **Two Staples Left**
 - **Two Staples Right**
 - **Two Staples Top**
- The **Punch** drop-down menu allows you to punch holes in the pages of a print job. The punch settings are available only when an optional punch unit is installed. The settings are:
 - **None**
 - **Punch Left**
 - **Punch Right**
 - **Punch Top**
- The **Fold / Stitch** drop-down menu allows you to select how the document is folded and stapled. The fold/stich settings are available only when the HP Multifunction Finisher is installed. The settings are:
 - **Tri Fold Inward**
 - **Tri Fold Outward**
 - **Half Fold Inward**
 - **Half Fold Outward**
 - **Fold and Stitch**
- The **Image Shift** check box allows you to create a margin for binding the printed document. You can set the direction and amount of image shifting at the MFP control panel. For more information about using Image Shift, see the *HP LaserJet 9055mfp/9065mfp Administrator Guide*.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The preview image appears in the upper-right corner of all of the **Document Defaults** driver tabs, except the **Job Storage** tab. For more information about the document preview image, see the [Finishing tab features](#) section of this chapter.

Output Bin Options

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp comes with several output device options. The available options depend on which accessory output bin is installed on the MFP. The options for accessories, which must be installed and configured on the **Configure** tab, are:

- **None**
- **HP 3000-Sheet Stapler/Stacker.** This single 3000-sheet stacking device accommodates up to 3,000 sheets of Letter-sized and A4-sized paper, or up to 1,500 sheets of 11-inch by 17-inch and A3 paper. It provides multi-position stapling for up to 50 sheets of paper per document.
- **HP Multifunction Finisher.** This booklet-printing device creates booklets and stapled documents in a variety of sizes.

Use the **Output Bin Options** group box drop-down menu to select an output bin from a list of available output bins. The following options can be selected in the **Bin:** drop-down menu in the **Output Bin Options** group box when either an HP 3000-sheet Stapler/Stacker or an HP Multifunction Finisher is installed:

- The **Automatically Select** option sends the printed pages to the MFP's default output bin.

Note

If an HP Multifunction Finisher is installed and you select **Booklet Printing** on the **Finishing** tab for a print job, the output bin for the print job changes to **Automatically Select**. The print job emerges in the bottom booklet tray of the HP Multifunction Finisher.

- The **Main Bin (Face Down)** option sends the printed pages to the MFP's main bin, face down. Pages sent to this output bin stack in the order that they are printed. This option is always available and has no media size or type constraints beyond those determined by the MFP hardware.
On the HP LaserJet 9065/9065mfp, all output bins are on the left side of the MFP, not on top as is often the case for other printers.
- The **Main Bin (Face Up - Straightest Path)** option sends the printed pages to the MFP's main bin, face up. Printed pages exit the MFP face up and in the correct order.
- The **Upper Bin (Face Down)** option refers to the top bin on the MFP. Printed pages exit the MFP face down in the bin. Pages sent to this output bin stack in the order that they are printed.
- The **Upper Bin (Face Up)** option refers to the top bin on the MFP. Printed pages exit the MFP face up and in the correct order.

If no paper-handling accessory is installed, the **Output Bin Options** options are as follows:

- **Automatically Select**
- **Main Bin (Face Down)**
- **Main Bin (Face Up - Straightest Path)**

Effects tab features

The **Effects** tab is used to create unique paper effects such as scaling and watermarks. The following illustration shows the **Effects** tab.

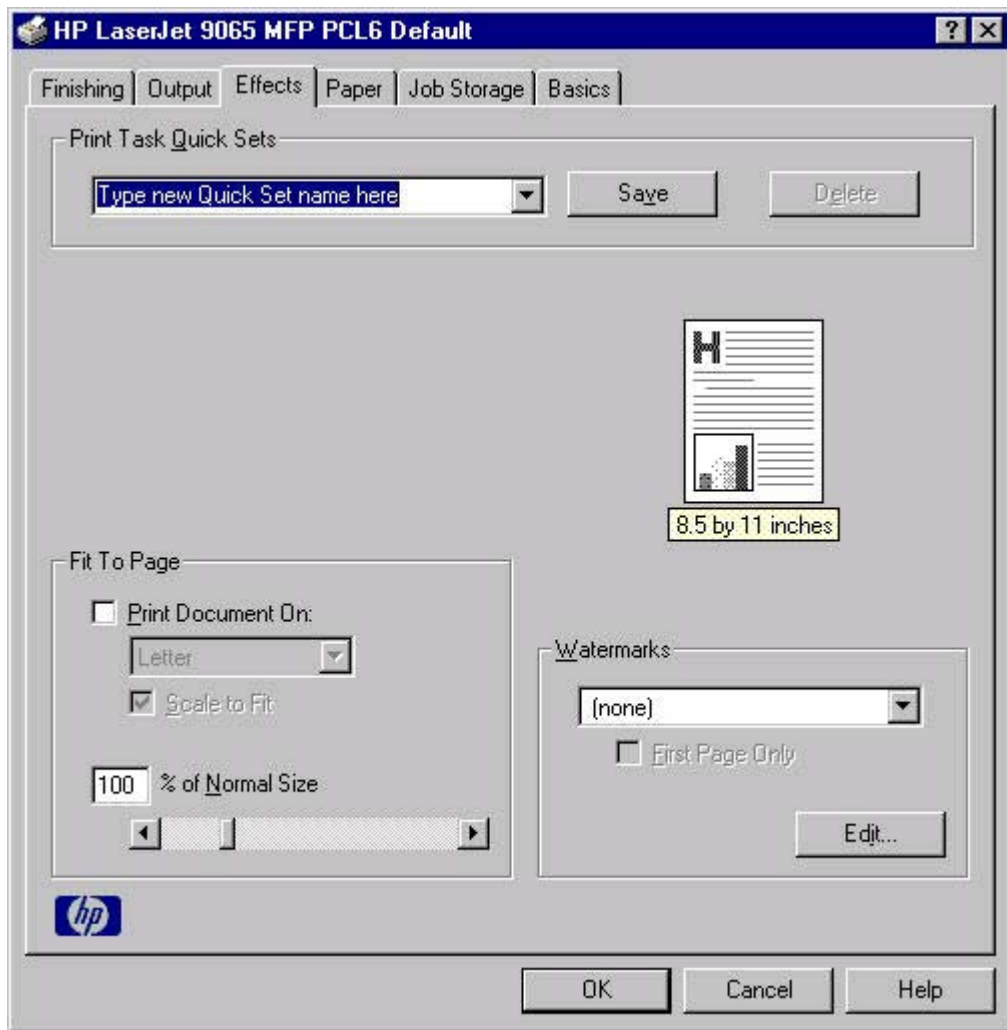


Figure 3-8. **Effects** tab

The **Effects** tab contains the following controls.

- **Print Task Quick Sets** group box
- **Fit to Page** group box
- Document preview image
- **Watermarks** group box

Print Task Quick Sets

The **Print Task Quick Sets** control is used to store the current combination of driver settings that are found on all other **Document Defaults** driver tabs. Print Task Quick Sets are either preset (by the administrator) or user-defined printing specifications, such as paper size and pages per sheet. For more information, see [Finishing tab features](#).

Fit To Page group box

The **Fit To Page** group box contains the following controls.

- **Print Document on** setting
- **Scale to Fit** check box
- **% of Normal Size** setting

Print Document On setting

Use **Print Document On** to format the document for one media size, and then print the document on a different media size, with or without scaling the page image to fit the new media size.

The **Print Document On** control is disabled by either of the following conditions:

- **% of Normal Size** is not 100.
- **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1.

When **Print Document On** is selected, the drop-down menu shows the media sizes on which you can print. The list contains all of the standard media sizes that are supported by the selected media source, and any custom size that you have created. When **Print Document On** is selected, **Scale to Fit** is automatically selected. Clear this check box if you do not want your document reduced or enlarged to fit on the selected media size.

Scale to Fit option

The **Scale to Fit** option specifies whether each formatted document page image is scaled to fit the target media size. By default, **Scale to Fit** is selected when **Print Document On** is selected. If the setting is turned off, then the document page images will not be scaled, and are instead centered at full size on the target media. If the document size is larger than the target media size, then the document image is clipped. If the document size is smaller, then it is centered within the target media. The following illustration shows preview images for a document formatted for Legal-size media with the **Print Document On** option selected, and the target size specified as **Letter**.

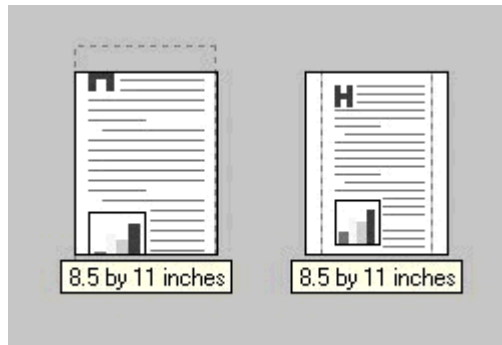


Figure 3-9. Preview images - Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right)

When the size for which the document is formatted (that is, the logical size) differs from the target size, the document preview image uses a dashed gray line to show the boundaries of the logical page in relation to the target page size.

% of Normal Size option

The **% of Normal Size** option provides a slider bar for scaling the percentage setting. The default setting in the entry box is 100 percent of the normal size. The normal size is defined as the paper size that is selected within the driver or what the driver receives from the software program (if the software program does not negotiate the paper size with the driver). The driver scales the page by the appropriate factor and sends it to the MFP.

The limits of the range are from 25 percent to 400 percent, and any values outside the range are adjusted to those limits as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the **Tab** key is pressed or another control is selected).

Any change to the scale also changes the document preview image, which increases or decreases from the upper-left corner of the preview.

The slider bar controls the scale directly. The value in the edit box changes as the scroll bar indicator is dragged, and the document preview image is updated to the new image scale. Each click on the scroll bar arrows increases or decreases the scale by one percent. Each click on the slider bar affects the scale by 10 percent.

You cannot achieve an exact value by dragging the scroll bar indicator at the default Windows resolution; use the scroll bar indicator to approximate the value that you want, and then use the scroll bar arrows to refine the value.

The following settings disable **% of Normal Size**:

- **Print Document On** (on the **Effects** tab) is selected.
- **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1.

Watermarks group box

Use the **Watermarks** feature to choose a watermark, create your own custom watermarks (text only), or edit an existing watermark.

The **Watermarks** group box contains the following controls:

- **Watermarks** drop-down menu
- **First Page Only** check box
- **Edit** button (opens the **Watermark Details** dialog box)

Watermarks drop-down menu

The following watermarks are preset in the driver:

- **(None)**
- **Confidential**
- **Draft**
- **SAMPLE**

The drop-down menu shows alphabetically-sorted watermarks that are currently available on the system, plus the string "(none)", which indicates that no watermark is selected. This is the default setting. Any watermark selected from this list appears in the document preview image.

First Page Only check box

When **First Page Only** is selected, the watermark is printed only on the first page of the document. The **First Page Only** check box is not available when the current watermark selection is "(none)".

Watermarks are applied to logical pages. For example, when **Pages per Sheet** is set to "4" and **First Page Only** is turned off, four watermarks appear on the physical page (one on each logical page).

Edit button (Watermark Details)

Click **Edit**, and the **Watermark Details** dialog box appears. The following illustration shows the **Watermark Details** dialog box.

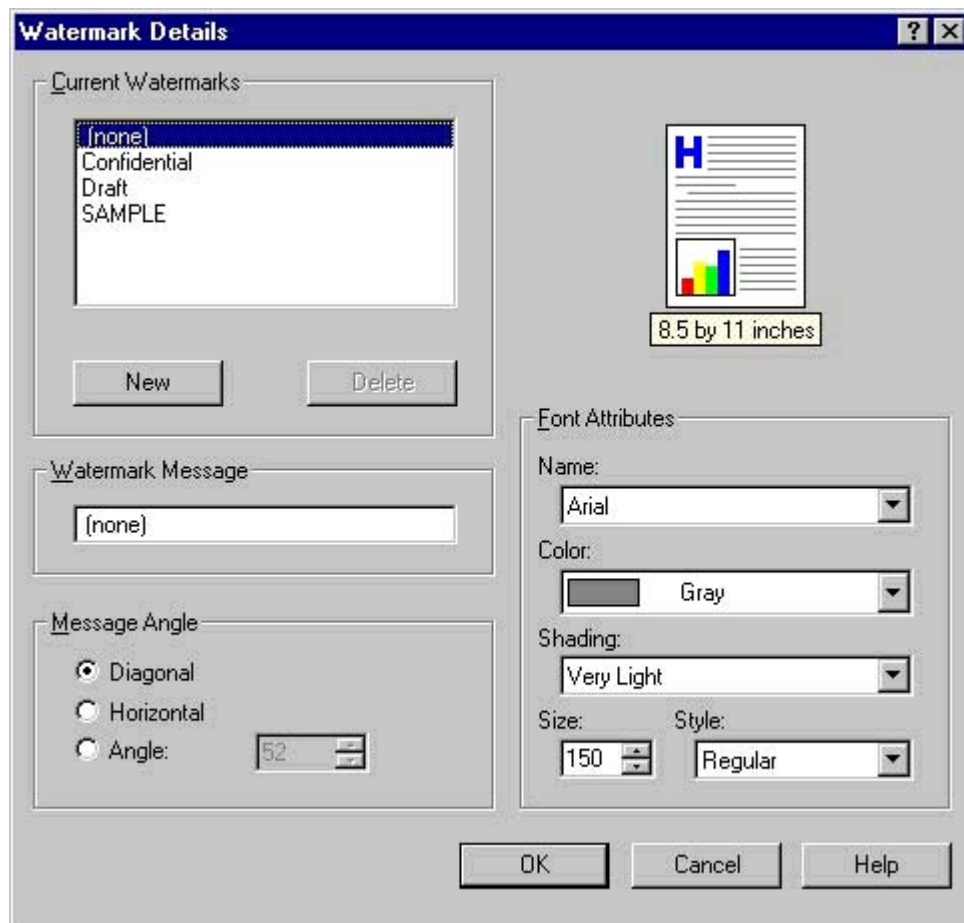


Figure 3-10. Watermark Details

The dialog box shows a document preview image and provides options for creating a new watermark and controlling the message angle and the font attributes.

The **Watermark Details** dialog box contains the following controls.

- **Current Watermarks** group box
- **Watermark Message** text box
- **Message Angle** group box
- **Font Attributes** group box

Current Watermarks

The **Current Watermarks** group box contains a list of available watermarks, both predefined watermarks that are available in the driver and any new watermarks that you have created. To create a new watermark, click **New**. The new watermark appears in the **Current Watermarks** list and in the **Watermark Message** edit box as **Untitled** until you name it. To name the new watermark, type the selected watermark text in the **Watermark Message** edit box. To delete a watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list and click **Delete**.

Note

You can have no more than 30 watermarks in the **Current Watermarks** list at one time. When you reach the limit of 30 watermarks, the **New** button is disabled, and a Bubble Help message appears that explains why the button is disabled and how to make it available.

To edit an existing watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list. If you change the **Watermark Message** for that watermark, you are, in effect, creating a new watermark.

Watermark Message

The **Watermark Message** is also the name that identifies the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list, except when more than one watermark has the same message. For example, you might want several different watermarks with the message DRAFT, each in a different font or size. When this occurs, the string is appended with a space, a pound sign, and a number (for example, **Draft #2**). When a number is added, the number two is used first, but if the resulting name is also in the list, then the number increases until the name is unique.

Message Angle

Use the controls in the **Message Angle** group box to print the watermark in a diagonal, horizontal, or angle (custom) orientation to the text on the page. The default is **Diagonal**. All three settings automatically center the watermark string within the page; the selection of a particular setting affects only the angle of the string placement. **Diagonal** places the text along a line that spans the lower-left to upper-right corners of the page.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the **Watermark Details** dialog box. The document preview image changes to reflect the modifications that you make in the **Watermark Details** dialog box.

Font Attributes

Use the controls in the **Font Attributes** group box to change the font and the shading, size, and style of the font.

The **Font Attributes** group box contains the following controls.

- **Name** drop-down menu
- **Color** drop-down menu
- **Shading** drop-down menu
- **Size** spin box
- **Style** drop-down menu

Name

The **Name** drop-down menu lists TrueType fonts that are currently installed on the system. The default is language-dependent.

Color

The **Color** drop-down menu contains a single setting: **Gray**.

Shading

The default **Shading** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Very Light**. The following range of shades is available from the **Shading** drop-down menu.

- **Lightest**
- **Very Light** (default)
- **Light**
- **Medium Light**
- **Medium**
- **Medium Dark**
- **Dark**
- **Very Dark**
- **Darkest**

Size

Font sizes from 4 to 999 points are available from the **Size** menu. The default point size is language-dependent. The default point size for preset watermarks is language-dependent.

Style

The choice of **Regular**, **Bold**, **Italic**, and **Bold Italic** is available from the **Style** drop-down menu. The default **Style** setting for new and current watermarks is **Regular**.

Default settings

The default settings for new watermarks are **Arial** font, **Gray** color, **Very Light** shading, **80** points, and **Regular** style. The default settings for preset watermarks are **Arial** font, **Very Light** shading, and **Bold** style. The default font name and point size for preset watermarks are language-dependent, and vary.

Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that have been made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. Clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark, and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes made to the previous watermark are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Paper tab features

Use the **Paper** tab to specify the size, type, and source of the media. You can also use this tab to indicate different paper-selection choices for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, and back cover of the document. The following illustration shows the **Paper** tab.

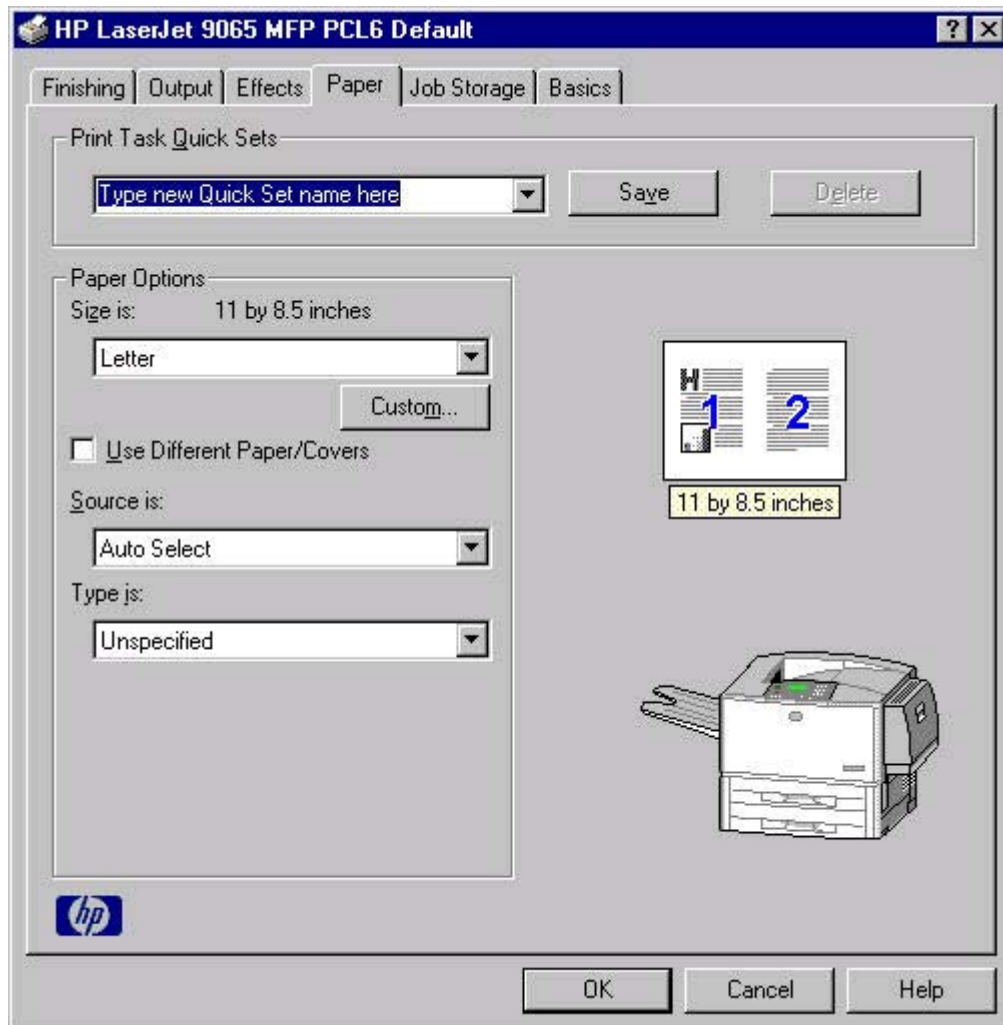


Figure 3-11. Paper tab

The **Paper** tab contains the following controls.

- **Print Task Quick Sets** group box
- **Paper Options** group box
- Document preview image
- MFP image

Print Task Quick Sets

The **Print Task Quick Sets** control is used to store the current combination of driver settings that are found on all of the other **Document Defaults** driver tabs. Print task quick sets are either preset (by the administrator) or user-defined printing specifications, such as paper size and pages per sheet. For more information, see [Finishing tab features](#).

Paper Options group box

The settings specified in the **Paper Options** group box on the **Paper** tab apply to all of the pages of the document. The following illustration shows the **Paper Options** group box and the selections available by default .



Figure 3-12. Paper Options group box (default)

The appearance of the Paper Options group box changes when the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box is selected. For convenience, the settings in the **Paper Options** group box are described below in the following order:

- Size is: drop-down menu
- Source is: drop-down menu
- Type is: drop-down menu
- Custom button
- Use Different Paper/Covers options

Size is: drop-down menu

The **Size is:** setting is a drop-down menu that lists all of the supported media sizes.

You can specify size for all the settings in the **Paper Options** group box. When you set the media size in the driver, the entire print-job output uses that media size. That is, if the print job uses Letter-size media, any option that you select from the available **Use Different Paper/Covers** options must also use Letter-size media.

Because driver settings are overridden by media-size settings in most software applications, it is generally best to use the driver to set media size only for software applications that lack a media-size setting, such as NotePad, or when you are producing a book or a booklet that does not require different media sizes.

Note

When you use a software program with a media-size setting, you can specify different media sizes within a single document using the Use Different Paper/Covers options. For more information, see Use Different Paper/Covers options.

For information about media sizes, see the Media attributes section of this guide.

Use Different Paper/Covers check box

When the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box is selected and different options are configured, the Size is:, Source is:, and Type is: menus change, offering a variety of options. For more information, see [Use Different Paper/Covers options](#).

Source Is: drop-down menu

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the MFP accessories. Any optional source trays that are installed through the **Configure** tab also appear here.

The **Source is:** drop-down menu can contain the following options:

- **Automatically select**
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1** (100-sheet multipurpose tray)
- **Tray 2** (500-sheet tray)
- **Tray 3** (500-sheet tray)
- **Tray 4** (1,500-sheet tray)
- **Tray 5** (optional 4,000-sheet tray)

The default setting is **Automatically Select**. When this setting is selected, the MFP uses the source tray that supports the media size that you have selected. If you select a source tray other than **Automatically select**, make sure that the correct media size is loaded in the source tray.

For information about media sources, see the [Media attributes](#) section of this guide.

Type is: drop-down menu

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all the paper types that the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp supports. When you use the default setting, Unspecified, the MFP uses the default media type, which is usually **Plain**.

No mechanism exists for manually adding custom media types through the driver. Custom types can be added only by using the bidirectional communication mechanism, so they must already exist in the MFP when the bidirectional query occurs. If bidirectional communication is enabled, then the information returned is an updated list of media types. If bidirectional communication is not enabled, then the driver looks for custom media types saved from a previous bidirectional communication query, and uses those. Otherwise, no custom media types are available through the driver.

The following standard types appear in the lists:

- Plain
- Unspecified
- Preprinted
- Letterhead
- Transparency
- Prepunched
- Labels
- Bond
- Recycled

- Color
- Cardstock (164 to 200 g/m² or 43 to 53 lb.)
- Rough
- Vellum
- Tab
- Custom
- Light (50 to 59 g/m² or less than 16 lb.)
- Heavy (91 to 163 g/m² or 24 to 43 lb.)

The default setting is **Unspecified**, and the program selects the media type. If you select a different setting, make sure the correct media type is loaded in the tray you selected in the **Source is:** setting.

For more information about media types, see the [Media attributes](#) section of this guide.

Custom button

The **Custom Paper Size** dialog box appears when you click the **Custom** button on the **Paper** tab. The following illustration shows the initial appearance of the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box.

Note

The **Custom** button is not available when **Use Different Paper/Covers** is selected *and* any setting other than **First Page** is also selected.

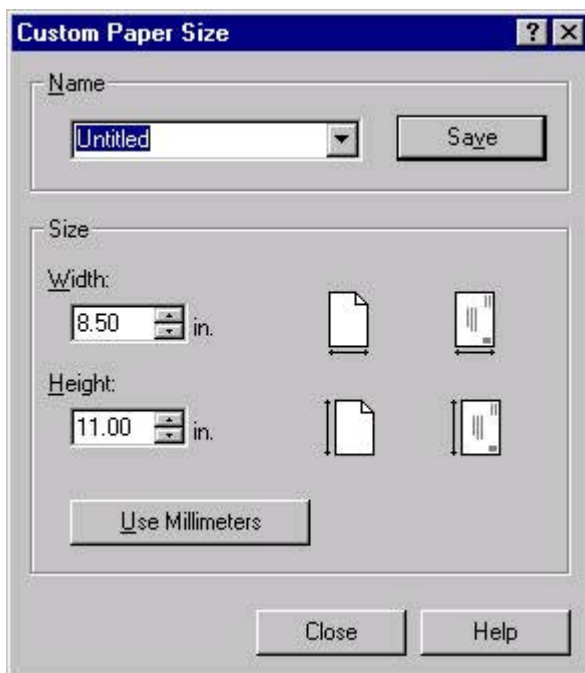


Figure 3-13. Custom Paper Size dialog box

When the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box appears, the drop-down menu in the **Name** group contains one of two things, depending on the current paper size selection in the **Paper** tab:

- If the paper size selection is a previously defined custom size, then the drop-down menu contains the name of that custom size.
- If the paper size selection is a standard paper size, then the drop-down menu shows the default name **Untitled** (plus a number sign "#" and a numerical value) for a custom paper size.

Note

In Windows 98 and Windows Me, two names for the same size media can coexist (for example, "big" and "BIG" can both be used as names for custom-size paper measuring 8.4 inches by 11 inches). In Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, and Windows XP, both uppercase and lowercase names can be used, but they cannot be used to name the same paper size.

The new name is compared only against the list of user-defined custom paper-size names, and not against the standard paper-size names.

The complete set of titles for this button and the specific characteristics that determine its title and capabilities are discussed in the [Dynamic command button](#) section.

Name drop-down menu

The **Name** drop-down menu shows the name of the custom paper size that was selected most recently. Use the **Name** drop-down menu to type new names for custom paper sizes and to select from the list of currently defined custom paper sizes.

The name that appears in the **Name** drop-down menu is one of three things, depending on the following conditions:

- If a saved custom paper size has been selected from the drop-down menu and the other controls in the dialog box have not been changed since then, the **Name** drop-down menu shows the name of the last selected custom paper size.
- If the width or height controls have been changed since a custom size was selected or saved, or if a saved paper size has just been deleted, then the **Name** drop-down menu shows the default name of "Untitled."
- If a new name has been typed into the **Name** drop-down menu for the purpose of saving a new size or renaming an existing size, then that new name will remain in the drop-down menu until a saved custom paper size has been selected from the drop-down menu.

If you type a new name into the **Name** drop-down menu, but then do not click the **Save** button, you should be able to change the width and height values without losing the name. However, if a saved paper-size name is selected from the drop-down menu, any unsaved name or size values are lost without warning, and replaced by the values of the selected custom paper size.

Dynamic command button

The dynamic command button, which is located under the **Name** drop-down menu, has three possible labels: **Save**, **Delete**, and **Rename**.

- **Save** is the button title whenever the height and width values have been changed since the last save or since the selection of an existing custom paper size. Clicking the button causes the name in the **Name** drop-down menu to be compared against each of the saved names. If a duplicate is found, a dialog box appears, asking if it is okay to replace the existing item. If you click **Yes**, the old item is updated with the new values. If you click **No**, the driver returns to the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box, where you can type a different name. The new name is compared only against the list of user-defined custom paper names, and not against the standard paper-size names. Whenever the command button has the **Save** title, it is the default button.
- **Delete** is the button title whenever the name of an existing (previously saved) custom paper size appears in the **Name** drop-down menu, such as immediately after selecting an item from the drop-down menu or clicking the **Save** button. Clicking the **Delete** button causes the saved custom paper size to be deleted, after which the **Name** drop-down menu changes to **Untitled**, the height and width controls are unchanged, and the button title changes to **Save**.
- **Rename** is the button title when you type something into the **Name** drop-down menu after selecting an existing custom paper size from the drop-down menu. If no duplicate is found, the name of the stored custom paper size changes to match the contents of the **Name** drop-down menu.

The following table illustrates the relationships between the **Name** drop-down menu, the command button, and the actions that take users from one state to another.

Table 3-3. Name drop-down menu text strings

State	Drop-down menu contents	Button label	Action	Next state
1	Untitled	Save	Click Save .	3
			Type something into the Name drop-down menu.	2
			Change the width or height values.	1
			Select a saved item from the drop-down menu.	3
2	<user-typed text>	Save	Click Save .	3
			Type something into the Name drop-down menu.	2
			Change the width or height values.	2
			Select a saved item from the drop-down menu.	3

Table 3-3. Name drop-down menu text strings (continued)

State	Drop-down menu contents	Button label	Action	Next state
3	<name of saved item>	Delete	Click Delete .	1
			Type something into the Name drop-down menu.	4
			Change the width or height values.	1
			Select a saved item from the drop-down menu.	3
4	<user-typed text>	Rename	Click Rename (when the name is unique).	3
			Click Rename (when the name is a duplicate).	4
			Type something into the Name drop-down menu.	4
			Change the width or height values.	2
			Select a saved item from the drop-down menu.	3

Custom size options (width and height controls)

The width and height values can be changed either by typing numeric strings into the edit boxes, or by using the up and down arrows.

Any entry that is greater than the maximum limits of the width and height control is rounded down to the maximum valid entry, while any entry that is smaller than the minimum limits of the width and height control is rounded up to the minimum valid entry. See [Custom width and height control limits](#).

If units are in millimeters, the custom paper-size range minimum is the limit rounded up to the nearest whole millimeter. The custom paper-size range maximum is the limit rounded down to the nearest whole millimeter. Any non-numerical entry reverts to the last valid entry. Width and height entries are validated when the focus has changed.

The resolution of each control is one millimeter or one-tenth of an inch, depending on the current measurement units. Clicking the up and down arrows increases or decreases the current value by the increment amount (within the allowed range of values). The computer determines the rate at which the values change.

Unit indicator labels change dynamically to indicate inches or millimeters, depending on the measurement units the driver is currently using. To change measurement units, click the dynamic Measurement Units button (either **Use Inches** or **Use Metric**).

Custom width and height control limits

The minimum paper size for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp is 100 by 148 mm (3.94 by 5.83 inches) and the maximum is 314 by 459 mm (12.36 by 18.07 inches). The following table summarizes paper size limits for each paper-handling device.

Table 3-4. PCL 6 custom paper sizes

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 1 (multipurpose)	Width	100 mm (3.9 inches)	297 mm (11.71inches)
	Height	148 mm (5.8 inches)	459 mm (18.07 inches)
Tray 2 (500-sheet)	Width	140 mm (5.5 inches)	297 mm (11.71inches)
	Height	210 mm (8.3 inches)	459 mm (18.07 inches)
Tray 3 (500-sheet)	Width	140 mm (5.5 inches)	297 mm (11.71inches)
	Height	210 mm (8.3 inches)	459 mm (18.07 inches)
Tray 4 (1,500-sheet)	Width	140 mm (5.5 inches)	297 mm (11.71inches)
	Height	210 mm (8.3 inches)	459 mm (18.07 inches)
Tray 5 ¹ (4,000-sheet) Letter/A4	Width	182 mm (7.17 inches)	223 mm (8.78 inches)
	Height	257 mm (10.12 inches)	297 mm (11.71inches)
Tray 5 ¹ (4,000-sheet) 11x17/A3	Width	195 mm (7.68 inches)	297 mm (11.77 inches)
	Height	210 mm (8.27 inches)	459 mm (18.07 inches)
Duplexing unit	Width	Custom sizes not supported	Custom sizes not supported
	Height	Custom sizes not supported	Custom sizes not supported

¹ Tray 5 is optional for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.

Paper and envelope icons

The paper and envelope icons visually define width and height.

Dynamic measurement units button

Use the dynamic Measurement Units button to toggle the unit of measurement between standard (inches) and metric (millimeters) units of measurement. The label on this button is dynamic, depending on the measurement units currently being displayed. If the custom size currently displays measurements in inches, the button is labeled **Use Millimeters**. If the custom size currently displays measurements in millimeters, the button is labeled **Use Inches**. Click the button to switch measurement unit types.

Close button

The **Close** button closes the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box according to the logic in the following table. In all cases, any custom paper sizes that are successfully saved (and not renamed or deleted) while the dialog box is open will remain in the **Size is:** drop-down menu on the **Paper** tab. The following table lists options that appear when you click the **Close** button.

Table 3-5. Close dialog box text strings

If the drop-down menu contains <input type="checkbox"/>	And the button says <input type="checkbox"/>	Then this happens when the Close button is clicked
Untitled	Save	The dialog box closes, but you lose the changes that were not saved. The current paper size remains the same as it was when the Custom button was selected.
<user-typed text>	Save	The dialog box closes, but you lose the changes that were not saved. The current paper size remains the same as it was when the Custom button was selected.
<name of saved item>	Delete	The dialog box closes, and the current paper size is set to that which was last shown in the drop-down menu.
<user-typed text>	Rename	The dialog box closes, but you lose the changes that were not saved. The current paper size remains the same as it was when the Custom button was selected.

Use Different Paper/Covers options

You can print books with different media types using the **Use Different Paper/Covers** options.

When you select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box, the following settings can appear in the group box, along with associated options. The **Front Cover from Feeder** and **Back Cover from Feeder** settings are available when the HP Post Insertion Kit is installed on the MFP and enabled on the **Configure** tab.

- **Front Cover from Feeder**
- **Front Cover**
- **First Page**
- **Other Pages**
- **Last Page**
- **Back Cover**
- **Back Cover from Feeder**

To use **Use Different Paper/Covers** options, you must configure the setting for the print job. Each option for the **Use Different Paper/Covers** setting is described in the sections that follow this procedure. The **First Page** option is selected by default. Follow the instructions below to configure the setting.

The following illustration shows the **Paper Options** group box when the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box is selected.

To configure the Use Different Paper/Covers options for a print job

For each option, you can set a different tray using the **Source Is:** drop-down menu. For some options, the **Type is:** drop-down menu is also available.

- 1 To use different paper or cover stock, select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box. A list of options appears in the dialog box. The full set of selections is visible when you scroll using the down arrow button to the right of the list.
- 2 To add a front cover or back cover, select one of the front-cover or back-cover options from the list. Next, select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box. A check mark appears to the left of the type of cover that you selected, which indicates that you can now select the type and/or source of the cover.
- 3 To use different media for the pages within the print job, select the appropriate option (**First Page**, **Other Pages**, or **Last Page**) in the dialog box. A check mark appears to the left of the option when you change a setting using the **Source is:** or **Type is:** drop-down menus.
- 4 Click **OK** to print.

Note

You must use the same size of media for the entire print job. All options that you select from the available **Use Different Paper/Covers** options use the size selected in the First Page settings.

When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings you select remain configured until you close the application software.

Each option for the **Use Different Paper/Covers** setting is described in the following sections, beginning with the **First Page** option, which is selected by default. The other options are described in the order they appear.

First Page options

Use the **First Page** options to select an alternative media size, type, or source for the first page of a document. The following illustration shows the appearance of the Paper Options group box when you select the Use Different Paper/Covers check box. The **First Page** setting is selected by default.

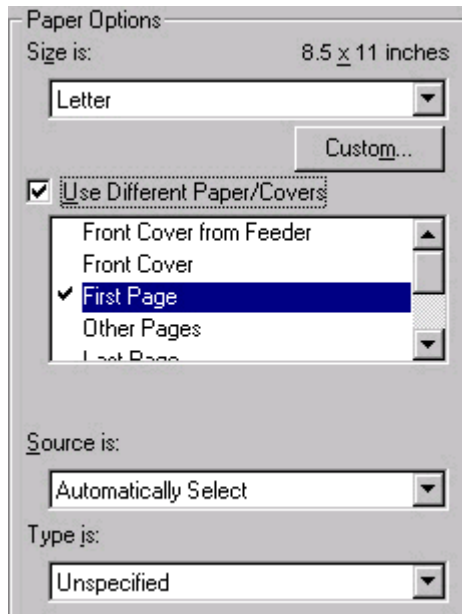


Figure 3-14.

First Page options

The **First Page** options are as follows:

- **Size is:** drop-down menu
- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

The **Size is:** driver setting for the first page applies to the entire print job. When this is set, the setting becomes unavailable for all the other **Use Different Paper/Covers** options.

Front Cover from Feeder options

Use **Front Cover from Feeder** to add a blank or preprinted cover to the print job. The cover is added to the print job from the cover sheet feeder or the HP Post Insertion Kit. The MFP must have either the HP Multifunction Finisher or the HP 3,000-sheet Stapler/Stacker *and* the HP Post Insertion Kit installed and enabled to use this option.

The **Front Cover from Feeder** options are shown in the following illustration.

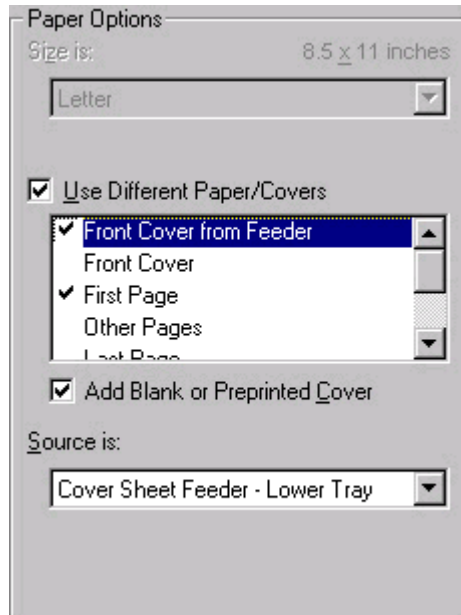


Figure 3-15. Front Cover from Feeder options

The **Front Cover from Feeder** options are as follows:

- **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box
- **Source is:** drop-down menu

Note

The **Type is:** option is not available when you select the **Front Cover from Feeder** option.

When you select the **Front Cover from Feeder** option, you must also select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box to enable the setting. When you select this check box, the **Source is:** drop-down menu becomes available and a check mark appears next to the **Front Cover from Feeder** option.

Note

The **Source is:** drop-down menu becomes available *only* when you select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box.

The **Source is:** drop-down menu lists the two possible source trays for the cover that you are adding to the print job: **Cover Sheet Feeder - Upper Tray** and **Cover Sheet Feeder - Lower Tray**. It is recommended that you select **Cover Sheet Feeder - Upper Tray** for inserting a front cover.

Front Cover options

Use **Front Cover** to add a blank or preprinted front cover to the print job, or to include a front cover from a source tray that is different from the one used for the remainder of the print job. The cover is added to the print job from any media tray. The MFP does *not* need the HP Multifunction Finisher, the HP 3,000-sheet Stapler/Stacker, or the HP Post Insertion Kit installed to use this option.

The **Front Cover** setting and options are shown in the following illustration.

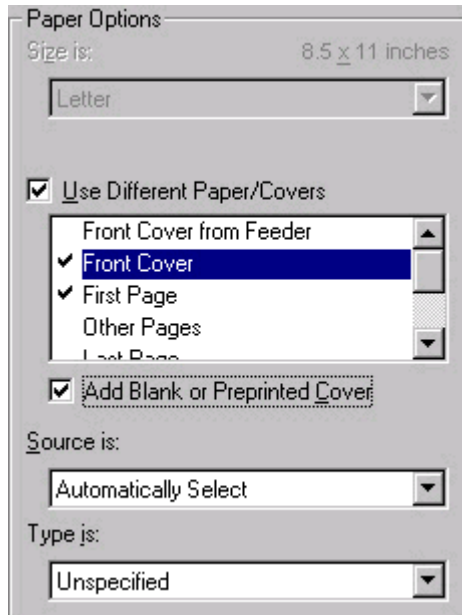


Figure 3-16.

Front Cover Option

The **Front Cover** options are as follows:

- **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box
- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

When you select **Front Cover**, you must also select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box to enable the setting. When you select this check box, the **Source is:** and **Type is:** drop-down menus become available and a check mark appears next to the **Front Cover** option.

Note

The **Source is:** and **Type is:** drop-down menus become available *only* when you select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box.

Other Pages options

Use the **Other Pages** options to select an alternative media source (or the same source as **First Page**) for the other pages of the document.

The **Other Pages** setting and options are shown in the following illustration.

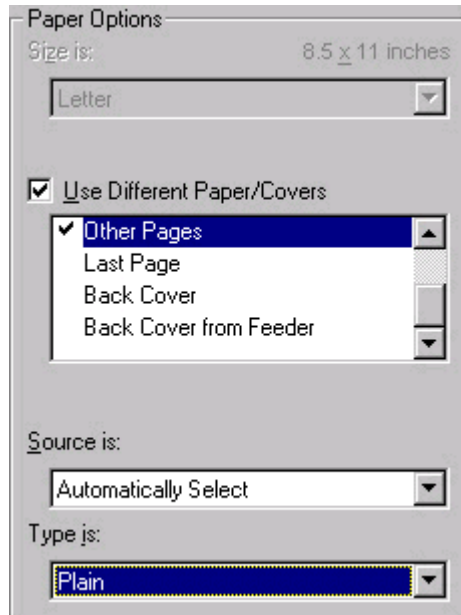


Figure 3-17. Other Pages options

The **Other Pages** options are as follows:

- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the MFP accessories. Any optional media trays that are installed through the **Configure** tab also appear here. For more information about the **Source is:** setting, see the [Source Is: drop-down menu](#) section of this chapter.

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all of the the media types that the MFP supports. For more information about the **Type is:** drop-down menu settings, see the description for **Type is:** in the [Type is: drop-down menu](#) section of this chapter.

Last Page options

Use the **Last Page** options to select an alternative media type or source for the last page of a document.

The following illustration shows the **Last Page** setting and options.

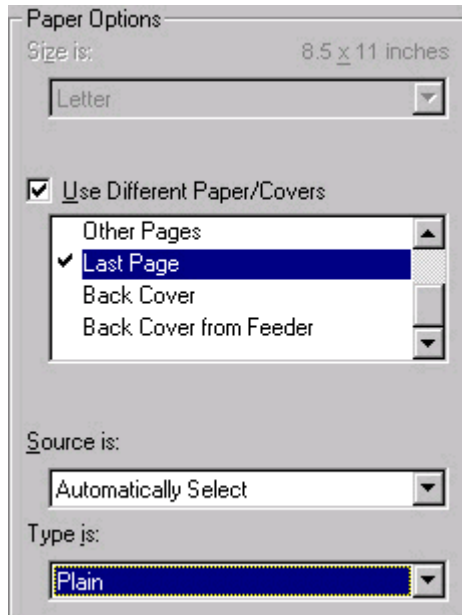


Figure 3-18. Last Page options

The **Last Page** options are as follows:

- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the MFP accessories. Any optional media trays that are installed through the **Configure** tab also appear here. For more information about the **Source is:** setting, see the [Source Is: drop-down menu](#) section of this chapter.

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all of the the media types that MFP supports. For more information about the **Type is:** drop-down menu settings, see the description for **Type is:** in the [Type is: drop-down menu](#) section of this chapter.

Back Cover options

Use the **Back Cover** options to include a blank back cover on a document, or to include a back cover from a source tray that is different from the one used for the remainder of the document. The MFP does *not* need the HP Multifunction Finisher, the HP 3,000-sheet Stapler/Stacker, or the HP Post Insertion Kit installed to use this option.

The following illustration shows the **Back Cover** setting and options.

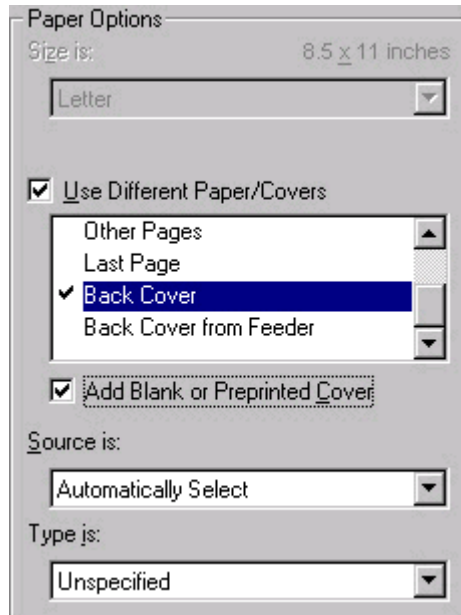


Figure 3-19. Back Cover setting

The **Back Cover** options are as follows

- **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box
- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

When you select **Back Cover**, you must also select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box to enable the setting. When you select this check box, the **Source is:** and **Type is:** drop-down menus become available and a check mark appears next to the **Back Cover** option.

Note

The **Back Cover** options are not available when the **Booklet Printing Layout** setting is enabled on the **Finishing** tab. For two-page-per-sheet (2-up) booklet printing, you can obtain a cover by selecting different media for the first page only. The back cover setting is unavailable, because this page would otherwise be printed in the middle of a booklet.

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for adding a back cover to the document. The list of source trays depends on the MFP accessories. Any optional media trays that are installed through the **Configure** tab also appear here. For more information about the **Source is:** setting, see the [Source Is: drop-down menu](#) section of this chapter.

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all of the media types that the MFP supports. For more information about the **Type is:** drop-down menu settings, see the **Type is:** in the [Type is: drop-down menu](#) section of this chapter.

Back Cover from Feeder options

Use **Back Cover from Feeder** to add a blank or preprinted back cover to the print job. The back cover is added to the print job from the Cover Sheet Feeder. The MFP must have either the HP Multifunction Finisher or the HP 3,000-sheet Stapler/Stacker *and* the HP Post Insertion Kit installed and enabled to use this option.

The **Back Cover from Feeder** options are shown in the following illustration.

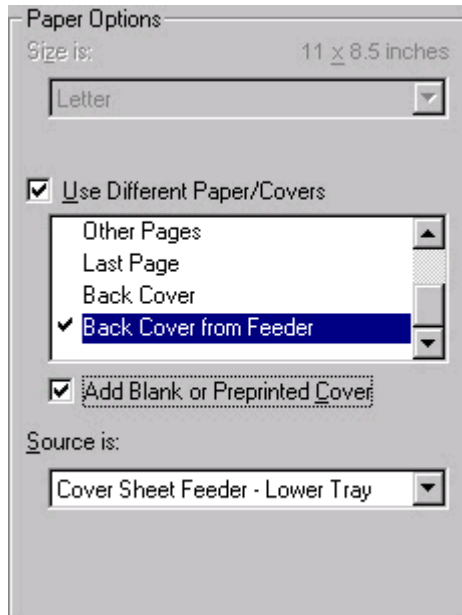


Figure 3-20. Back Cover from Feeder options

The **Back Cover from Feeder** setting and options are as follows:

- **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box
- **Source is:** drop-down menu

Note

The **Type is:** option is not available when you select the **Back Cover from Feeder** option.

When you select **Back Cover from Feeder**, you must also select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box to enable the setting. When you select this check box, the **Source is:** drop-down menu becomes available and a check mark appears next to the **Back Cover from Feeder** option.

Note

The **Back Cover from Feeder** options are not available when the **Booklet Printing** setting is enabled on the **Finishing** tab. For two-page-per-sheet (2-up) booklet printing, you can obtain a cover by selecting different media for the first page only. The back cover setting is unavailable, because this page would otherwise be printed in the middle of a booklet.

The **Source is:** drop-down menu lists the two possible source trays for the cover that you are adding to the print job: **Cover Sheet Feeder - Upper Tray** and **Cover Sheet Feeder - Lower Tray**. It is recommended that you select **Cover Sheet Feeder - Lower Tray** for inserting a back cover.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of all of the **Document Defaults** driver tabs except the **Job Storage** tab. For more information about the document preview image, see the [Finishing tab features](#) section of this chapter.

MFP image

The bitmap image in the lower-right portion of the **Paper** tab represents the current physical configuration of the MFP and corresponds to its configuration data. It should look the same as the image that appears in the same location on the **Configure** tab in the MFP **Properties**.

On the **Paper** tab, the MFP image contains hot spots where you can select a paper source. (Hot spots are not available in Windows 98.) When you use the mouse to move the pointer over a hot spot, the arrow reverts to a gloved hand. The current media source tray, whether selected from the drop-down menu or from a MFP-image hot spot, is highlighted on the MFP bitmap. The following points are worth noting:

- The **Automatically Select** setting in the **Source is:** drop-down menu does not have a corresponding area to highlight in the MFP image. Selecting other settings in this menu highlights the corresponding part in the MFP image.
- Selecting the area that represents a tray in the bitmap always selects the corresponding tray in the **Source is:** option. **Manual Feed in Tray 1**, which is available from the **Source is:** drop-down menu, cannot be selected by selecting the bitmap.
- On the **Paper** tab, only source trays have MFP-image hot spots and can be highlighted. Output bins must be selected on the **Output** tab.

Note

The MFP image shown in the following illustration might differ from your HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp, depending on the accessory devices.

Job Storage tab features

Job Storage is always available to the the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp and is enabled by default.

Note

To disable Job Storage, click **Settings**, click **Printers** right-click the product icon, click **Properties**, click the **Configure** tab, click **More** , and then clear the **Job Storage Enabled** check box in the **More Configuration Options** dialog box. When **Job Storage** is disabled in the **More** dialog box of the **Configure** tab, then the **Job Storage** tab is not visible.

Job Storage tab

The following illustration shows the **Job Storage** tab.

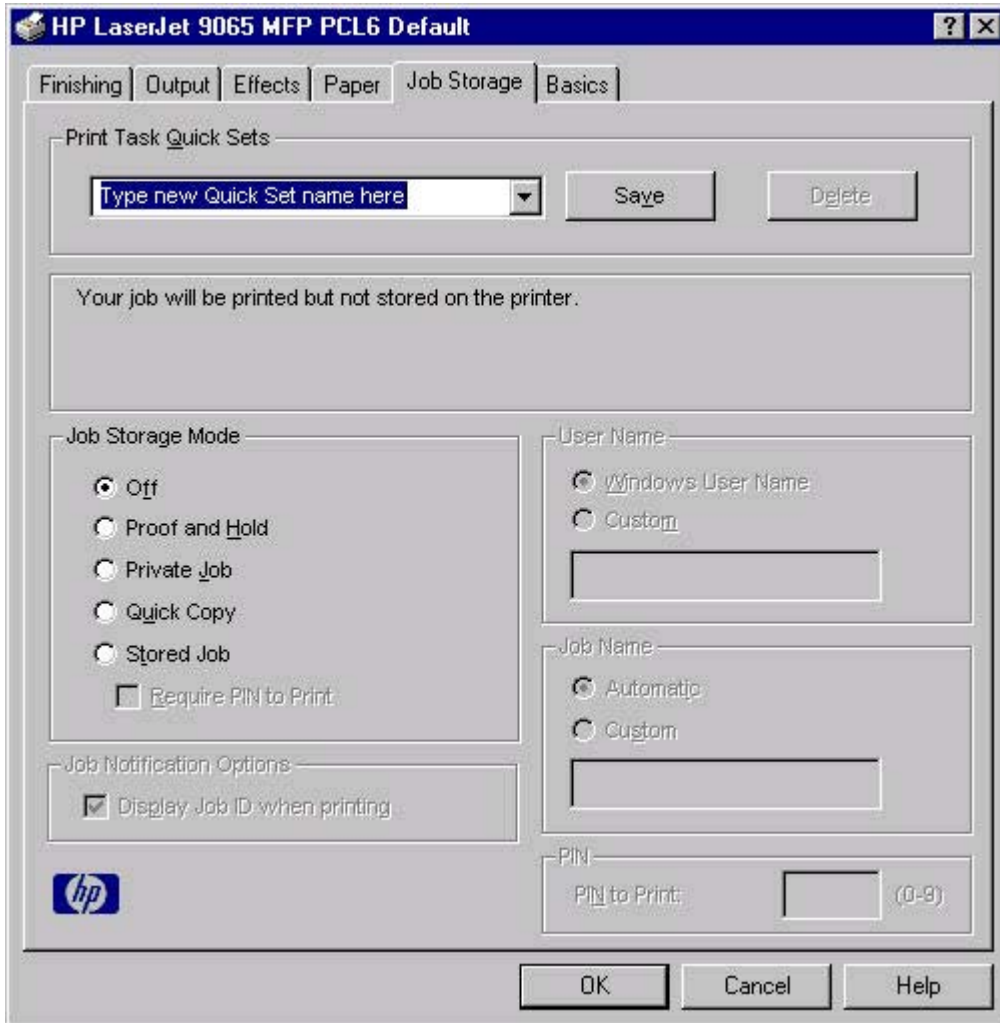


Figure 3-21.

Job Storage tab

The **Job Storage** tab contains the following controls.

- **Print Task Quick Sets** group box
- Status group box (unlabeled)
- **Job Storage Mode** group box
- **Job Notification Options** group box
- **User Name** group box
- **Job Name** group box
- **PIN** group box

Print Task Quick Sets

The **Print Task Quick Sets** control is used to store the current combination of driver settings that are found on all other **Document Defaults** driver tabs. Print Task Quick Sets are either preset (by the administrator) or user-defined printing specifications, such as paper size and pages per sheet. For more information, see [Finishing tab features](#).

Status group box (unlabeled)

The unlabeled group box on the **Job Storage** tab contains a status message about the destination of a print job. The status information changes depending on the selections made on the **Job Storage** tab.

Job Storage Mode options

Use the **Job Storage Mode** options on the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp to store documents at the MFP and then control their printing at the MFP control panel. This feature is intended to provide greater flexibility, convenience, security, and cost savings.

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp offer the following **Job Storage Mode** options:

- **Off**
- **Proof and Hold**
- **Private Job**
- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**
 - **Require PIN to Print** (available when **Stored Job** is selected)

These options and the settings that control them are described in the following sections.

Off

When selected, this option turns the **Job Storage** feature off (it is disabled), which means that the print job will not be stored in the MFP.

Proof and Hold

When selected, this option stores the print job and prints only the first copy of the job, allowing you to check the first copy. If the document prints correctly, you can print the remaining copies of the print job at the MFP control panel. You can set the number of proof-and-hold print jobs that can be stored in the MFP at the control panel.

After it is released for printing, the proof-and-hold job is immediately deleted from the MFP. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second proof-and-hold job to the MFP with the same user name and job name as an existing proof-and-hold job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the job will overwrite the existing job. Proof-and-hold jobs are deleted if you turn off the MFP.

Note

The MFP configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the MFP control panel in the **Configuration** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, a newer document will overwrite the oldest. Also, a document that has the same user and job name as one that is already stored on the hard disk will overwrite the existing document.

Private Job

When you select **Private Job**, the print job is sent to the MFP, but is not printed until you request the job at the MFP control panel. Selecting **Private Job** activates the **PIN** group box. The print job can be printed only after you type the correct PIN at the MFP control panel. After the job is printed, the job is deleted from the MFP. This feature is useful when you are printing sensitive or confidential documents that you do not want to leave in an output bin after printing.

After it is released for printing, the private job is immediately deleted from the MFP. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second private job to the MFP with the same user name and job name as an existing private job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the job will overwrite the existing job, regardless of the PIN. Private jobs are deleted if you turn off the MFP.

Using a PIN for Private Job

The **Private Job** option can be secured by a four-digit personal identification number (PIN). You must type in this number at the MFP control panel before the MFP prints the job.

The group box labeled **PIN** is usually inactive. It becomes active when you select the **Private Job** option.

The Private Job/PIN coupling has a PIN restriction of four ASCII numeric characters (0-9). If you type non-numeric characters, they are removed immediately. If you type more than four characters, the characters past the fourth are truncated. The field temporarily accepts fewer than four digits in the string, but when the edit field loses focus, the zeroes pad the left end until there are exactly four digits. The default initialized value for the PIN is 0000 for **Private Job**.

Quick Copy

When you select **Quick Copy**, the entire print job prints and a copy of the print job is stored on the hard disk, after which you can print additional copies of the print job at the MFP control panel. The number of quick-copy print jobs that can be stored in the MFP is set by using the MFP control panel.

Note

The MFP configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the MFP control panel in the **Configuration** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, a newer document will overwrite the oldest. Also, a document that has the same user and job name as one that is already stored on the hard disk will overwrite the existing document. **Quick Copy** jobs are deleted if you turn off the MFP.

Stored Job

Use the **Stored Job** option to send a print job directly to the MFP hard disk without printing. The print job is stored in the MFP as if it is an electronic file cabinet. After the print job is stored in the MFP hard disk, you can print the job at the MFP control panel.

The job remains stored in the MFP until it is deleted or overwritten by a document with the same user and job names. Stored jobs remain on the MFP hard disk when the MFP is turned off. Use this feature for forms and other common or shared documents.

A stored job can be managed in two ways: as either a private or a public job. Use a private stored job to send a print job directly to the MFP, which can then be printed only after you type in a PIN at the MFP control panel. (You can set the PIN in the **PIN** group box.) After the job is printed, the job remains in the MFP and can be printed again at the MFP control panel. Private mode is initiated by clicking the **Require PIN to Print** check box. In this mode, a PIN typed at the MFP control panel is required to release the job.

The box labeled **PIN** is usually inactive. The **Require PIN to Print** option becomes available when you select **Stored Job**. If you select the **Require PIN to Print** box, you must type a PIN to make the stored job private.

Note

A private stored job is not the same as a private job (see above). *Private* jobs are deleted from the MFP after they are printed. *Private stored* jobs are retained in the MFP after printing, but require that a PIN be typed each time they are printed.

Job Notification Options

Clicking a job storage mode selection causes the **User Name** and **Job Name** options to become available. The **Display Job ID when printing** check box is selected by default. The **Display Job ID when printing** option causes a pop-up dialog box to appear when the job-storage print job is printed. The dialog box shows the user name and job name associated with the stored print job, as well as the MFP name, port, and location.

User Name

Use the **User Name** settings to help identify the job at the MFP control panel. The **User Name** settings are:

- **User Name.** This option associates your Windows user name with the stored print job. The Windows user name is automatically displayed in the text field below the **User Name** options.
- **Custom.** Use this option to type a custom name for the stored print job. When you click the **Custom** radio button, the text field below the option becomes available. The **User Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z and 0 through 9 because the name appears on the MFP control-panel display. If you try to type a lowercase character, it automatically shifts to uppercase. If you try to type a character with an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.

Job Name

Use the **Job Name** options to specify a name to identify the job at the MFP control panel. The **Job Name** settings are:

- **Automatic.** This option automatically generates the job name associated with the stored print job. The file name of the print job is used if it is available to the print driver. Otherwise, the software program name or a time stamp is used for the job name.
- **Custom.** Use this to type a custom job name for the stored print job. When you click the **Custom** option button, the text field below the option becomes available.

The **Job Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z and 0 through 9 because the name appears on the MFP control-panel display. If you try to type a lowercase character, it automatically shifts to uppercase. If you try to type a character with an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.

When the dialog box is closed, or as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the **Tab** key is pressed or another control is selected), an empty string is replaced with **<Automatic>**. The acceptable characters for job name and user name vary for each operating system. The string must be of a length and type that can appear on the MFP control-panel display.

PIN

The **PIN** group box is usually inactive. The option within the PIN group box, **PIN to Print**, is activated if you select either of the following options:

- Select **Private Job**. If selected, you must type in the PIN number at the MFP control panel to make the job print. For more information, see [Using a PIN for Private Job](#) .
- Select **Stored Job**, and then select the **Require PIN to Print** check box. If the **Require PIN to Print** check box is selected, you must enter a PIN to make the stored job private. For more information, see the [Stored Job](#) .

Using Job Storage options when printing

Note

The print driver that is installed on your computer must be configured to use the **Job Storage** features. **Job Storage** is enabled by default. To enable **Job Storage** (if it has been disabled), click **Start**, click **Settings**, click **Printers**, and then right-click the product icon. Click **Properties**, click the **Configure** tab, and then click the **More** button. Select the **Job Storage Enabled** check box, and then click **OK**.

- 1 Click **Print** from the software program. The **Print** dialog box appears.
- 2 Click **Properties**. The **Properties** dialog box appears.
- 3 Click the **Job Storage** tab.
- 4 Select one of the Job Storage options described above by clicking the appropriate option button.

Releasing a Job Storage print job

After you send a print job using the **Job Storage** feature, you can release the job to print by using the MFP control panel.

- 1 Press the **Mode** selection button until the light comes on next to **Print**. (The Mode selection key has two arrows pointing in a circular direction.)
- 2 Touch **MENUS**.
- 3 Touch **+RETRIEVE JOB**.
- 4 Touch your user name, if any.
- 5 Touch the job name, if any.
- 6 Touch **#PRINT**.
- 7 Use the numeric pad to key in your PIN, if any.
- 8 Touch **OK**.
- 9 Use the numeric pad to change the number of copies you want. The default is **1** copy.
- 10 Touch **OK**.

Deleting a Job Storage print job

Sometimes it is necessary to delete a print job from the MFP hard disk. You can do this by using the MFP control panel.

- 1 Press the **Mode** selection button until the light comes on next to **Print**.
- 2 Touch **MENUS**.
- 3 Touch **+RETRIEVE JOB**.
- 4 Touch your user name, if any.
- 5 Touch the job name, if any.
- 6 Touch **#DELETE**.
- 7 Use the numeric pad to key in your PIN, if any.
- 8 Touch **OK**.

The stored print job is deleted and the MFP returns to the **READY** state.

Basics tab features

The **Basics** tab provides options for setting the number of copies to be printed and for the orientation of the print job. You can also use it to retrieve information about the driver.

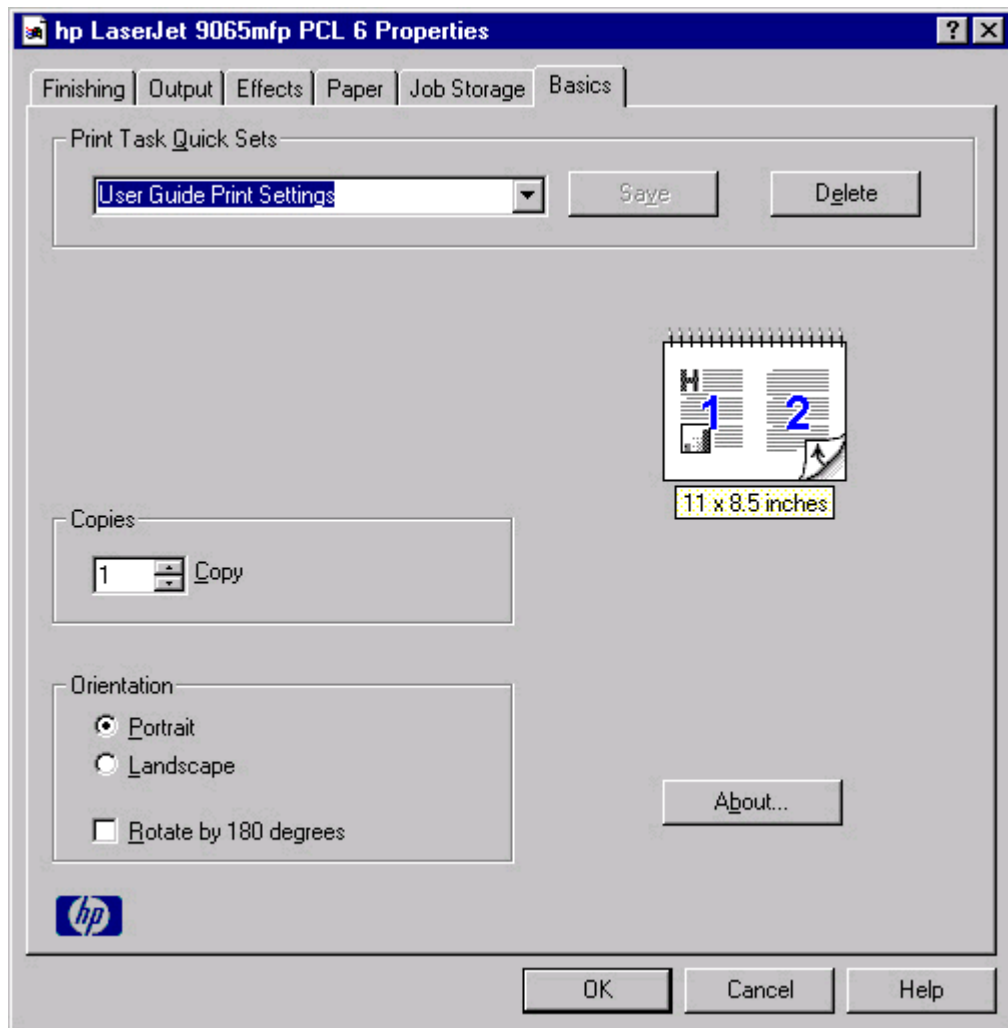


Figure 3-22.

Basics tab

The **Basics** tab contains the following controls:

- **Print Task Quick Sets** group box
- **Copies** group box
- **Orientation** group box
- Document preview image
- **About** button

Print Task Quick Sets

The **Print Task Quick Sets** control is available on all of the **Properties** driver tabs (the **Finishing**, **Output**, **Effects**, **Paper**, **Job Storage**, and **Basics** tabs). The feature is used to store the current combination of driver settings that are found on all other tabs. Print task quick sets are either preset (by the administrator) or user-defined printing specifications, such as media size and pages per sheet. For more information, see the [Finishing tab features](#) section of this chapter.

Copies option

Use the **Copies** option to specify the number of copies to print.

The number of copies that you request appears in the **Copies** group box. You can select the number by typing in the box or by using the up and down arrows to the right of the text box. Valid entries are numbers from 1 to 9999 for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp. The copies value will not advance from the maximum number (9999) to 1 when the up arrow is used, or change from 1 to the maximum number (9999) when the down arrow is used. When you click another group box or leave the **Basics** tab, invalid entries into the edit box (such as non-numerical input, numbers less than 1, or numbers greater than the maximum allowed) are changed to the last valid value that appeared in the box. The default number of copies is 1.

Because you can set the number of copies that you want from some software programs, conflicts between the software program you are using and the driver can arise. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate, so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the program) will appear in the other (such as the driver). For some programs, this communication does not take place, and the copies values are treated independently. For these programs, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver will result in 100 copies (10 x 10) being printed. It is recommended that you set the number of copies in the program, wherever possible.

Orientation options

Orientation refers to the layout of the image on the page, and does not affect the manner in which media is fed into the MFP. You can specify the orientation of the print job. The three available orientations are portrait, landscape, and rotated. The default orientation is **Portrait**.

Note

Nearly all software programs establish the orientation for the printed page, so the page orientation in the driver is useful only for the few software programs that do not set an orientation.

The **Orientation** group box contains three options:

- **Portrait.** The top edge of the document is the shorter edge of the paper.
- **Landscape.** The top edge of the document is the longer edge of the paper.
- **Rotate by 180 degrees.** This creates a landscape or portrait orientation in which the image is rotated 180 degrees. This setting is useful for printing prepunched paper.

You can toggle orientation between portrait and landscape by clicking the document preview image. If you select the **Rotate by 180 degrees** check box, there is no change in the document preview image.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of all of the **Properties** driver tabs (the **Finishing**, **Output**, **Effects**, **Paper**, **Job Storage**, and **Basics** tabs). For more information about the document preview image, see [Finishing tab features](#).

About

When you click the **About** button on **Basics** tab, or you click the HP logo on any of the driver **Properties** tabs, the **About This Driver** dialog box appears. To close the **About** box, click **OK**, press **Esc**, press **Alt + F4**, or press **Enter**. The following figure shows the **About This Driver** dialog box. The information it contains varies according to driver, date, and version.

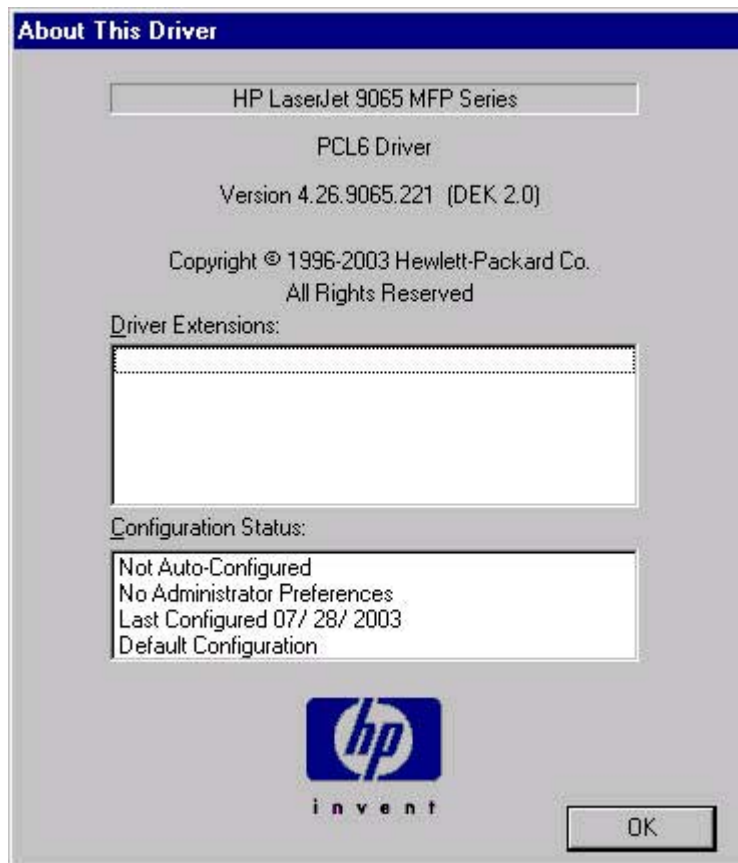


Figure 3-23. About This Driver dialog box

The **About This Driver** dialog box provides the following information:

- MFP name
- Driver name
- Print driver version number
- Copyright information
- **Driver Extensions** (if any)
- **Configuration Status** group box

The **Configuration Status** group box indicates whether the driver was autoconfigured, whether administrator preferences were set, the date the driver was last configured, and whether the configuration is default or user-defined.

MFP Properties tabs

The MFP **Properties** tabs contain information about and options for configuring the MFP.

NT Forms tab features

Note

The **NT Forms** tab is in the **Properties** for the print driver.

To gain access to the MFP **Properties** tabs, click **Start** on the Window task bar, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**. Right-click the MFP name, and then click **Properties**.

The **NT Forms** tab appears only in the Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 operating environment. The **NT Forms** tab (like the **Configure** tab) can be viewed only from the Properties window. The following illustration shows the **NT Forms** tab.

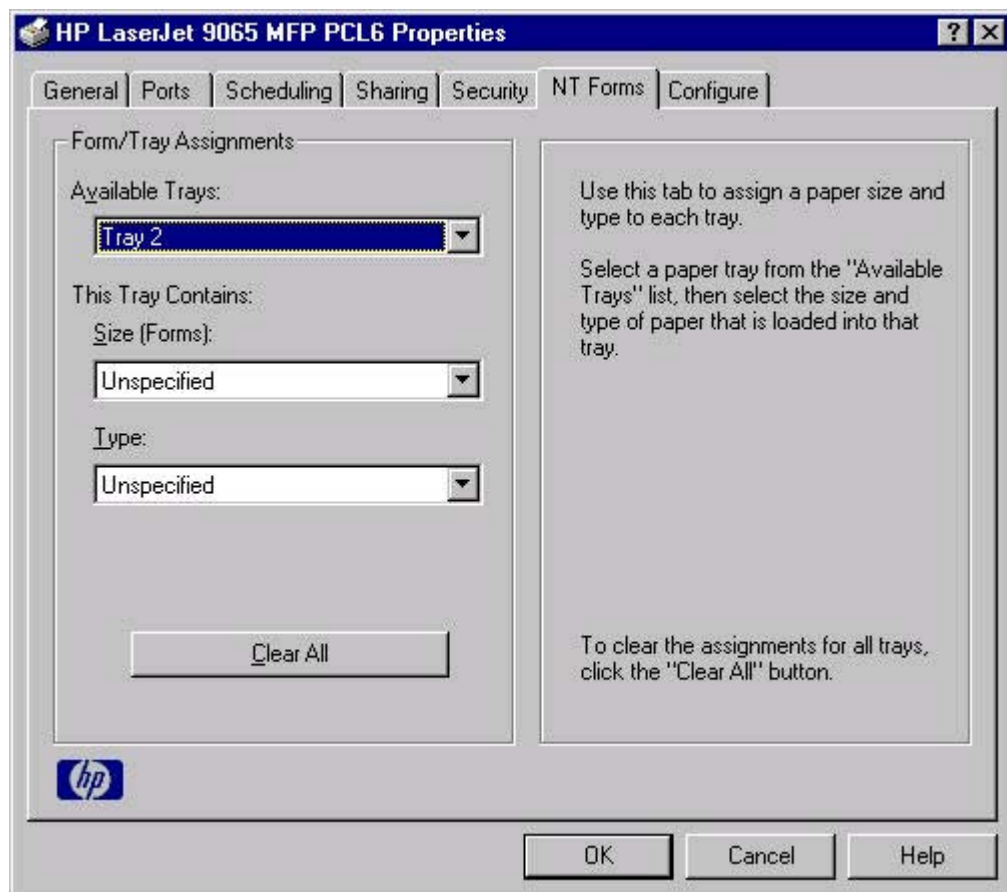


Figure 3-24. Driver NT Forms tab

Use the **NT Forms** tab to specify which media sizes and types are loaded in each of the available source trays. This constrains the choices available in the **Size** and **Type** lists on the **Paper** tab. This constraint prevents information overload if you request unavailable sizes or types.

The **NT Forms** tab contains a single group box (the **Form/Tray Assignments** group box) which contains the following controls:

- **Available Trays** is a drop-down menu that contains all the MFP trays that are specified on the **Configure** tab.
- **This Tray Contains/Size (Forms)** drop-down menu contains a list of standard paper sizes the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp supports, as well as any custom forms that are defined in the **NT Forms** tab.
- **This Tray Contains/Type** drop-down menu lists all of the media types that the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp supports.
- **Clear All** button removes all the size and type constraints on the **Paper** tab.

Configuring the trays

- 1 Select the appropriate tray from the **Available Trays** drop-down menu.
- 2 Use the **This Tray Contains/Size (Forms)** drop-down menu to select the media size (or form) that is loaded in that tray.
- 3 Use the **This Tray Contains/Type** drop-down menu to select the media type that is configured for the tray.
- 4 Repeat steps 1 through 3 for the remaining trays.
- 5 Click **OK** to enable your settings, or, if necessary, click the **Clear All** button to reconfigure all the trays, and remove the size and type constraints that have been imposed on the **Paper** tab.

Configure tab features

Note

The **Configure** tab is in the **Properties** for the print driver. To gain access to the print driver **Properties**, click **Start** on the Window task bar, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**. Right-click the MFP name, and then click **Properties**.

Use the **Configure** tab to tell the driver about the hardware configuration of the MFP. If bidirectional communication is enabled in a supported environment, set up this tab by clicking the **Update Now** button. If your environment does not support bidirectional communication, the **Update Now** button is unavailable, so you must manually configure the options on this tab.

The **Configure** tab is available when the driver is opened from the **Printers** folder by clicking **Properties**. When you open the driver from within a program, the **Configure** tab is not visible (with a few exceptions, such as when using Excel 5.0 or Corel (R) Chart 4.0). When opened from the **Printers** folder, the **Configure** tab looks like the following illustration.

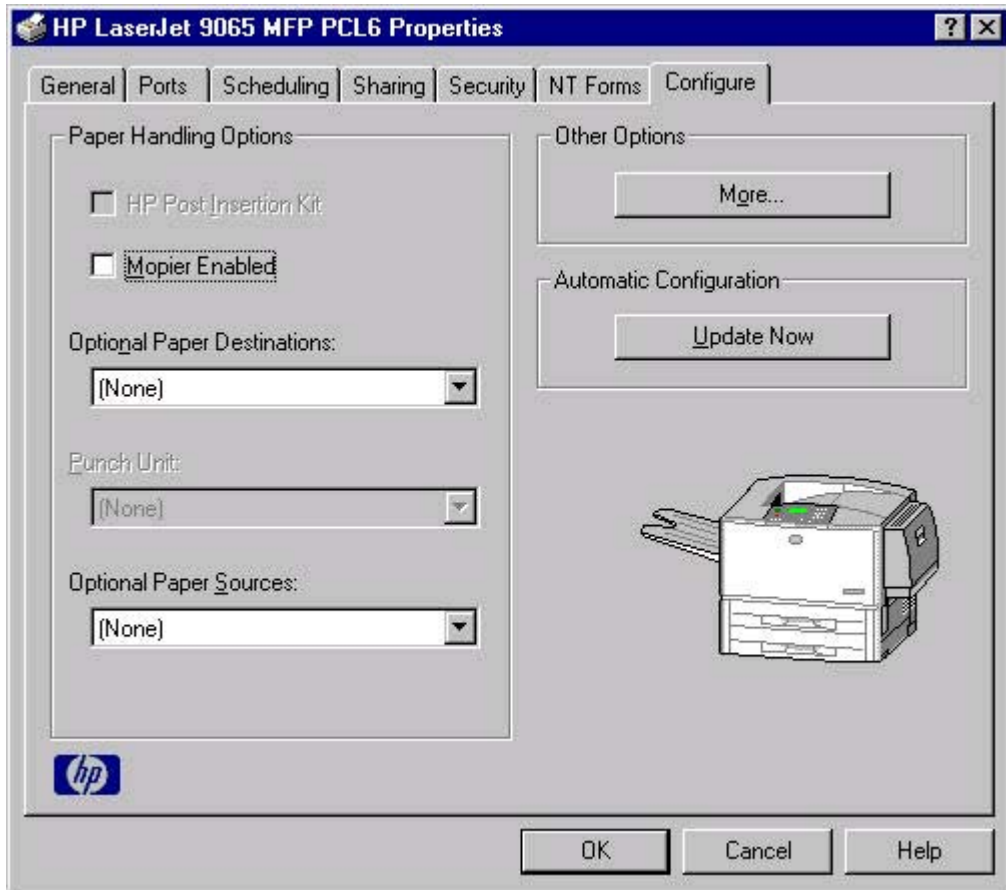


Figure 3-25. Configure tab

The **Configure** tab contains the following controls.

- **Paper Handling Options** group box
- **Other Options** group box
- **Automatic Configuration** group box
- MFP image

Paper Handling Options group box

The **Paper Handling Options** group box contains the following controls.

- **HP Post Insertion Kit** check box (available when the optional HP Multifunction Finisher or the HP 3000-sheet Stapler/Stacker is selected in the **Optional Paper Destinations** drop-down menu)
- **Mopier Enabled** check box
- **Optional Paper Destinations** drop-down menu

- **Punch Unit** drop-down menu (available when the optional HP Multifunction Finisher or the HP 3000-sheet Stapler/Stacker is selected in the **Optional Paper Destinations** drop-down menu)
- **Optional Paper Sources** drop-down menu

HP Post Insertion Kit

Select this option if the HP Post Insertion Kit is installed (along with either the optional HP Multifunction Finisher or the optional HP 3000-sheet Stapler/Stacker). When it is selected, additional controls appear in the **Finishing Options** group box on the **Output** tab. The HP Post Insertion Kit enables you to add blank or preprinted covers to your documents after they have finished printing.

Mopier Enabled

The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job. Multiple-original printing (mopying) increases performance and reduces network traffic by transmitting the job to the MFP once, and then storing it in the MFP hard disk. The remainder of the copies are printed by the MFP at the fastest speed. All documents that are printed in mopier mode can be created, controlled, managed, and finished from the computer, which eliminates the extra step of using a photocopier.

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp supports the transmit-once mopying feature because the MFP has an installed hard disk. The default **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Configure** tab is **Enabled**.

Mopier mode and collation

Mopying and collating print jobs are independent but closely related functions. Mopying, the ability to send multiple original print jobs to the MFP, is performed by the print driver and the MFP. Collating can be controlled by either the print driver or the document software application. The mopying mode is selected by default in the driver, and can be disabled by changing the **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Configure** tab to **Disabled**.

You can control collation through the print driver by selecting or clearing the **Ignore Application Collation** check box on the **More Configuration Options** dialog box that appears when you click the **More** button on the **Configure** tab. You can clear the check box, which is available only when the **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Configure** tab is **Enabled**, to allow the software application to control collation.

To receive uncollated multiple copies of a print job with the mopier enabled, you must clear the **Ignore Application Collation** check box *and* make sure that the software application collation feature is not selected.

The following table shows the relation between mopier mode settings and collation settings in the application and the driver. The first three columns show the settings; the last column, "Expected result", shows how a 3-page print job would appear.

Table 3-6. Driver mopier mode and collation settings

Mopier Mode	Application collation	Ignore Application Collation	Expected result
Disabled	Not selected	Not available	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Selected	Not available	3 copies collated
Enabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Enabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated

Table 3-6. Driver mopier mode and collation settings (continued)

Mopier Mode	Application collation	Ignore Application Collation	Expected result
Enabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated by MFP
Enabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated by MFP

Optional Paper Destinations

The **Optional Paper Destinations** drop-down menu contains the following options:

- **(None)**. This is the default setting for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.
- **HP 3,000-Sheet Stapler/Stacker**. This single 3000-sheet stacking device accommodates up to 3,000 sheets of Letter-sized and A4-sized paper, or up to 1,500 sheets of 11-inch by 17-inch and A3 paper. It provides multi-position stapling for up to 50 sheets of paper per document.
- **HP Multifunction Finisher**. This booklet-printing device creates booklets and stapled documents in a variety of sizes, with several half-fold and tri-fold options.

Punch Unit

Select this option if a punch unit is installed in the MFP (along with either the optional HP Multifunction Finisher or the optional HP 3000-sheet Stapler/Stacker). When it is selected, additional controls appear in the **Finishing Options** group box on the **Output** tab. Unlike most options in this group box, the **Punch Unit** option does not affect the MFP image because the punch unit is contained within the MFP. To use the punch unit on a print job, click **File**, and then click **Print** in the software program. Next, click the **Properties** button, and then click the **Output** tab. Select one of the following options from the **Punch** drop-down menu:

- **Punch left**
- **Punch right**
- **Punch top**

Optional Paper Sources

The **Optional Paper Sources** drop-down menu lists optional media source trays for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp. The list of available source trays varies depending on your MFP, its input accessories, and the MFP configuration settings on the **Configure** tab.

For the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp, the following settings are available in the **Optional Paper Sources** drop-down menu:

- **(None)**. This is the default setting for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.
- **HP 4,000-Sheet Paper Tray**. This optional 4,000-sheet tray (tray 5) can be configured for narrow or wide-format media (Letter/A4 or 11x17/A3).

Other Options

The **Other Options** group box contains a single **More** command button. Clicking the **More** button opens the **More Configuration Options** dialog box.

More configuration options

When you click the **More** button under **Other Options**, more configuration options are available. The **More Configuration Options** dialog box is shown in the following illustration.

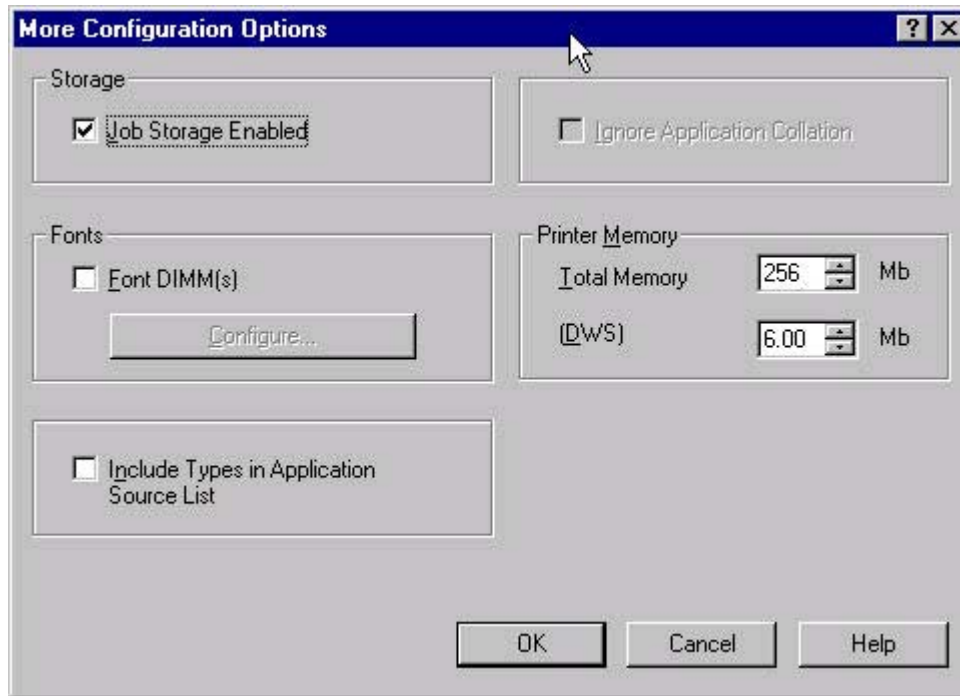


Figure 3-26. More Configuration Options dialog box

The **More Configuration Options** dialog box contains the following controls.

- **Storage** group box
- **Fonts** group box
- **Include Types in Application Source List** check box
- **Ignore Application Collation** check box
- **Printer Memory** group box

Storage

The **Storage** group box contains the **Job Storage Enabled** check box. When job storage is enabled, the MFP can store print jobs so that you can gain access to those print jobs later at the MFP control panel. When the **Job Storage Enabled** check box is selected, all options on the **Job Storage** tab are available.

The MFP comes with a hard disk installed, which allows job storage. However, if you clear the **Job Storage Enabled** check box, which disables the feature, the **Job Storage** tab is no longer available in the print driver.

Fonts

The **Fonts** group box contains a **Font DIMM** check box and a corresponding **Configure** button. Selecting the **Font DIMM** check box tells the driver that a Font DIMM is installed, and that stored data about the fonts on the DIMM is available. When the check box is selected, the **Configure** button is enabled. Click the **Configure** button to open the **Configure Font DIMMs** dialog box. If the **Font DIMM** check box was not selected when you opened the **More Configuration Options** dialog box, selecting that check box automatically opens the **Configure Font DIMMs** dialog box.

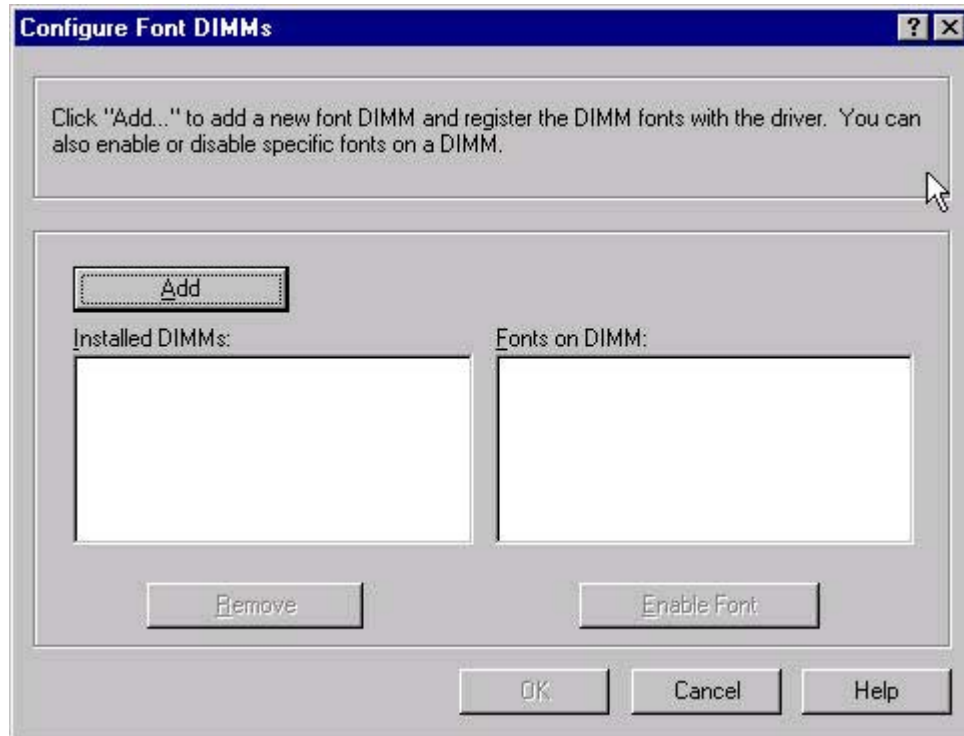


Figure 3-27. Configure Font DIMMs dialog box

Use the **Configure Font DIMMs** dialog box to perform the following tasks:

- Add up to two font DIMMs by clicking the **Add** button.
- Specify a unique font DIMM name.
- Select specific font DIMM data files that contain lists of fonts on specified DIMMs.
- Select one or more installed DIMMs in the Installed DIMM list. The list to the right (**Fonts on DIMM**) shows all of the fonts available on the selected DIMM(s).
- Enable or disable one or more of the selected font(s).

Complete the following steps to configure a font DIMM.

- 1 Make sure that the font DIMM is properly installed.
- 2 Click **Add**. The **Add Font DIMM** dialog box appears.
- 3 Click **Browse**. The **Font DIMM Files** dialog box appears.
- 4 Find and select the appropriate Printer Cartridge Metrics (PCM) file that came with the font DIMM.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 If you want, you can specify a Font DIMM Name in the **Add Font DIMM** dialog box.

- 7 Click **OK**. The selected .PCM file appears in the **Installed DIMMs** list. Select the .PCM file to see a list of available fonts in the **Fonts on DIMM** list.
- 8 Click **OK** to close the **Add Font DIMM** dialog box. The fonts on the DIMM should now be available on the system.

Note

When using font DIMMs with the PCL 6 drivers: To install screen fonts that match the font DIMM, use the .HPB file that is specifically designed to work with that DIMM. If no screen fonts exist for the DIMM, use the .PCM file that is specifically designed to work with that DIMM.

Include types in application source list

Note

The **Include types in application source list** check box is available only when using a computer that is running Windows NT 4.0.

When the **Include types in application source list** check box is selected, all media types (such as heavy paper and transparencies) are available from the **Source is:** list on the **Paper** tab. When you are in a software program, you can open the **Paper** tab by clicking **Print** from the **File** menu, and then clicking **Properties**.

Ignore Application Collation

This setting overrides collation options selected in a software program's print options. **Ignore Application Collation** allows the print driver to collate in the most appropriate way for the print job. The performance of this feature depends on the software program that you are using.

Printer memory

The **Total Memory** group box shows the total amount of memory that is physically installed in the MFP. The default values for total printer memory are specified on the **Configuration** tab. Total printer memory is updated through a successful bidirectional query, or can be set manually.

The Driver Work Space (**DWS**) value shows the amount of memory that is available for keeping track of fonts that are downloaded from the driver. The driver deletes downloaded fonts if it has exceeded the available memory value. The (**DWS**) value is a dynamic value that varies depending on the specific configuration of the product. An accurate (**DWS**) value optimizes driver performance.

The PCL 6 driver automatically configures the (**DWS**) value in Windows 98, Windows Me, and Windows NT 4.0 environments that support bidirectional communication. Use the (**DWS**) option to specify the amount of work-space memory that is available to the MFP. To manually set the (**DWS**) value, print a Configuration page and find the DWS value in the Memory section of the page. Then, click the **More** button on the **Configuration** tab, and type the DWS value in the (**DWS**) field of the **More Configuration Options** dialog box.

Automatic configuration

If you have modified the configuration of the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp since installation, click the **Update Now** button to automatically reflect the new configuration in the driver. For more information about the print driver's automatic configuration feature, see the [Driver Configuration](#) section of this guide.

If the **Update Now** button is not available, select the appropriate configuration options on the **Configure** tab.

MFP image

The bitmap image in the lower-right portion of the **Configure** tab represents the current physical configuration of the MFP according to the driver configuration data. It should have the same appearance as the image in the same location on the **Paper** tab.

Note

The MFP image shown on the **Configure** tab might differ from your HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp, depending on the installed accessory devices.

HP traditional PS driver features

When you install the print-system software in Windows 98 or Windows NT 4.0, the HP traditional PCL 6 driver is installed by default. The HP traditional PS driver can be installed by performing a Custom Installation.

Note

The information and illustrations in this section reflect the HP traditional PS driver when the computer is running Windows NT 4.0. The HP traditional PS driver appears significantly different for computers that are running Windows 98 and Windows Me.

PS 3 emulation support for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp

A set of 92 PS 3 emulation soft fonts is included with the printing-system software. If you want to permanently install the fonts in the MFP, PS fonts are also available from HP in an optional font DIMM. The PS emulation maintains full compatibility with Adobe PS when PS fonts are purchased from Adobe.

Users of Adobe-licensed programs might also have the right to use the Adobe PS print drivers from Adobe with the HP LaserJet PostScript 3 emulation PPD, available on the HP LaserJet 9055mfp software CD-ROM and the HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM, or from the HP Web site. When using the Adobe PS print driver, users must comply with all Adobe licensing agreements, as stated on the Adobe Web site at: <http://www.adobe.com/support/downloads/license.html>.

See the [Font support](#) section of this guide for a list of the additional fonts.

Access to drivers

To gain access to print driver settings from within most software programs, click **File**, click **Print**, and then click **Properties**. These driver settings apply only while the software program is open.

You can also control the print drivers directly from the Printers folder. In Windows 98, Windows Me, and Windows NT 4.0, click **Start**, click **Settings**, click **Printers**, right-click the MFP name, and then click **Document Defaults** to gain access to the same set of driver tabs that the software program controls. These driver settings change the default settings used across all software programs.

If you click **Properties** after right-clicking the MFP name, you gain access to a different set of tabs that control the driver behavior and driver connections.

What's this Help

In Windows 98, Windows Me, and Windows NT 4.0, What's this? Help is supported. You can gain access to What's this? Help messages in any of the following ways:

- Right-click a control and click **What's this?**, and a pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the ? button at the upper-right corner of the frame, next to the X, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. Use this special cursor to select a control, and the pop-up Help window for that feature appears.
- Press the **F1** key, and the Help window for the currently selected control appears.

Page Setup tab features

The **Page Setup** tab controls media and finishing options for the HP traditional PS driver. The following illustration shows the **Page Setup** tab.

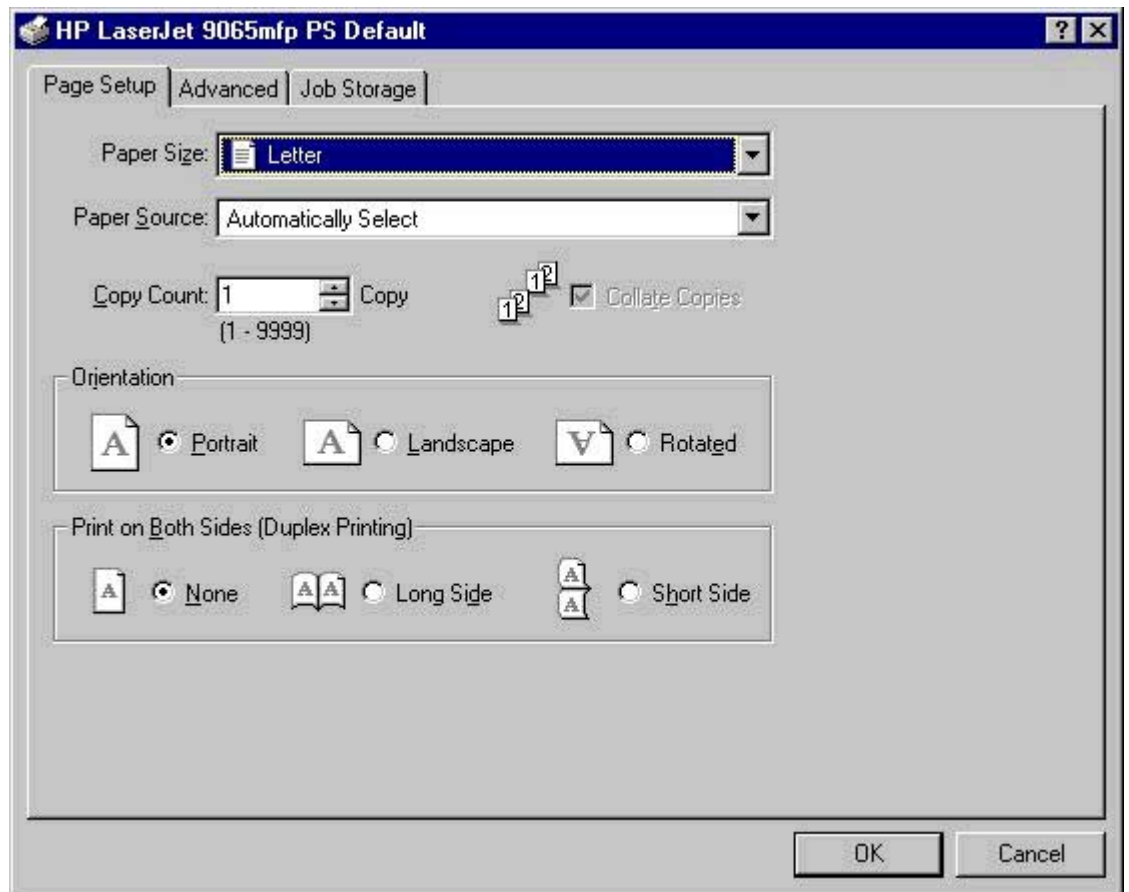


Figure 3-28. Page Setup tab

- **Paper Size** drop-down menu. Click this to specify the paper size (form). The list of available forms matches those supported by the product.
- **Paper Source** drop-down menu. Use these settings to select a media tray. The default setting is **Automatically Select**.
- **Copy Count** spin box . Use this box to specify the number of copies.
- **Collate Copies** check box. This setting specifies the number of copies to print and whether or not the copies will be collated. When collated, pages print consecutively for each copy of the document. When not collated, copies of each page print together.
- **Orientation** group box. The settings in this group box specify how the document is positioned on the page.
- **Print on Both Sides (Duplex Printing)** group box. Use the settings in this group box to control duplex printing. Click the **None** to print on one side of the paper only. Click **Short Side** or **Long Side** to print on both sides of the paper. Short-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a note pad. Long-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

Advanced tab features

The **Advanced** tab controls the settings for output, graphics, and MFP features. The following illustration shows the **Advanced** tab.

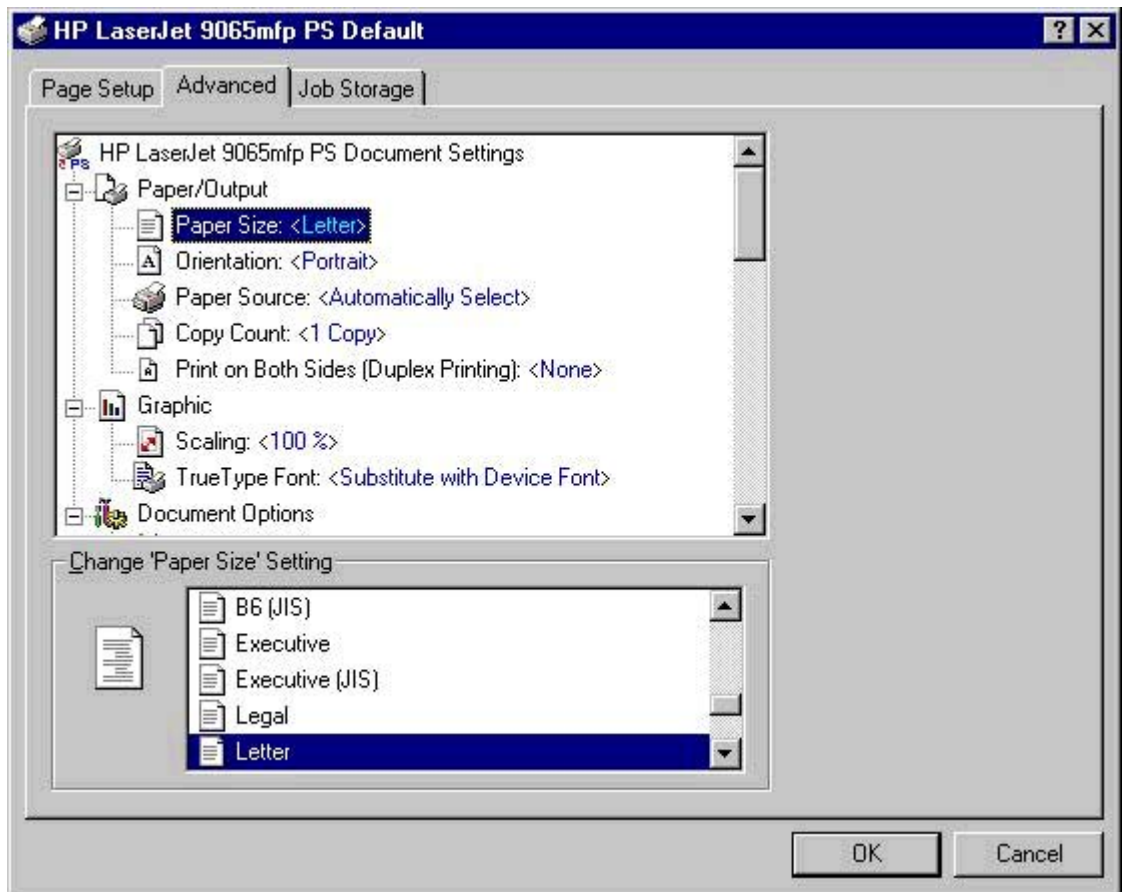


Figure 3-29.

Advanced tab

The **Advanced** tab contains the following controls.

- **Paper/Output Size** drop-down menu (advanced control over the options available on the **Page Setup** tab)
- **Graphic** drop-down menu (including resolution, scaling, and TrueType font controls)
- **Document Options** drop-down menu (including printer features and PS options)

Paper/Output settings

The **Paper/Output** settings are as follows:

- Paper Size
- Orientation
- Paper Source
- Copy Count
- Print on Both Sides

These settings are also available on the **Page Setup** tab. For more information, see [Page Setup tab features](#).

Graphic settings

The **Graphic** settings are as follows:

- **Scaling.** Use this setting to reduce or enlarge documents by a specified percentage. When you enlarge a document, only the portion of the document that fits on the page will print. The default setting is **100%**.
- **TrueType Font.** The default setting is **Substitute with Device Font**. The other available setting is **Download as Softfont**. Use this setting when your document has overlapping text and graphics. If you use a device font or a downloaded TrueType font when text and graphics overlap, you might get errors in the print job output.

Document Options settings

The **Document Options** settings are as follows:

- Page Layout Option
- PostScript Options
- Printer features

Page Layout Option

The **Page Layout Option** specifies whether the booklet feature is enabled. The settings are as follows:

- **Normal (One-up).** This is the default setting. The print job has one page on the front and back side of each page.
- **Two-up (1x2).** The print job prints two pages on the front and back side of each page.
- **Four-up (2x2).** The print job prints four pages on the front and back side of each page.
- **Six-up (2x3).** The print job prints six pages on the front and back side of each page.
- **Nine-up (3x3).** The print job prints nine pages on the front and back side of each page.
- **Sixteen-up (4x4).** The print job prints 16 pages on the front and back side of each page.

PostScript Options

The settings for **PostScript Options** are as follows:

- **Optimize for Speed.** This is the default setting.
- **Optimize for Portability.** Use this setting to create a file that conforms to the Adobe Document Structuring Conventions (ADSC). Each page of the document will be a self-contained object. This is useful, for instance, if you want to create a PostScript file and print it on a different printer.
- **Encapsulated PostScript (EPS).** Use this setting to include the file as an image in another document that is to be printed from a different program.
- **Archive Format.** Use this setting to create a PostScript file that you can use later.

Printer Features

Printer Features options are as follows:

- **Front Cover from Feeder.** The following settings are available:
 - **None.** This is the default setting.
 - **Cover Sheet Feeder - Upper Tray**
 - **Cover Sheet Feeder - Lower Tray**
- **Back Cover from Feeder.**
 - **None.** This is the default setting.
 - **Cover Sheet Feeder - Upper Tray**
 - **Cover Sheet Feeder - Lower Tray**
- **Output Bin.** The following settings are available:
 - **Automatically Select.** This is the default setting.
 - **Main Bin (Face Down)**
 - **Main Bin (Face Up - Straightest Path)**
 - **Upper Bin (Face Down)**
 - **Upper Bin (Face Up)**
- **Stapling Options.** The following settings are available:
 - **None.** This is the default setting.
 - **One Staple Left Portrait**
 - **One Staple Left Landscape**
 - **One Staple Right Portrait**
 - **One Staple Right Landscape**
 - **Two Staples Left Portrait**
 - **Two Staples Left Landscape**
 - **Two Staples Right Portrait**
 - **Two Staples Right Landscape**
 - **Two Staples Top Portrait**
 - **Two Staples Top Landscape**
- **Fold / Stitch.** The following settings are available:
 - **None.** This is the default setting.
 - **Tri Fold Inward**
 - **Tri Fold Outward**
 - **Half Fold Inward**
 - **Half Fold Outward**
 - **Fold and Stitch**

- **Punch.**
 - **None**
 - **Punch Left Portrait**
 - **Punch Left Landscape**
 - **Punch Right Portrait**
 - **Punch Right Landscape**
 - **Punch Top Portrait**
 - **Punch Top Landscape**
- **Rotate Page 180 Degrees.** The following settings are available:
 - **Off.** This is the default setting.
 - **On.**
- **Smoothing.** The following settings are available:
 - **Off.** This is the default setting.
 - **On.**
- **Economode.** The following settings are available:
 - **False.** This is the default setting.
 - **True.**
- **Fit to Page.** The following settings are available:
 - **Prompt User**
 - **Nearest Size and Scale**
 - **Nearest Size and Crop**
 - **Letter**
 - **A4**
- **Manually Print on 2nd Side.** The following settings are available:
 - **Off.** This is the default setting.
 - **On.**

- **Watermark.** The following settings are available:
 - **None.** This is the default setting.
 - **Draft**
 - **Company Confidential**
 - **Company Proprietary**
 - **Company Private**
 - **Confidential**
 - **Copy**
 - **Copyright**
 - **File Copy**
 - **Final**
 - **For Internal Use Only**
 - **Preliminary**
 - **Proof**
 - **Review Copy**
 - **Sample**
 - **Top Secret**
 - **Urgent**
 - **Custom**
- **Watermark (Pages per Sheet).** The following settings are available:
 - **1.** This is the default settings.
 - **>=2**
- **Watermark Font.** The following settings are available:
 - **Courier Bold**
 - **Times Bold**
 - **Helvetica Bold.** This is the default setting.
- **Watermark Size.** Settings for the watermark size range from 24 points to 90 points.
- **Watermark Angle.** Settings for the watermark angle range from 90 degrees to 15 degrees in 15-degree intervals.
- **Watermark Style.** The following settings are available:
 - **Narrow Outline**
 - **Medium Outline.** This is the default setting.
 - **Wide Outline**
 - **Wide Halo Outline**
- **Print Watermark.** The following settings are available:
 - **All Pages.** This is the default setting.
 - **First Page Only.** This is the default setting.

Job Storage features

Job Storage is always available to the the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp and is enabled by default.

Note

To disable Job Storage, click **Settings**, click **Printers**, right-click the product icon, click **Properties**, click the **Device Settings** tab, and then select **Disabled** as the **Job Storage:** setting under **Installable Options**. When Job Storage is disabled, the **Job Storage** tab is not visible in the print driver.

Job Storage tab

The following illustration shows the **Job Storage** tab.

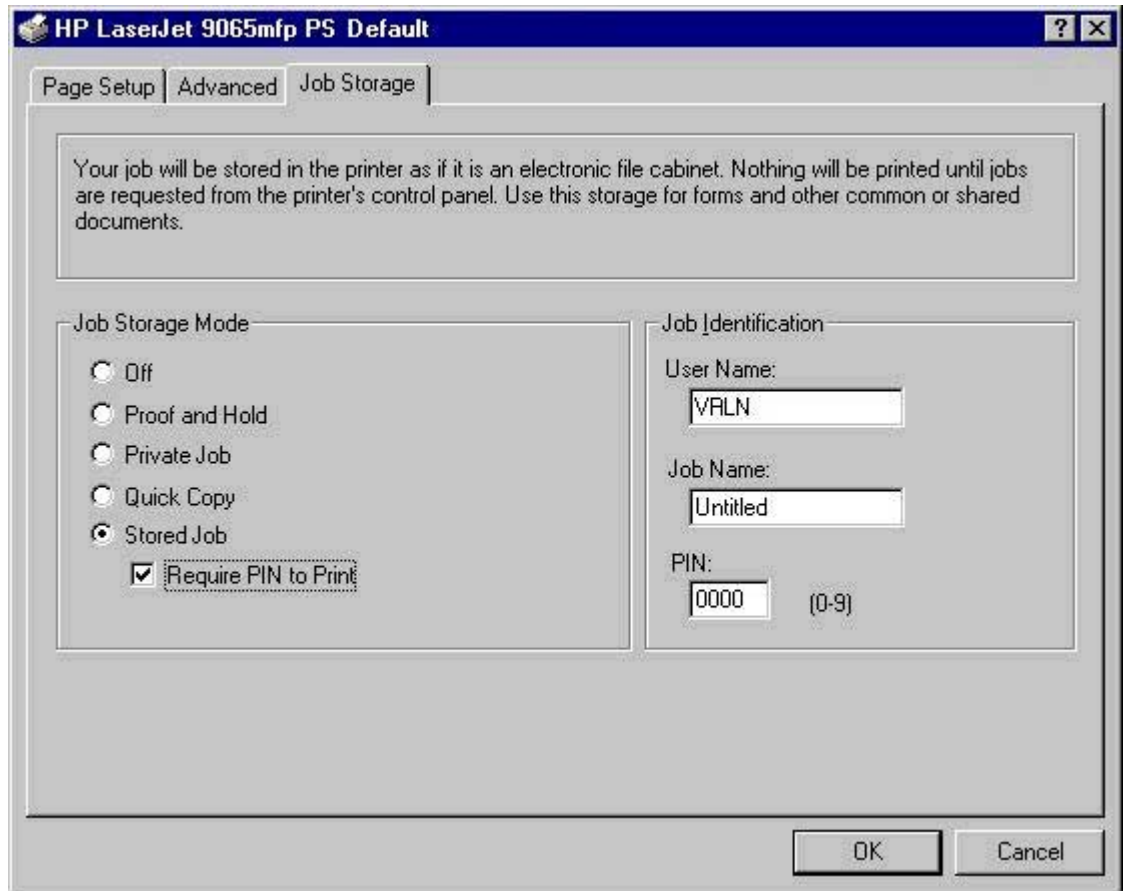


Figure 3-30.

Job Storage tab

The **Job Storage** tab contains the following controls:

- Status group box (unlabeled)
- **Job Storage Mode** group box
- **Job Identification** group box

Status group box (unlabeled)

The unlabeled group box on the **Job Storage** tab contains a status message about the destination of a print job. The status information changes depending on the selections made on the **Job Storage** tab.

Job Storage Mode

Use the **Job Storage Mode** options on the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp to store documents at the MFP and then control their printing at the MFP control panel. This feature is intended to provide greater flexibility, convenience, security, and cost savings.

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp offer the following **Job Storage Mode** options:

- **Off**
- **Proof and Hold**
- **Private Job**
- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**
 - **Require PIN to Print** (available when **Stored Job** is selected)

These features and the settings that control them are described below.

Off

When selected, this option turns the **Job Storage** feature off (it is disabled), which means that the print job will not be stored in the MFP.

Proof and Hold

When selected, this option stores the print job and prints only the first copy of the job, allowing you to check the first copy. If the document prints correctly, you can print the remaining copies of the print job at the MFP control panel. You can set the number of proof-and-hold print jobs that can be stored in the MFP at the MFP control panel.

After it is released for printing, the proof-and-hold job is immediately deleted from the MFP. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second proof-and-hold job to the MFP with the same user name and job name as an existing proof-and-hold job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the job will overwrite the existing job. Proof-and-hold jobs are deleted if you turn off the MFP.

Note

The MFP configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the MFP control panel in the **CONFIGURATION** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, a newer document will overwrite the oldest. Also, a document that has the same user and job name as one that is already stored on the hard disk will overwrite the existing document.

Private Job

When you select **Private Job**, the print job is sent to the MFP, but is not printed until you request the job at the MFP control panel. Selecting **Private Job** activates the **PIN** group box. The print job can be printed only after you type the correct PIN at the MFP control panel. After the job is printed, the job is deleted from the MFP. This feature is useful when you are printing sensitive or confidential documents that you do not want to leave in an output bin after printing.

After it is released for printing, the private job is immediately deleted from the MFP. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second private job to the MFP with the same user name and job name as an existing private job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the job will overwrite the existing job, regardless of the PIN. Private jobs are deleted if you disconnect the power to the MFP.

Using a PIN for Private Job

The **Private Job** option can be secured by a four-digit personal identification number (PIN). You must type in this number at the MFP control panel before the MFP prints the job.

The group box labeled **PIN** is usually inactive. It becomes active when you select the **Private Job** option.

The Private Job/PIN coupling has a PIN restriction of four ASCII numeric characters (0-9). If you type non-numeric characters, they are removed immediately. If you type more than four characters, the characters past the fourth are truncated. The field temporarily accepts fewer than four digits in the string, but when the edit field loses focus, the zeroes pad the left end until there are exactly four digits. The default initialized value for the PIN is 0000 for **Private Job**.

Selecting **Private Job** activates . The Private Job/PIN coupling has a PIN restriction of four ASCII numeric characters (0-9). If you type non-numeric characters, they are removed immediately. If you type more than four characters, the characters past the fourth are truncated. The field temporarily accepts fewer than four digits in the string, but when the edit field loses focus, the zeroes pad the left end until there are exactly four digits. The default initialized value for the PIN is 0000 for **Private Job**.

Quick Copy

When you select **Quick Copy**, the entire print job prints and a copy of the print job is stored on the hard disk, after which you can print additional copies of the print job at the MFP control panel. The number of quick-copy print jobs that can be stored in the MFP is set by using the MFP control panel.

Note

The MFP configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the MFP control panel in the **Configuration** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, a newer document will overwrite the oldest. Also, a document that has the same user and job name as one that is already stored on the hard disk will overwrite the existing document. **Quick Copy** jobs are deleted if you turn off the MFP.

Stored Job

Use the **Stored Job** option to send a print job directly to the MFP hard disk without printing it. The print job is stored in the MFP as if it is an electronic file cabinet. After the print job is stored in the MFP hard disk, you can print the job at the MFP control panel.

The job remains stored in the MFP until it is deleted or overwritten by a document with the same user and job names. Stored jobs remain on the MFP hard disk when the MFP is turned off. Use this feature for forms and other common or shared documents.

A stored job can be managed in two ways: as either a private or a public job. Use a private stored job to send a print job directly to the MFP, which can then be printed only after you type in a PIN at the MFP control panel. (You can set the PIN in the **PIN** group box.) After the job is printed, the job remains in the MFP and can be printed again at the MFP control panel. Private mode is initiated by clicking the **Require PIN to Print** check box. In this mode, a PIN typed at the MFP control panel is required to release the job.

The box labeled **PIN** is usually inactive. The **Require PIN to Print** option becomes available when you select **Stored Job**. If you select the **Require PIN to Print** box, you must type a PIN to make the stored job private.

Note

A private stored job is not the same as a private job (see above). *Private* jobs are deleted from the MFP after they are printed. *Private stored* jobs are retained in the MFP after printing, but require that a PIN be typed each time they are printed.

Job Identification options

The **Job Identification** group box contains the following controls:

- **User Name** text box
- **Job Name** text box
- **PIN** text box

User Name

Use the **User Name** text box to help identify the job at the MFP control panel. The Windows user name is automatically displayed in the **User Name** text box. To enter a custom user name, type the custom user name in the text box. The **User Name** text box can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z and 0 through 9 because the name appears on the MFP control-panel display. If you try to type a lowercase character, it automatically shifts to uppercase. If you try to type a character with an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.

Job Name

Use the **Job Name** text box to specify a name to identify the job at the MFP control panel. This text box uses **Untitled** as the default job name associated with the stored print job. The file name of the print job is used if it is available to the print driver. Otherwise, the software program name or a time stamp is used for the job name. To enter a custom name, type the custom job name in the text box. The **Job Name** text box can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z and 0 through 9 because the name appears on the MFP control-panel display. If you try to type a lowercase character, it automatically shifts to uppercase. If you try to type a character with an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.

PIN

The box labeled **PIN** is usually inactive. The **Require PIN to Print** option is activated if you select either of the following options:

- Select **Private Job**. If selected, you must type in the PIN number at the MFP control panel to make the job print. For more information, see [Using a PIN for Private Job](#).
- Select **Stored Job**, and then select the **Require PIN to Print** check box. If the **Require PIN to Print** check box is selected, you must enter a PIN to make the stored job private. For more information, see [Stored Job](#).

Using Job Storage options when printing

Note

The print driver that is installed on your computer must be configured to use the **Job Storage** features. **Job Storage** is enabled by default. To enable **Job Storage** (if it has been disabled), click **Start**, click **Settings**, click **Printers**, and then right-click the product icon. Click **Properties**, click the **Device Settings** tab, and then click the **Job Storage** option. Use the drop-down menu to select **Enabled**, and then click **OK**.

- 1 Click **Print** from the software program. The **Print** dialog box appears.
- 2 Click **Properties**. The **Properties** dialog box appears.
- 3 Click the **Job Storage** tab.
- 4 Select one of the Job Storage options described above by clicking the appropriate option button.

Releasing a Job Storage print job

After you send a print job using the **Job Storage** feature, you can release the job to print by using the MFP control panel.

- 1 Press the **Mode** selection button until the light comes on next to **Print**. (The Mode selection key has two arrows pointing in a circular direction.)
- 2 Touch **MENUS**.
- 3 Touch **+RETRIEVE JOB**.
- 4 Touch your user name, if any.
- 5 Touch the job name, if any.
- 6 Touch **#PRINT**.
- 7 Use the numeric pad to key in your PIN, if any.
- 8 Touch **OK**.
- 9 Use the numeric pad to change the number of copies you want. The default is **1** copy.
- 10 Touch **OK**.

Deleting a Job Storage print job

Sometimes it is necessary to delete a print job from the MFP hard disk. You can do this by using the MFP control panel.

- 1 Press the **Mode** selection button until the light comes on next to **Print**.
- 2 Touch **MENUS**.
- 3 Touch **+RETRIEVE JOB**.
- 4 Touch your user name, if any.
- 5 Touch the job name, if any.
- 6 Touch **#DELETE**.
- 7 Use the numeric pad to key in your PIN, if any.
- 8 Touch **OK**.

The stored print job is deleted and the MFP returns to the **READY** state.

Device Settings tab

Note

The **Device Settings** tab is in the **Properties** for the print driver in Windows NT 4.0. In Windows 98 and Windows Me, a tab with similar options and settings is called the **Device Options** tab. To gain access to the print driver **Properties**, click **Start** on the Window task bar, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**. Right-click the MFP name, and then click **Properties**.

The **Device Settings** tab communicates information about the hardware configuration to the print driver. The **Device Settings** tab appears when you open the driver from the **Printers** folder by selecting and right-clicking the MFP, and then clicking **Properties** for the driver. When the driver is opened from within a software program, the **Configure** tab is not visible.

When opened from the **Printers** folder, the **Device Settings** tab appears, as shown in the following illustration.

Note

The illustration below shows the **Device Settings** tabs in Windows NT 4.0. The appearance of the equivalent tab in Windows 98 follows this illustration.

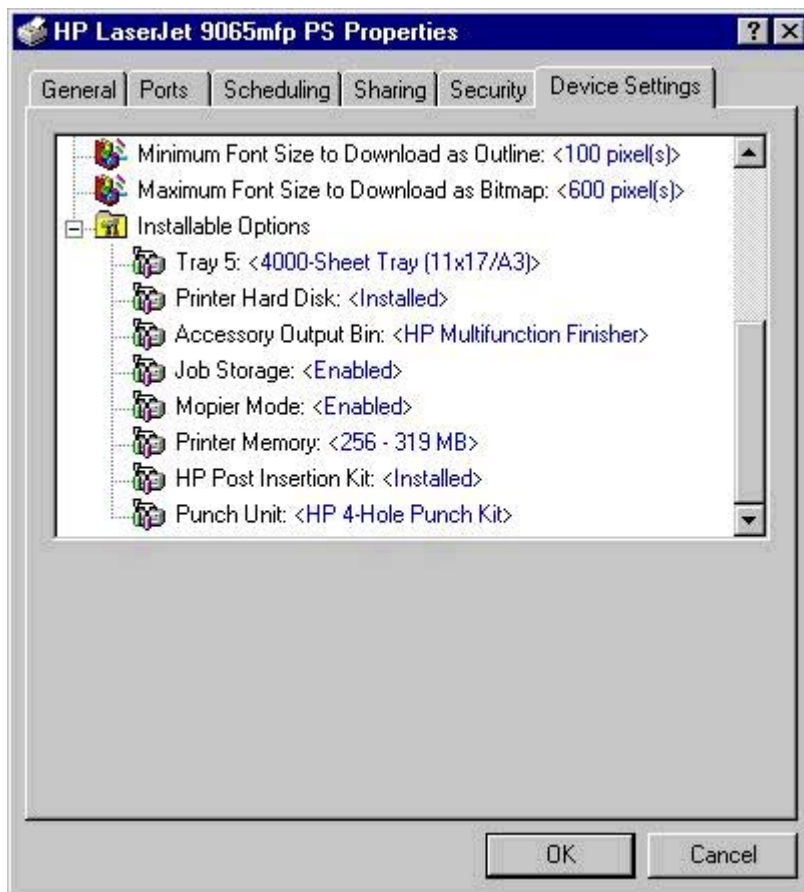


Figure 3-31. Device Settings tab in Windows NT 4.0

The following illustration shows the **Device Options** tab in Windows 98.

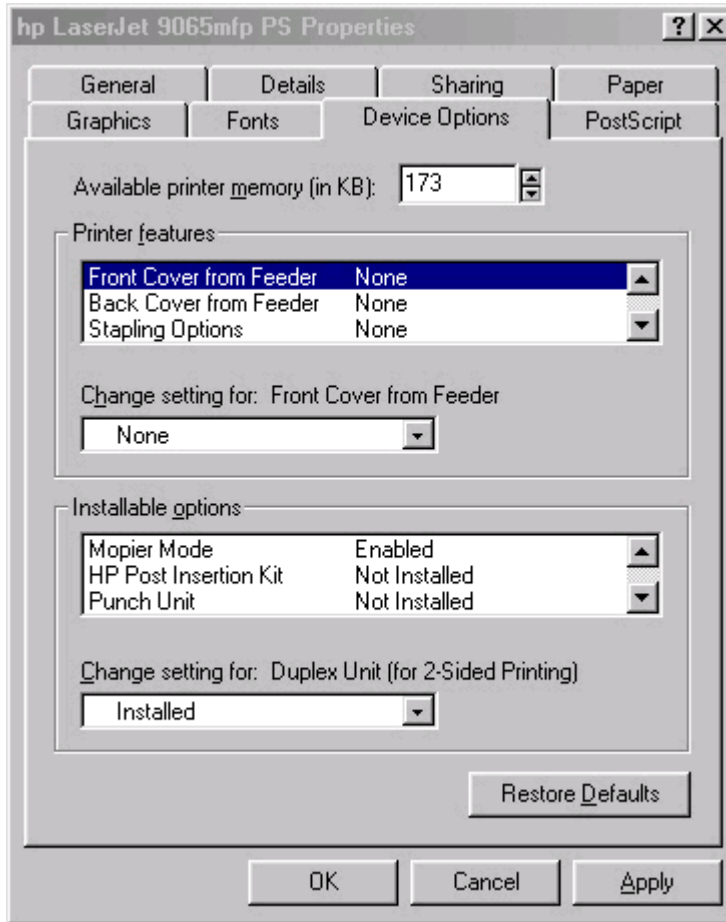


Figure 3-32. Device Options tab in Windows 98

Note

Changes made to the **Device Settings** tab are not reflected in the **Document Defaults** settings until the modified device settings have been applied. For example, the duplexing unit will not appear until you modify the **Configure** tab, apply the settings, and then re-open **Document Defaults**.

The **Device Settings** tab contains the following options:

- **Form to Tray Assignment**
- **Font Substitution Table**
- **PostScript Configure**
- **Installable Options**

Form to Tray Assignment

Many MFPs support more than one source of media, such as upper and lower trays. You can assign a form (which defines the media size and margins) to each of your MFP media sources. When a form is matched to a source, you can select the form when you print from your software programs. The MFP prints from the tray to which that form is assigned.

Network administrators can use the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting to specify, in the driver, the media size that is loaded into each available input tray. The use of forms constrains the choices that are available in the media-size list on the **Advanced** tab in the **Document Defaults** driver tabs. This constraint prevents (or reduces the likelihood of) tying up the MFP with paper-mount messages that occur when users request sizes or types that are not available.

The trays listed in the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting include standard trays and optional accessory trays. Generally, items that are installed separately have a separate **Installable Options** setting. For example, for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp, tray 5 is a high-capacity (4,000-sheet) tray that is listed in both the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting and the **Installable Options** setting.

The input trays listed here are also listed as media sources on the **Page Setup** tab.

Font Substitution Table

Clicking this option opens the font substitution table and makes available the options for changing the TrueType-to-PostScript font mapping.

PostScript Device Settings

The following controls are available and appear in the PS driver.

Available PostScript Memory

This control specifies the amount of available PS memory and provides a spin box for changing this value. The available PS memory is a subset of the MFP total physical memory. It is usually best to set the PS memory to match what is shown on the Configuration page. (To print a Configuration page from the MFP control panel, press the **Mode** selection key twice. Next, touch **INFORMATION**, and then touch **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.) The default PS memory setting for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp is 249 KB.

Output Protocol

This control specifies the protocol that the MFP uses for print jobs. The following options are available:

- **ASCII** (default)
- **TBCP**
- **Binary**

When you click **ASCII**, data is sent in ASCII format (7-bit), which might take longer to print but can be sent through any I/O channel, such as a serial, parallel, or network port.

When you click **TBCP** (Tagged Binary Communications Protocol), all data except special control characters is sent in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over parallel or serial communications ports and are faster than sending data in ASCII format.

When you click **Binary**, all data except special control characters is sent in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over parallel or serial communications ports and are faster than sending data in ASCII format.

Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job

This control specifies whether the MFP will be reset at the beginning of every PS document. The default setting is **No**. Ctrl-D resets the MFP to its default setting to ensure that previous print jobs do not affect the current print job. Ctrl-D might cause a print job to fail if the MFP is connected through a network. If your document fails to print when sent to a MFP connected through parallel or serial ports, change **No** to **Yes**.

Send Ctrl-D After Each Job

This control specifies whether the MFP will be reset at the end of every PS document. The default setting is **Yes**. Ctrl-D resets the MFP to its default setting to ensure that future print jobs are not affected by the current print job. Ctrl-D might cause a print job to fail if the MFP is connected through a network. If your document fails to print when sent to a network MFP, change **Yes** to **No**.

Job Timeout

This control specifies how long the document can take to get from the computer to the MFP before the MFP stops trying to print the document. If you specify **0 seconds**, the MFP continues trying to print indefinitely. The default setting is **0 seconds**. You can use the spin box to change this value to a maximum of **32,767 seconds**.

Wait Timeout

This control specifies how long the MFP waits to get more PS information from the computer. After the specified time passes, the MFP stops trying to print the document and prints an error message. If you are trying to print a very complicated document, you might want to increase this value. If you specify **0 seconds**, the MFP waits indefinitely. The default setting is **300 seconds**. You can use the spin box to change this value to a maximum of **32,767 seconds**.

Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline

This control specifies the minimum font size (in pixels) for which the PS driver downloads TrueType fonts as outline (Type 1) fonts. A font smaller than the minimum setting is downloaded as a bitmap (Type 3) font. Use this option to fine-tune the **Automatic** setting for the **TrueType Font Download** option on the **Advanced** tab in **Document Defaults**. The default setting is **100** pixels. You can use the spin box to change this value to a maximum of **32,767** pixels.

Maximum Font Size to Download as Outline

This control specifies the maximum font size (in pixels) for which the PS driver will download TrueType fonts as bitmap (Type 3) fonts. A font larger than the maximum setting will be downloaded as an outline (Type 1) font. Use this option to fine-tune the **Automatic** setting or override the **Send TrueType as Bitmap** setting for the **TrueType Font Download** option on the **Advanced** tab in **Document Defaults**. The default setting is **600** pixels. You can use the spin box to change this value to a maximum of **32,767** pixels.

Installable Options

This section provides information to configure the printing options that you can install for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp. The following controls are available:

- **Automatic Configuration**
- **Tray 5**
- **Printer Hard Disk**

- **Accessory Output Bin**
- **Job Storage**
- **Mopier Mode**
- **Printer Memory**
- **HP Post Insertion Kit**
- **Punch Unit**

Tray 5

This control specifies whether you have a high-capacity, 4,000-sheet **Tray 5** installed on your MFP. The default setting is **Not Installed**. In order to use **Tray 5**, you must change this setting to **Installed**.

Printer Hard Disk

When this option is enabled, the **Stored Job** option is available in the print driver. The **Stored Job** option allows you to store print jobs, and then print them later from the MFP control panel. The MFP comes with a printer hard disk installed.

Accessory Output Bin

Use this setting to indicate that an accessory output bin is installed on your MFP. The following settings are available:

- **Not Installed** (default)
- **HP 3000-Sheet Stapler/Stacker**
- **HP Multifunction Finisher**

When an accessory output bin is installed, you can tell the MFP to send printed pages to a particular output bin. If you have the HP 3000-Sheet Stapler/Stacker or the HP Multifunction Finisher, you can also select stapling and folding options.

To select a default output bin, right-click the MFP icon in the **Printers** folder, select **Document Defaults**, click the **Advanced** tab. In the **Printer Features** list, select the output bin that you want to use. To select an output bin for each print job, click **Print** from the **File** menu of your software program, click **Properties**, click the **Advanced** tab, and then select the bin that you want to use.

Job Storage

Select this option to store print jobs on the MFP hard disk. The MFP comes with a hard disk installed, but it must be enabled to use this feature.

HP Post Insertion Kit

Select this option if the HP Post Insertion Kit is installed. This enables you to add blank or preprinted covers to your documents after they finish printing.

Punch Unit

Select this option if a punch unit is installed. Click the appropriate option in the **Change 'Punch Unit' Setting** dialog box to select the type of punch kit that is installed.

Printer Memory

This option matches the setting to the amount of memory that is installed in the MFP. The driver generates ranges of memory that can be selected, up to the maximum that the MFP can accept. The driver can use this information to manage how the driver uses the MFP memory.

Mopier Mode

The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job. Multiple-original printing (mopying) increases performance and reduces network traffic by transmitting the job to the MFP once, and then storing it in the MFP hard disk. The remainder of the copies are printed by the MFP at the fastest speed. All documents that are printed in mopier mode can be created, controlled, managed, and finished from the computer, which eliminates the extra step of using a photocopier.

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp supports the transmit-once mopying feature because the MFP has an installed hard disk. The default **Mopier Mode**: setting on the **Device Settings** tab (Windows NT 4.0) or the **Device Options** tab (Windows 9.x) is **Enabled**.

Mopier mode and collation

Mopying and collating print jobs are independent but closely related functions. Mopying, the ability to send original print jobs to the MFP, is performed by the print driver. Collating can be controlled by either the print driver or the document software application. The mopying mode is selected by default in the driver, and can be disabled by changing the **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Device Settings** tab to **Disabled**.

You can control collation through the print driver by selecting or clearing the **Collate Copies** check box on the **Page Setup** tab. You can clear the check box, which is available only when the **Copy Count** check box is set to more than 1 copy, to allow the software application to control collation.

To receive uncollated multiple copies of a print job, you must clear the **Collate Copies** check box *and* make sure that the software application collation feature is not selected.

The following table shows the relation between mopier mode settings and collation settings in the application and the driver. The first three columns show the settings; the last column, "Expected result", shows how a 3-page print job would appear.

Table 3-7. Driver Mopier mode and collation settings

Mopier mode	Application collation	Driver collation	Expected result
Disabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated
Disabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated
Enabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Enabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated
Enabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated
Enabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated

4

HP PCL 6 and PS unidrivers for Windows

Introduction

This chapter describes the features of the the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp unidrivers. The information in this STR applies only if the HP Print Kit is installed. The chapter describes the PCL 6 and PS print drivers for Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003.

You can control print jobs from several places: the MFP control panel, the software program, and the driver UI. Generally, for features that are common to two or more of these places (for instance, you can select the media input tray from any of them), settings that are established in the software program take precedence over print driver settings. Print driver settings override MFP control-panel settings.

HP PCL 6 and PS unidriver features

Note

For a comparison of features between the HP unidrivers and HP traditional print drivers in various operating systems, see the [Driver-feature comparison in various operating systems](#) section of this guide.

When you install the print-system software in Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003, the HP PCL 6 unidrivers is installed by default. The HP PS unidriver can be installed by performing a Custom Installation.

The following sections describes the options that are available on each tab of the HP PCL 6 and PS unidriver interface.

Access to drivers

To gain access to driver settings from within most software programs, click **File**, click **Print**, and then click **Properties**. The appearance and names of the driver tabs that appear can vary, depending on the operating system. These settings apply only while the software program is open.

You can also control the drivers directly from the Printers folder. These settings change the default settings used across all software programs.

- In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, click **Printers**, right-click the product name, and then click **Printing Preferences** to gain access to the same set of driver tabs that the software program controls.
- In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) to gain access to the same set of driver tabs that the software program controls.

If, after right-clicking the product name, you click **Properties**, you gain access to a different set of tabs that control the driver behavior and driver connections.

Help system

The HP PCL 6 and PS unidrivers include a full-featured Help system to provide assistance with printing and configuration options.

What's this? Help

Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 support "What's this?" Help. You can gain access to "What's this?" Help messages in any of the following ways:

- Click the **Help** button in the lower-right corner of the **Paper/Quality**, **Finishing**, **Effects**, **Output**, and **Job Storage** tabs for a general Help message that describes the use of the driver tabs.
- Right-click a control and click **What's this?**, and a pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the ? button in the upper-right corner of the frame, next to the **X**, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. Use this special cursor to select a control, and the pop-up Help window for that feature appears.
- Press the **F1** key, and the Help window for the currently selected control appears.

Context-sensitive Help

Press the **Help** button on a driver tab or in a dialog box, and a context-sensitive Help message appears.

Incompatible Print Settings (constraint) messages

Incompatible print settings (constraint) messages are unsolicited messages that appear in response to specific actions that you take. These messages alert you to the selections that are illogical or impossible given the capabilities of the MFP or the current settings of other controls.

Note

Constraint messages are limited for HP unidrivers. The HP unidrivers allow some settings that are illogical or impossible for the MFP to perform. If you try to print with incompatible settings, the printed documents might have unexpected results because the print driver did not provide feedback that the settings were incompatible. If print jobs do not print as expected, check the MFP's documentation for the product capabilities.

In Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 operating environments, warning messages sometimes appear when some technically invalid print-driver configurations result in the appearance of warning messages. Duplexing, for instance, is not possible when the Transparency media type is selected. The following illustration shows an **Incompatible Print Settings** message that appears.

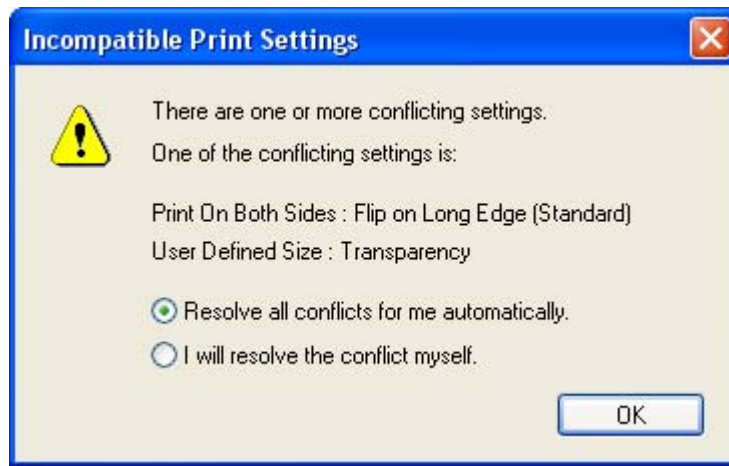


Figure 4-1. An Incompatible Print Settings message

Clicking the **Resolve all conflicts for me automatically** option button and then clicking **OK** accepts the change that was just made, and the driver then resets the conflicting control to a setting that is compatible with the new value. If you want to keep the conflicting setting, click the **I will resolve the conflict myself** option button and then click **OK**.

In Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 operating environments, some technically invalid print-driver configurations can be set without resulting in the appearance of warning messages. For instance, if you select any **Booklet Layout** option on the **Finishing** tab, and also select **Upper Bin** in the **Output Bin** options on the **Output** tab, your print job output cannot emerge as expected. Booklets are by definition folded, and can only be produced by using the Multifunction Finisher accessory, not the upper bin.

Advanced tab features

You can use the **Advanced** tab to change the layout of printed pages. Use this tab to configure special controls that are not commonly used, as well as features such as paper size and copies in the driver (although most current software programs support these features in the print dialog box or through the software program page settings). The following illustration shows the **Advanced** tab.

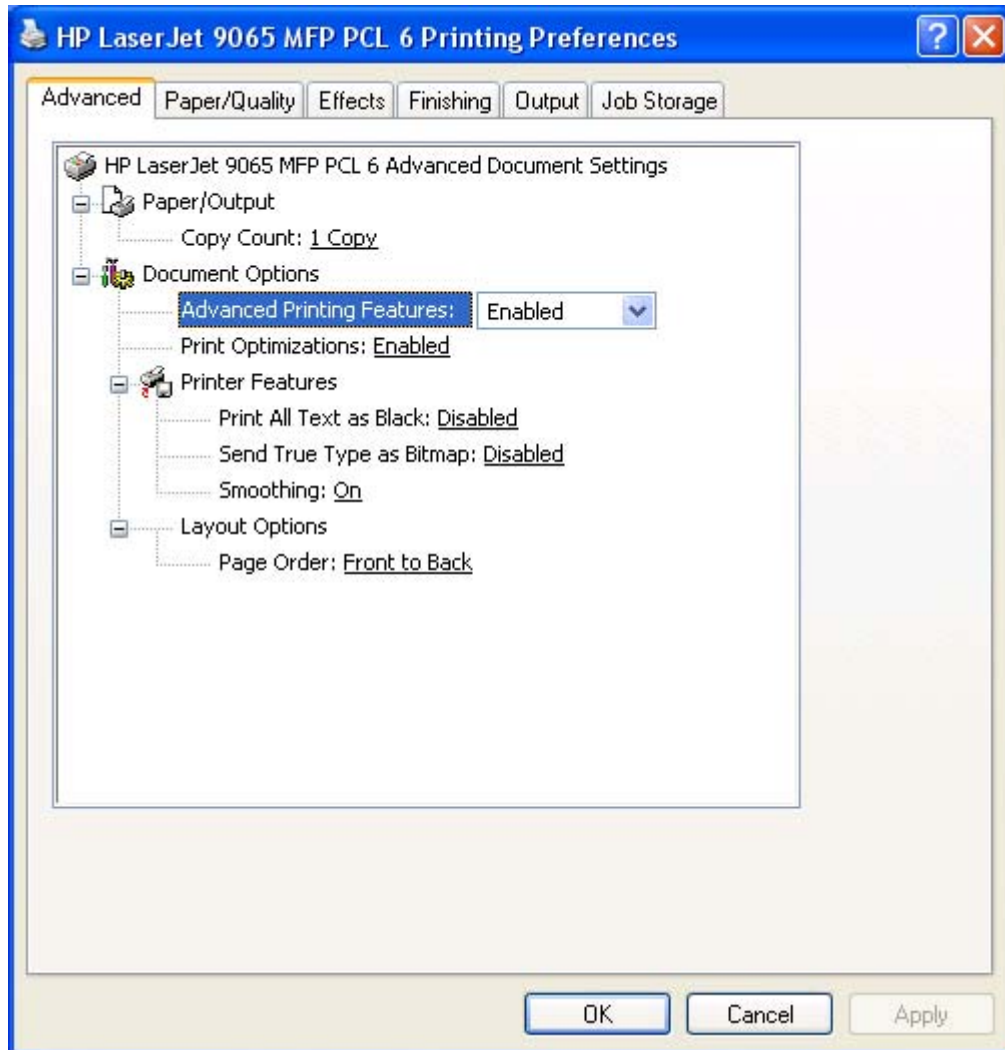


Figure 4-2. The default appearance of the Advanced tab

The **Advanced** tab contains the following controls.

- **Paper/Output** settings
- **Graphic** settings (HP PS unidriver only)
- **Document Options** settings (containing Advanced Printing Features, Print Optimizations, Printer Features, and Layout Options)

Paper/Output settings

The **Paper/Output** settings contain the following controls.

- **Copy Count** setting
- **Collated** check box (appears when you select **Copy Count**)

Copy Count

This driver setting is useful for software programs that do not provide a copy count. If a copy count is available in the software program, set the copy count in the software program. **Copy Count** specifies the number of copies to print.

Because you can set the number of copies that you want from some software programs, conflicts between the software program you are using and the driver can arise. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate, so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the program) will appear in the other (such as the driver). For some programs, this communication does not take place, and the copies values are treated independently. For these programs, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver will result in 100 copies (10 x 10) being printed. It is recommended that you set the number of copies in the program, wherever possible.

Collated

The **Collated** check box appears next to the **Copy Count** setting. The check box is selected, but is not available. It becomes available and can be changed when the **Copy Count** setting is greater than 1.

When collated, pages print consecutively for each copy of the document. When not collated, copies of each page print together.

This setting is not synchronized with the collate setting in the software program print dialog box. Settings in the software program override settings in the print driver. For instance, when using Microsoft Word, the **Collate** check box in the **Print** dialog box is selected by default. However, in the print driver, the **Collated** check box in the **Advanced** tab is not selected by default. The software program setting takes precedence over the driver setting, and the printed output is collated by default. To obtain uncollated printed output, clear the **Collate** setting in both the driver and the software program. Similarly, if the **Collated** check box is selected in the driver, but the **Collate** setting is not enabled in the software program, the printed output is uncollated.

Graphic settings

The **Graphic** settings, which is available only for the HP PS unidriver, contain the following option:

- **TrueType Font** settings.

TrueType Font

This control, which is available only for the HP PS unidriver, specifies the TrueType font options. The following options are available.

- **Substitute with Device Font**, which is the default setting, causes the MFP to use equivalent fonts for printing documents that contain TrueType fonts. This permits faster printing; however, you might lose special characters that the printer font does not support.
- **Download as Soffont** causes TrueType fonts to be downloaded and used for printing, instead of using printer fonts.

Document Options

The **Document Options** settings contain the following controls.

- **Advanced Printing Features**
- **Print Optimizations** (HP PCL 6 unidriver only)
- **PostScript Options** (HP PS unidriver only)
- **Printer Features**
- **Layout Options**

Advanced Printing Features

When the **Advanced Printing Features** setting is **Enabled**, metafile spooling is turned on and **Finishing** tab options such as **Page Order**, **Booklet Layout**, and **Pages per Sheet** are available, depending on your MFP. For normal printing, leave the **Advanced Printing Features** setting at the default (**Enabled**). If compatibility problems occur, you can disable the feature. However, some advanced printing features might still be available in the print driver, even though they have been disabled. If you select an advanced printing feature in the print driver that has been disabled on the **Advanced** tab, the feature is automatically re-enabled.

Print Optimizations (HP PCL 6 unidriver only)

The default setting for **Print Optimizations** is **Enabled**. When this feature is enabled and your document contains overlapping text and graphics, text placed on top of a graphic might not print correctly. If the printed output is not correct, you can disable this feature. When disabled, print optimization features, such as substituting device fonts for TrueType fonts and scanning for horizontal and vertical rules, are turned off.

PostScript Options (HP PS unidriver only)

The following **PostScript Options** are available:

- **PostScript Output Option**
- **TrueType Font Download Option**
- **PostScript Language Level**
- **Send PostScript Error Handler**

- **Mirrored Output**
- **Negative Output**

PostScript Output Option

The **PostScript Output Option** specifies the output format for PS files. Generally, you use the default setting, **Optimize for Speed**, to print your documents.

To create a file that conforms to the Adobe Document Structuring Conventions (ADSC), click **Optimize for Portability**. Each page of the document will be a self-contained object. This is useful if you want to create a PS file and print it on a different product. If you want to include the file as an image in another document that is printed from a different software program, click **Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)**. **Archive Format** creates a PS file you can use later.

TrueType Font Download Option

The **TrueType Font Download Option** specifies how TrueType fonts are downloaded. **Automatic**, which is the default setting, allows the PS driver to decide which format is best. If you want to download the TrueType font as a scalable outline font, click **Outline**. To download the TrueType font as a bitmap font, click **Bitmap**. If your MFP is a TrueType rasterizer MFP, click **Native TrueType** to download the TrueType font as an outline font.

PostScript Language Level

The **PostScript Language Level** option specifies which PS language level to use, from 1 to 3. The highest level supported by your MFP is 3, and this is the default setting. Some MFPs support multiple levels.

It is usually best to select the highest number available, because a higher language level provides more features. In some instances, you should use level 1. For example, if you are printing a file to disk, and that file will be printed by someone with a level-1 printer, you need to select level 1.

Send PostScript Error Handler

The **Send PostScript Error Handler** setting specifies whether a PS error handler message is sent. If you want the MFP to print an error page when an error occurs in the print job, click **Yes**. The default setting is **Yes**.

Mirrored Output

This control specifies mirrored output. Click **Yes** to print a mirror image of your document by reversing the horizontal coordinates. The default setting is **No**.

Negative Output

This control specifies negative output. Click **Yes** to print a negative of the image by reversing the values for black and white. The default setting is **No**.

Printer Features

The following **Printer Features** are available:

- **Print All Text as Black**
- **Send True Type as Bitmap** (PCL 6 only)
- **Smoothing**

Print All Text as Black

The **Print All Text as Black** feature is **Disabled** by default. When **Enabled** is selected, the driver prints all text as black regardless of the original document text color. Color text is printed as black, except for white text, which remains white. (White text is a reliable method of printing reverse typeface against a dark background.) This setting does not affect graphic images on the page, nor does it affect any text that is part of a graphic. **Print All Text as Black** remains enabled only for the current print job. When the current print job is completed, **Print All Text as Black** is automatically disabled.

Send TrueType as Bitmap (PCL 6 only)

Send True Type as Bitmap provides an alternative for those software programs that have trouble using TrueType fonts for special graphic purposes such as shading, rotation, or slanting. The setting is **Disabled** (off) by default. The TrueType fonts are first converted to bitmap soft fonts before downloading. The **Enabled** setting causes the driver to send TrueType fonts to the MFP as outlines, which retains the standard format (outline) of the fonts.

Smoothing

The **Smoothing** setting is **On** by default. When enabled, this option refines the print quality of characters by smoothing out jagged edges that can occur on the angles and curves of a printed image. Disable this option if graphics, particularly scanned images, are not printing clearly.

Layout Options

The following **Layout Options** are available:

- **Page Order**

Page Order

Page Order specifies the order in which the pages of your document are printed. **Front to Back** prints the document so that page 1 prints first. **Back to Front** prints the document so that page 1 prints last. The **Back to Front** setting is useful if you are printing to a face-up output bin to achieve output in the correct order.

Note

The page-ordering operation works on whole sheets of paper rather than on individual logical pages. Accordingly, if you set **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) to be greater than one, the ordering of logical pages on a physical sheet of paper does not change.

Paper/Quality tab features

Use the **Paper/Quality** tab to specify the size, type, and source of the media, as well the print quality (EconoMode). You can also use this tab to indicate different paper-selection choices for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, and back cover of the document. The following illustration shows the **Paper/Quality** tab.

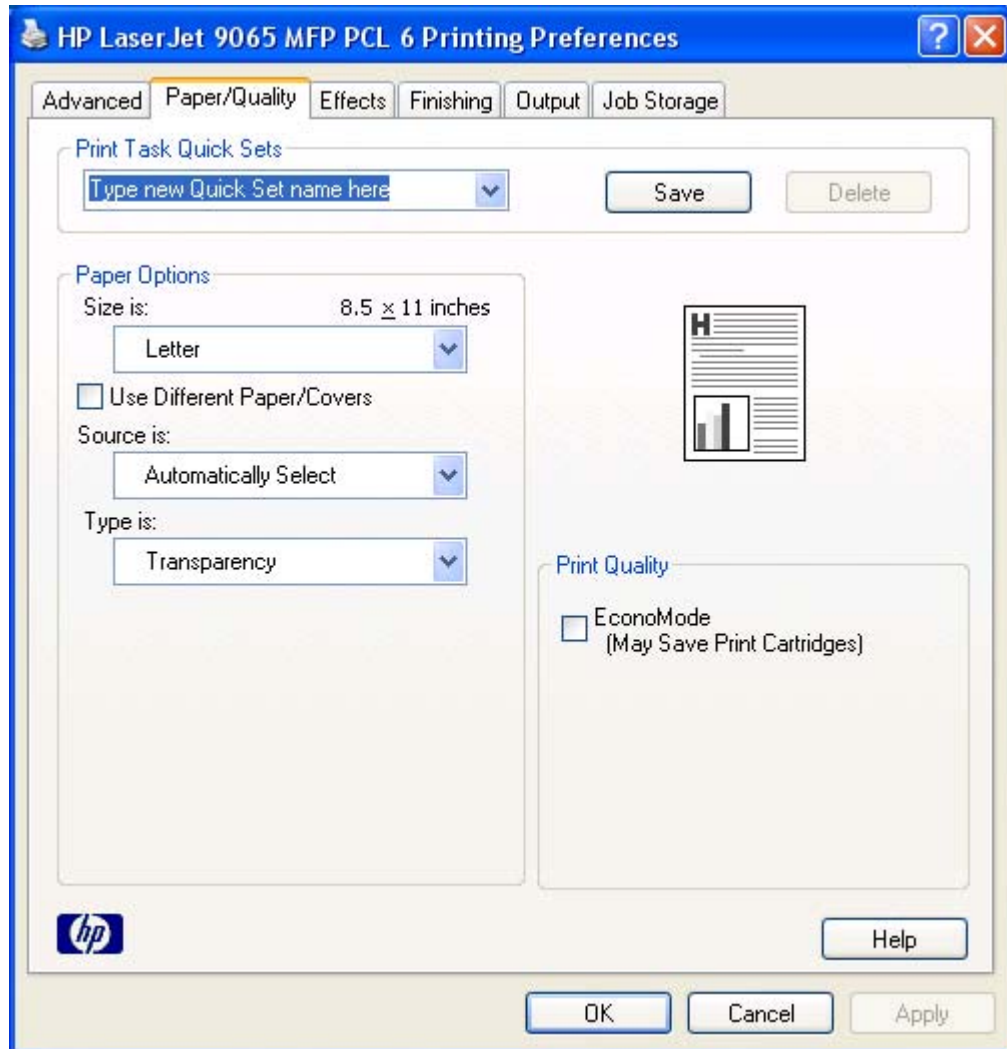


Figure 4-3. Paper/Quality tab

The **Paper/Quality** tab contains the following controls:

- **Print Task Quick Sets** group box
- **Paper Options** group box
- Document preview image
- **Print Quality** group box

Print Task Quick Sets

The first group box in the upper portion of the **Paper/Quality** tab is **Print Task Quick Sets**. Any change to the **Print Task Quick Sets** group box that is made on the **Paper/Quality** tab affects most of the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs (the **Paper/Quality**, **Effects**, **Finishing**, **Output** and **Job Storage** tabs) because they are all the same control.

Print Task Quick Sets is a setting that is used to store the current combination of driver settings that are found all on of the other print driver tabs (except the **Advanced** tab, where the setting is not available). **Print Task Quick Sets** are either preset by network-administrator settings or user-defined printing specifications (such as media size, pages per sheet, and so on). The **Print Task Quick Sets** control does *not* appear on the driver **Properties** tabs.

Note

Administrators can predefine Print Task Quick Sets for their users. These administrator Print Task Quick Sets are defined on the server and are available to users, but usually cannot be modified by users. Users can also define Print Task Quick Sets for their own use. User-defined Print Task Quick Sets are described later in this section.

The following selections are available in the **Print Task Quick Sets** drop-down menu:

- **Default Print Settings**
- **Booklet on 11x17**
- **Booklet on A3**
- **Booklet on A4**
- **Booklet on Letter**
- **User Guide Print Settings**

Note

The booklet settings are available only when certain output finishing options are selected on the **Device Settings** tab in the MFP **Properties** driver tabs.

Default Print Settings

When you select **Default Print Settings**, nearly all of the settings are restored to the combination that existed after the driver was installed (the original settings). However, if the attribute combinations that are associated with watermark definitions, custom paper sizes, or the **User Guide Print Settings** quick set have been changed or deleted, the original settings are not restored.

Type a new Quick Set name here appears in the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu automatically if no other driver settings have been changed since the driver was installed, or if all of the driver settings match the original settings. Otherwise, the setting in the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu is the same label that appeared when you last closed the printing **Properties** dialog box by clicking **OK**.

The following table shows the default settings for **Print Task Quick Sets**. See the [HP Driver Preconfiguration](#) section for information about preconfigurable driver settings.

Table 4-1. Print Task Quick Set default values for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp

Driver feature	Feature setting location	U.S. English Print Task Quick Sets default values	Other language default setting (if different)	Preconfigurable¹
Print on Both Sides	Finishing tab, Document Options group box	Off		Yes
Flip Pages Up	Finishing tab, Document Options group box	Unavailable		Yes
Booklet Layout	Finishing tab, Document Options group box	Unavailable		Yes
Pages per Sheet	Finishing tab, Document Options group box	1		Yes
Print Page Borders	Finishing tab, Document Options group box	Unavailable		Yes
Page Order	Finishing tab, Document Options group box	Unavailable		Yes
Orientation	Finishing tab, Orientation group box	Portrait		Yes
Rotate by 180 degrees	Finishing tab, Orientation group box	Off		Yes
Resizing Options	Effects tab, Resizing Options group box	Actual Size		Yes
Print document on	Effects tab, Resizing Options group box	Off - print on the size specified in the Paper/Quality tab		Yes
Size to print on	Effects tab, Resizing Options group box	Actual Size	Default value depends on regional media size	Yes
Scale to Fit	Effects tab, Resizing Options group box	Unavailable		Yes
% of Normal Size	Effects tab, Resizing Options group box	Off		Yes
Watermarks	Effects tab	(none)		Yes
Watermarks First Page Only	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box	Unavailable		Yes
Current watermarks	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box (Click Edit for Watermark Details)	(none)		Yes ²

Table 4-1. Print Task Quick Set default values for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp (continued)

Driver feature	Feature setting location	U.S. English Print Task Quick Sets default values	Other language default setting (if different)	Preconfigurable¹
Watermark Message	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box (Click Edit for Watermark Details)	(none)		Yes ²
Watermark Message Angle	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box (Click Edit for Watermark Details)	Diagonal		Yes ²
Watermark Message Angle (angle)	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box (Click Edit for Watermark Details)	Unavailable unless Angle option is selected		Yes
Watermark Font Name	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box, Font Attributes group box	Arial	Language dependent	Yes ²
Watermark Font Color	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box, Font Attributes group box	Gray		Yes
Watermark Font Shading	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box, Font Attributes group box	Very Light		Yes ²
Watermark Font Size	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box, Font Attributes group box	80		No
Watermark Font Style	Effects tab, Watermark Details dialog box, Font Attributes group box	Regular		Yes ²
Size is:	Paper/Quality tab, Paper Options group box	Letter	Default value depends on regional media size	Yes
Use Different Paper/Covers	Paper/Quality tab, Paper Options group box	Off - all of the pages use the same paper		No
Source is:	Paper/Quality tab, Paper Options group box	Automatically Select		Yes
Type is:	Paper/Quality tab, Paper Options group box	Unspecified		Yes

Table 4-1. Print Task Quick Set default values for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp (continued)

Driver feature	Feature setting location	U.S. English Print Task Quick Sets default values	Other language default setting (if different)	Preconfigurable¹
EconoMode (may save Print Cartridges)	Paper/Quality tab, Print Quality group box	Off		Yes
Unlabeled group box	Job Storage tab	Status message about destination of job		No
Job Storage Mode	Job Storage tab, Job Storage Mode group box	Off is selected		No
Proof and Hold	Job Storage tab, Job Storage Mode group box	Available, not selected		No
Private Job	Job Storage tab, Job Storage Mode group box	Available, not selected		No
Quick Copy	Job Storage tab, Job Storage Mode group box	Available, not selected		No
Stored Job	Job Storage tab, Job Storage Mode group box	Available, not selected		No
Require PIN to Print	Job Storage tab, Job Storage Mode group box	Unavailable		No
Windows User Name	Job Storage tab, User Name group box	Unavailable		No
Job Name	Job Storage tab, Job Name group box	Unavailable		No
PIN to Print	Job Storage tab, PIN group box	Unavailable	No	No
Display Job ID when printing	Job Storage tab, Job Notification Options group box	Unavailable	No	No
Staple	Output tab, Output Options group box	(none)		Yes
Punch	Output tab, Output Options group box	(none)		Yes
Fold/Stitch	Output tab, Output Options group box	(none)		Yes
Image Shift	Output tab, Output Options group box	Off		Yes

Table 4-1. Print Task Quick Set default values for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp (continued)

Driver feature	Feature setting location	U.S. English Print Task Quick Sets default values	Other language default setting (if different)	Preconfigurable ¹
Bin	Output tab, Output Bin Options group box	Automatically Select		Yes

¹ Preconfigurable by using one of the HP Preconfiguration tools. For more information, See [HP Driver Preconfiguration](#) , or go to: <http://www.hp.com/support/lj9055mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/lj9065mfp>.

² Not supported in Windows 98 and Windows Me.

Booklet on 11x17

The **Booklet on 11x17** option provides a **Print Task Quick Sets** for optimal printing of booklets on 11-by-17-inch media. When you select **Booklet on 11x17** and then click **OK** or **Apply**, the settings on the **Effects**, **Finishing**, and **Output** tabs change to accommodate printing the booklet.

Booklet on A3

The **Booklet on A3** option provides a **Print Task Quick Sets** for optimal printing of booklets on A3-size media. When you select **Booklet on A3** and then click **OK** or **Apply**, the settings on the **Effects**, **Finishing**, and **Output** tabs change to accommodate printing the booklet.

Booklet on A4

The **Booklet on A4** option provides a **Print Task Quick Sets** for optimal printing of booklets on A4-size media. When you select **Booklet on A4** and then click **OK** or **Apply**, the settings on the **Effects**, **Finishing**, and **Output** tabs change to accommodate printing the booklet.

Booklet on Letter

The **Booklet on Letter** option provides a **Print Task Quick Sets** for optimal printing of booklets on Letter-size (8.5 by 11 inches) media. When you select **Booklet on Letter** and then click **OK** or **Apply**, the settings on the **Effects**, **Finishing**, and **Output** tabs change to accommodate printing the booklet.

User Guide Print Settings

The **User Guide Print Settings** option provides a **Print Task Quick Sets** for optimal printing of the *Quick Reference Guide* for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.

Type new Quick Set name here

By default, the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu is set to **Type new Quick Set name here**. When you change any of the default settings on any of the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs and you want to save the configuration as a Print Task Quick Set, highlight the words **Type new Quick Set name here**, type the name you want for your new Print Task Quick Set, and then click **Save**. Print Task Quick Sets are saved in the system registry. To delete a Print Task Quick Set, select it from the drop-down menu and click **Delete**.

Note

Administrators can predefine Print Task Quick Sets for their users. These administrator Print Task Quick Sets are defined on the server and are available to users, but usually cannot be modified by users. Users can also define Print Task Quick Sets for their own use. User-defined Print Task Quick Sets are described later in this section.

You can store a maximum of 25 **Print Task Quick Sets** on a particular system. If you attempt to save too many, a message box appears that reads, "There are too many Print Task Quick Sets defined. Please delete some before adding new ones."

Paper Options group box

The settings specified in the **Paper Options** group box on the **Paper/Quality** tab apply to all of the pages of the document. The following illustration shows the **Paper Options** group box and the selections available by default .

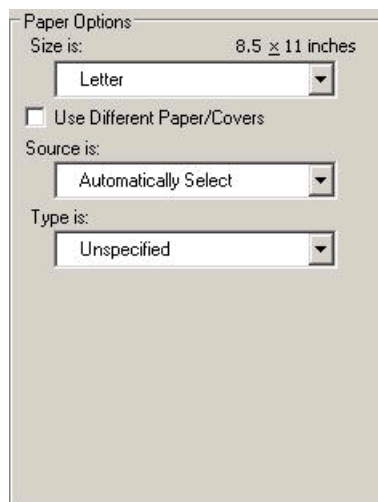


Figure 4-4. Paper Options group box

The appearance of the **Paper Options** group box changes when the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box is selected. For convenience, the settings in the **Paper Options** group box are described below in the following order:

- Size is:
- Source Is: drop-down menu
- Type is: drop-down menu
- Use Different Paper/Covers options

Size is:

The **Size is:** setting is a drop-down menu that lists all of the the supported media sizes.

You can specify size for all the settings in the **Paper Options** group box. You must use the same size of media for the entire print job. That is, if the print job uses Letter-size media, any option that you select from the available **Use Different Paper/Covers** options must also use Letter-size media.

Note

Certain software programs can override the size command and specify different media sizes within a single document.

For the **Other Pages** and **Last Page** settings, you can select a source (tray) and media type that differ from the settings selected for **First Page**. If a conflict exists among media source, media size, and/or media type, and you choose to keep the conflicting settings, the settings are processed in the following order: media size, media type, and then media source.

Because driver settings are overridden by media-size settings in most software applications, it is generally best to use the driver to set media size only for software applications that lack a media-size setting, such as NotePad, or when you are producing a book or a booklet that does not require different media sizes.

Note

When you use a software program with a media-size setting, you can specify different media sizes within a single document using the Use Different Paper/Covers options. For more information, see [Use Different Paper/Covers options](#).

For information about media sizes, see the [Media attributes](#) section of this guide.

Use Different Paper/Covers check box

When the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box is selected and different options are configured, the Size is:, Source is:, and Type is: menus change, offering a variety of options. For more information, see [Use Different Paper/Covers check box](#).

Source Is: drop-down menu

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the MFP accessories. Any optional source trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.

The **Source is:** drop-down menu can contain the following options:

- **Automatically select**
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1** (100-sheet multipurpose tray)
- **Tray 2** (500-sheet tray)
- **Tray 3** (500-sheet tray)
- **Tray 4** (1,500-sheet tray)
- **Tray 5** (optional 4,000-sheet tray)

The default setting is **Automatically Select**. When this setting is selected, the MFP uses the source tray that supports the media size that you have selected. If you select a source tray other than **Automatically select**, make sure that the correct media size is loaded in the source tray.

For information about media sources, see the [Media attributes](#) section of this guide.

Type is: drop-down menu

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all the paper types that the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp supports. When you use the default setting, Unspecified, the MFP uses the default media type, which is usually **Plain**.

No mechanism exists for manually adding custom media types through the driver. Custom types can be added only by using the bidirectional communication mechanism, so they must already exist in the MFP when the bidirectional query occurs. If bidirectional communication is enabled, then the information returned is an updated list of media types. If bidirectional communication is not enabled, then the driver looks for custom media types saved from a previous bidirectional communication query, and uses those. Otherwise, no custom media types are available through the driver.

The following standard types appear in the lists:

- Plain
- Unspecified
- Preprinted
- Letterhead
- Transparency
- Prepunched
- Labels
- Bond
- Recycled
- Color
- Cardstock (164 to 200 g/m² or 43 to 53 lb.)
- Rough
- Vellum
- Tab
- Custom
- Light (50 to 59 g/m² or less than 16 lb.)
- Heavy (91 to 163 g/m² or 24 to 43 lb.)

The default setting is **Unspecified**, and the program selects the media type. If you select a different setting, make sure the correct media type is loaded in the tray you selected in the **Source is:** setting.

For more information about media types, see the [Media attributes](#) section of this guide.

Use Different Paper/Covers options

You can print books with different media types using the **Use Different Paper/Covers** options.

When you select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box, the following settings can appear in the group box, along with associated options. The **Front Cover from Feeder** and **Back Cover from Feeder** settings are available when the HP Post Insertion Kit is installed on the MFP and enabled on the **Configure** tab.

- **Front Cover from Feeder**
- **Front Cover**
- **First Page**
- **Other Pages**
- **Last Page**

- **Back Cover**
- **Back Cover from Feeder**

To use **Use Different Paper/Covers** options, you must configure the setting for the print job. Each option for the **Use Different Paper/Covers** setting is described in the sections that follow this procedure. Follow the instructions below to configure the setting.

The following illustration shows the **Paper Options** group box when the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box is selected.

To configure the Use Different Paper/Covers options for a print job

For each option, you can set a different tray using the **Source Is:** drop-down menu. For some options, the **Type is:** drop-down menu is also available.

- 1 To use different paper or cover stock, select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box. A list of options appears in the dialog box. The full set of selections is visible when you scroll using the down arrow button to the right of the list.
- 2 To add a front cover or back cover, select one of the front-cover or back-cover options from the list. Next, select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box. A red check mark appears to the left of the type of cover that you selected, which indicates that you can now select the type and/or source of the cover.
- 3 To use different media for the pages within the print job, select the appropriate option (**First Page**, **Other Pages**, or **Last Page**) in the dialog box. A check mark appears to the left of the option when you change a setting using the **Source is:** or **Type is:** drop-down menus.
- 4 Click **OK** to print.

Note

You must use the same size of media for the entire print job. All options that you select from the available **Use Different Paper/Covers** options use the size selected in the First Page settings. When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings you select remain configured until you close the application software.

Each option for the **Use Different Paper/Covers** setting is described in the following sections, in the order they appear in the pane below the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box.

Front Cover from Feeder options

Use **Front Cover from Feeder** to add a blank or preprinted cover to the print job. The cover is added to the print job from the cover sheet feeder or the HP Post Insertion Kit. The MFP must have either the HP Multifunction Finisher or the HP 3,000-sheet Stapler/Stacker *and* the HP Post Insertion Kit installed and enabled to use this option.

The **Front Cover from Feeder** options are shown in the following illustration.

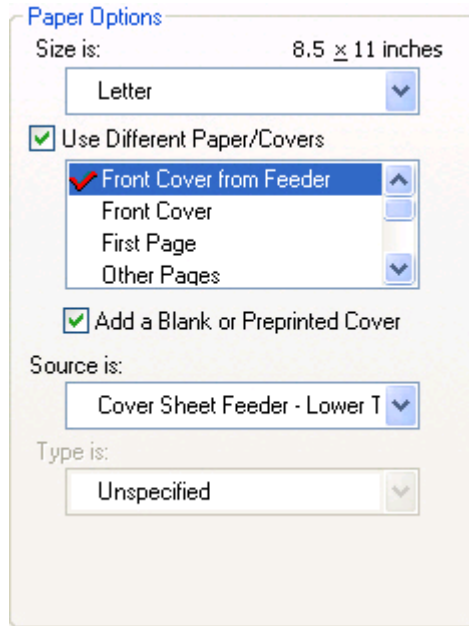


Figure 4-5. Front Cover from Feeder options

The **Front Cover from Feeder** options are as follows:

- **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box
- **Source is:** drop-down menu

Note

The **Type is:** option is not available when you select the **Front Cover from Feeder** option.

When you select the **Front Cover from Feeder** option, you must also select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box to enable the setting. When you select this check box, the **Source is:** drop-down menu becomes available and a check mark appears next to the **Front Cover from Feeder** option.

Note

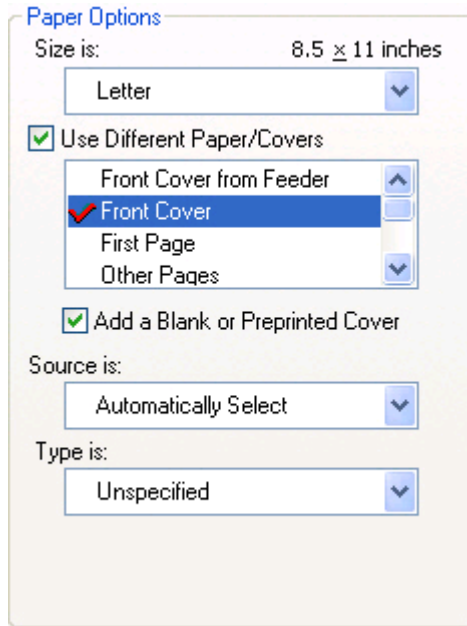
The **Source is:** drop-down menu becomes available *only* when you select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box.

The **Source is:** drop-down menu lists the two possible source trays for the cover that you are adding to the print job: **Cover Sheet Feeder - Upper Tray** and **Cover Sheet Feeder - Lower Tray**. It is recommended that you select **Cover Sheet Feeder - Upper Tray** for inserting a front cover.

Front Cover options

Use **Front Cover** to add a blank or preprinted front cover to the print job, or to include a front cover from a source tray that is different from the one used for the remainder of the print job. The cover is added to the print job from any media tray. The MFP does *not* need the HP Multifunction Finisher, the HP 3,000-sheet Stapler/Stacker, or the HP Post Insertion Kit installed to use this option.

The **Front Cover** setting and options are shown in the following illustration.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Paper Options" with a light beige background. At the top, it says "Size is: 8.5 x 11 inches". Below this is a dropdown menu with "Letter" selected. A checked checkbox labeled "Use Different Paper/Covers" is followed by a list box containing "Front Cover from Feeder", "Front Cover" (which has a red checkmark and a blue highlight), "First Page", and "Other Pages". Below the list box is another checked checkbox labeled "Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover". Underneath are two more dropdown menus: "Source is:" with "Automatically Select" selected, and "Type is:" with "Unspecified" selected.

Figure 4-6. Front Cover options

The **Front Cover** options are as follows:

- **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box
- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

When you select **Front Cover**, you must also select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box to enable the setting. When you select this check box, the **Source is:** and **Type is:** drop-down menus become available and a check mark appears next to the **Front Cover** option.

Note

The **Source is:** and **Type is:** drop-down menus become available *only* when you select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box.

First Page options

Use the **First Page** options to select an alternative media size, type, or source for the first page of a document. The following illustration shows the appearance of the Paper Options group box when you select the Use Different Paper/Covers check box.

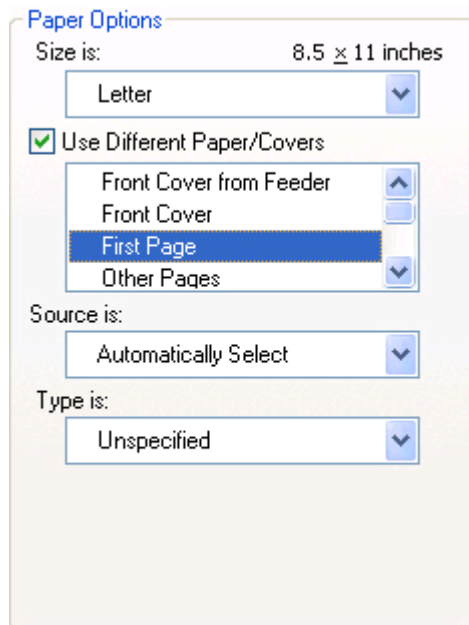


Figure 4-7.

First Page options

The **First Page** options are as follows:

- **Size is:** drop-down menu
- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

The **Size is:** driver setting for the first page applies to the entire print job. When this is set, the setting becomes unavailable for all the other **Use Different Paper/Covers** options.

Other Pages options

Use the **Other Pages** options to select an alternative media source (or the same source as **First Page**) for the other pages of the document.

The **Other Pages** setting and options are shown in the following illustration.

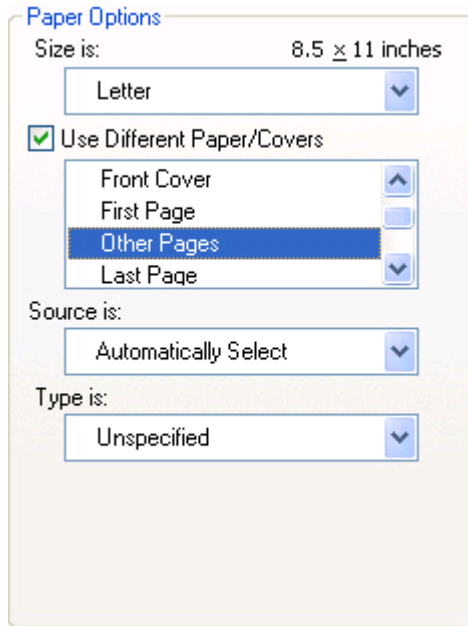


Figure 4-8. Other Pages options

The **Other Pages** options are as follows:

- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the MFP accessories. Any optional media trays that are installed through the **Configure** tab also appear here. For more information about the **Source is:** setting, see the [Source Is: drop-down menu](#) section of this chapter.

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all of the the media types that the MFP supports. For more information about the **Type is:** drop-down menu settings, see the description for **Type is:** in the [Type is: drop-down menu](#) section of this chapter.

Last Page options

Use the **Last Page** options to select an alternative media type or source for the last page of a document.

The following illustration shows the **Last Page** setting and options.

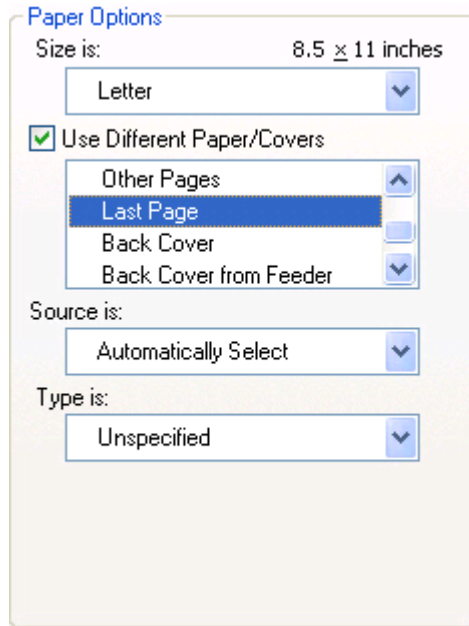


Figure 4-9. Last Page options

The **Last Page** options are as follows:

- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the MFP accessories. Any optional media trays that are installed through the **Configure** tab also appear here. For more information about the **Source is:** setting, see the [Source Is: drop-down menu](#) section of this chapter.

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all of the the media types that MFP supports. For more information about the **Type is:** drop-down menu settings, see the description for **Type is:** in the [Type is: drop-down menu](#) section of this chapter.

Back Cover options

Use the **Back Cover** options to include a blank back cover on a document, or to include a back cover from a source tray that is different from the one used for the remainder of the document. The MFP does *not* need the HP Multifunction Finisher, the HP 3,000-sheet Stapler/Stacker, or the HP Post Insertion Kit installed to use this option.

The following illustration shows the **Back Cover** setting and options.

The screenshot shows a 'Paper Options' dialog box. At the top, it says 'Size is: 8.5 x 11 inches' with a dropdown menu set to 'Letter'. Below that is a checked checkbox 'Use Different Paper/Covers'. Underneath is a dropdown menu with three options: 'Last Page', 'Back Cover' (which is highlighted with a blue bar and has a red checkmark to its left), and 'Back Cover from Feeder'. Below this is another checked checkbox 'Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover'. At the bottom, there are two more dropdown menus: 'Source is:' set to 'Automatically Select' and 'Type is:' set to 'Unspecified'.

Figure 4-10. Back Cover setting

The **Back Cover** options are as follows

- **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box
- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

When you select **Back Cover**, you must also select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box to enable the setting. When you select this check box, the **Source is:** and **Type is:** drop-down menus become available and a check mark appears next to the **Back Cover** option.

Note

The **Back Cover** options are not available when the **Booklet Layout** setting is enabled on the **Finishing** tab. For two-page-per-sheet (2-up) booklet printing, you can obtain a cover by selecting different media for the first page only. The back cover setting is unavailable, because this page would otherwise be printed in the middle of a booklet.

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for adding a back cover to the document. The list of source trays depends on the MFP accessories. Any optional media trays that are installed through the **Configure** tab also appear here. For more information about the **Source is:** setting, see the [Source Is: drop-down menu](#) section of this chapter.

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all of the the media types that the MFP supports. For more information about the **Type is:** drop-down menu settings, see the **Type is:** in the [Type is: drop-down menu](#) section of this chapter.

Back Cover from Feeder options

Use **Back Cover from Feeder** to add a blank or preprinted back cover to the print job. The back cover is added to the print job from the Cover Sheet Feeder. The MFP must have either the HP Multifunction Finisher or the HP 3,000-sheet Stapler/Stacker *and* the HP Post Insertion Kit installed and enabled to use this option.

The **Back Cover from Feeder** options are shown in the following illustration.

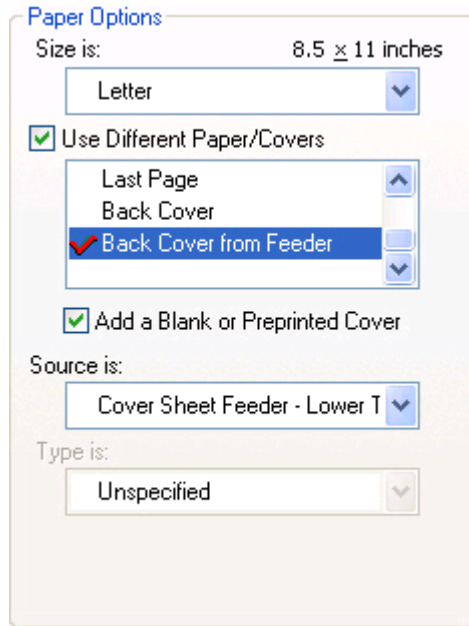


Figure 4-11. Back Cover from Feeder options

The **Back Cover from Feeder** setting and options are as follows:

- **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box
- **Source is:** drop-down menu

Note

The **Type is:** option is not available when you select the **Back Cover from Feeder** option.

When you select **Back Cover from Feeder**, you must also select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box to enable the setting. When you select this check box, the **Source is:** drop-down menu becomes available and a check mark appears next to the **Back Cover from Feeder** option.

Note

The **Back Cover from Feeder** options are not available when the **Booklet Layout** setting is enabled on the **Finishing** tab. For two-page-per-sheet (2-up) booklet printing, you can obtain a cover by selecting different media for the first page only. The back cover setting is unavailable, because this page would otherwise be printed in the middle of a booklet.

The **Source is:** drop-down menu lists the two possible source trays for the cover that you are adding to the print job: **Cover Sheet Feeder - Upper Tray** and **Cover Sheet Feeder - Lower Tray**. It is recommended that you select **Cover Sheet Feeder - Lower Tray** for inserting a back cover.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the **Finishing**, **Output**, **Effects**, **Paper**, and **Basics** tabs.

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking on the image. The dimensions label that appears below the preview image reflects the selected page size. The horizontal dimension is always first, so the order of the numbers reverses when the orientation changes. Click the dimensions label to toggle between English and metric units.

Print Quality group box

The **Print Quality** group box contains one check box option: **EconoMode**.

The **EconoMode (May Save Print Cartridges)** check box is not selected by default. Select **EconoMode** to decrease the print density and make the printed image appear lighter. The **EconoMode** setting useful when printing drafts or proofs.

Effects tab features

Use the **Effects** tab to create unique paper effects such as scaling and watermarks. The following illustration shows the **Effects** tab.

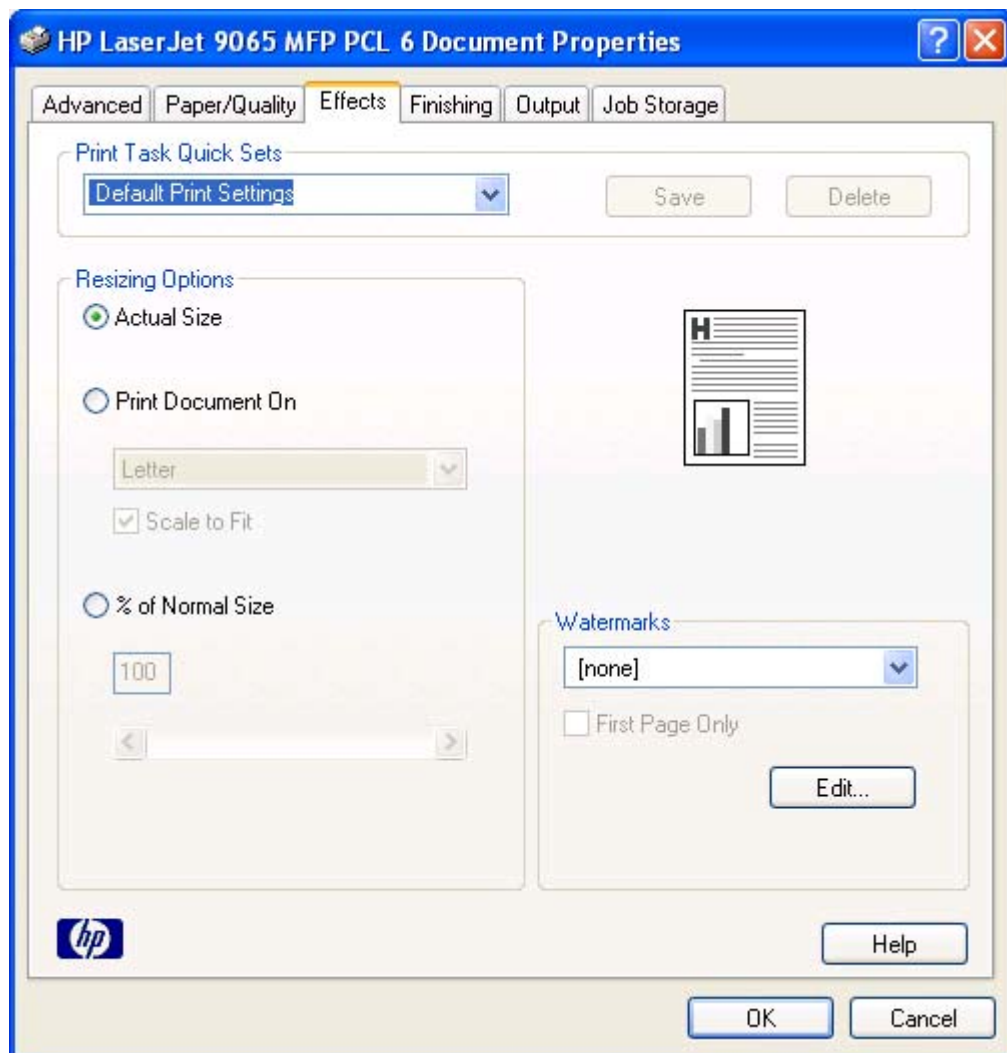


Figure 4-12. Effects tab

The **Effects** tab contains the following controls.

- **Print Task Quick Sets** group box
- **Resizing Options** group box
- Document preview image
- **Watermarks** group box

Print Task Quick Sets

Use the **Print Task Quick Sets** control to store the current combination of driver settings that are found on all other **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. Print task quick sets are either preset or user-defined printing specifications, such as paper size and pages per sheet. For more information, see the [Paper/Quality tab features](#) section of this guide.

Resizing options group box

The **Resizing Options** group box consists of the following controls.

- **Actual Size** (default)
- **Print Document On** setting
- **Scale to Fit** option
- **% of Normal Size** setting

Actual Size setting

Actual Size is the default setting. It prints the document without changing the document size.

Print Document On setting

Select the **Print Document On** radio button to format the document for one paper size and then print the document on a different paper size, with or without scaling the image to fit the new paper size.

The **Print Document On** control is disabled by either of the following conditions:

- The **% of Normal Size** value is not 100.
- The **Pages per Sheet** value (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1.

When **Print Document On** is selected, the drop-down menu shows the media sizes on which you can print. The list contains all of the the standard media sizes that are supported by the selected media source and any custom sizes that you have created. When **Print Document On** is selected, **Scale to Fit** is automatically selected.

Scale to Fit option

The **Scale to Fit** option box specifies whether each formatted document page image is scaled to fit the target paper size. By default, **Scale to Fit** is selected when **Print Document On** is selected. If the setting is turned off, then the document page images will not be scaled, and are instead centered at full size on the target paper. If the document size is larger than the target paper size, then the document image is clipped. If it is smaller, then it is centered within the target paper. The following illustration shows preview images for a document formatted for legal-size paper with the **Print Document On** check box selected, and the target size specified as **Letter**.

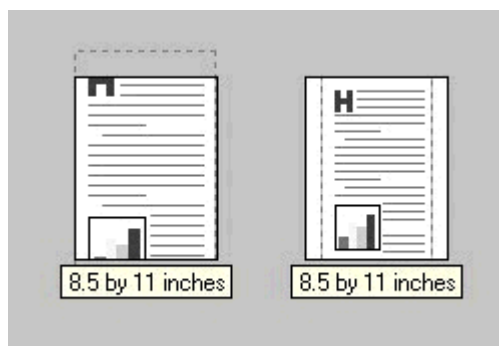


Figure 4-13.

Preview images - Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right)

When the size for which the document is formatted (that is, the logical size) differs from the target size, the preview image uses a dashed gray line to show the boundaries of the logical page in relation to the target page size.

% of Normal Size option

The **% of Normal Size** option provides a slider bar to use for scaling the percentage setting. The default setting in the entry box is 100 percent of normal size. Normal size is defined as the paper size that is selected within the driver or what the driver receives from the software program (if the software program does not negotiate the paper size with the driver). The driver scales the page by the appropriate factor and sends it to the MFP.

The limits of the range are from 25 percent to 400 percent, and any values outside the range are adjusted to those limits as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the **Tab** key is pressed or another control is selected).

Any change to the scale also changes the page preview, which increases or decreases from the upper-left corner of the preview.

The slider bar controls the scale directly. The value in the edit box changes as the scroll bar indicator is dragged, and the preview image is updated to the new image scale. Each click on the scroll bar arrows increases or decreases the scale by one percent. Each click on the slider bar affects the scale by 10 percent.

You cannot achieve an exact value by dragging the scroll bar indicator at the default Windows resolution; use the scroll bar indicator to approximate the desired value, and then use the scroll bar arrows to refine the value.

The following settings disable **% of Normal Size**:

- **Print Document On** (on the **Effects** tab) is selected
- **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of most **Printing Preferences** driver tabs (the **Paper/Quality**, **Effects**, **Finishing**, and **Output** tabs).

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the document preview image.

Watermarks group box

Use the **Watermarks** feature to choose a watermark, create your own custom watermarks (text only), or edit an existing watermark. The following watermarks are preset in the driver:

- **(none)**
- **Confidential**
- **Draft**
- **SAMPLE**

The drop-down menu shows alphabetically sorted watermarks that are currently available on the system, plus the string "(none)", which indicates that no watermark is selected. This is the default setting. Any watermark selected from this list appears in the preview image.

When the **First Page Only** check box is selected, the watermark is printed only on the first page of the document. The **First Page Only** check box is disabled when the current watermark selection is "(none)".

Watermarks are applied to logical pages. For example, when **Pages per Sheet** is set to "4" and **First Page Only** is turned off, four watermarks appear on the physical page (one on each logical page).

Click **Edit**, and the **Watermark Details** dialog box appears.

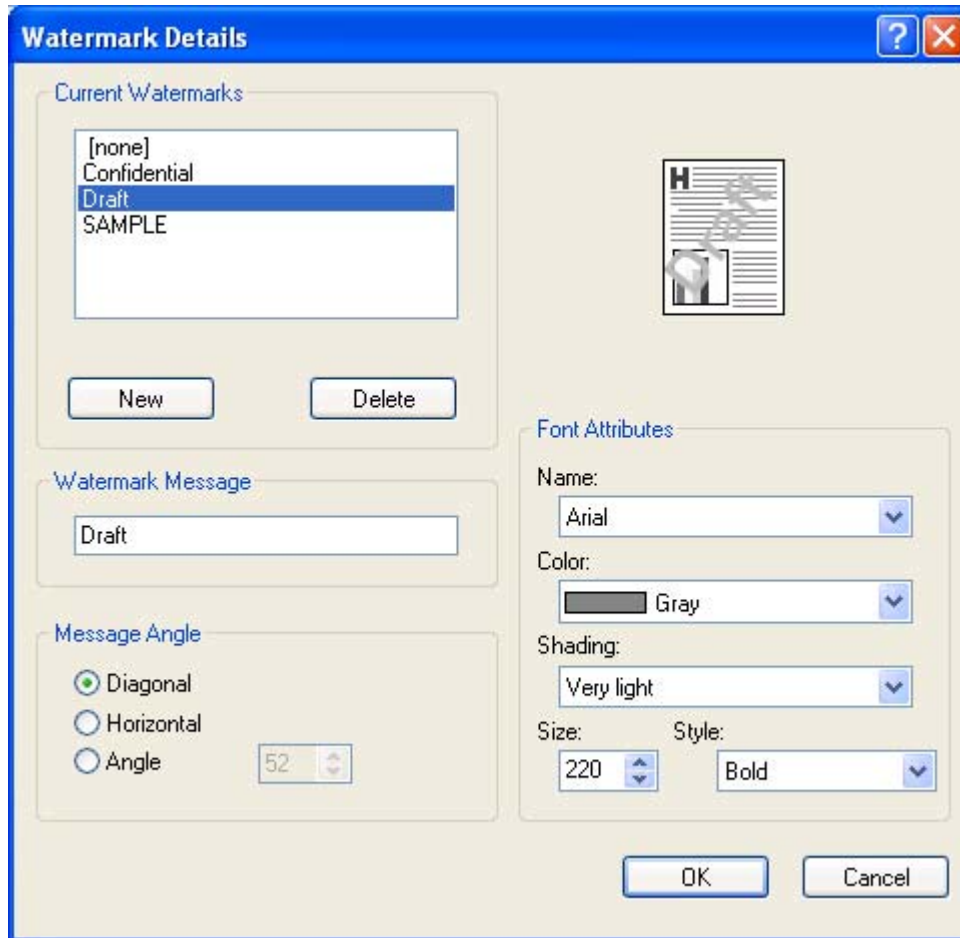


Figure 4-14.

Watermark Details

The dialog box shows a preview image and provides options for creating a new watermark and controlling the message angle and font attributes.

Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that are made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. However, clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark, and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes made to the previous watermark are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Current watermarks

The **Current Watermarks** group box contains a list of available watermarks, both predefined watermarks made available in the driver and any new watermarks you have created.

To create a new watermark, click **New**. The new watermark appears in the **Current Watermarks** list and in the **Watermark Message** edit box as "Untitled" until you name it. The name that you type in the **Watermark Message** field appears in the **Current Watermarks** group box in the **Watermark Details** dialog box and in the **Watermarks** group box on the **Effects** tab.

To name the new watermark, type the selected watermark text in the **Watermark Message** edit box. To delete a watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list and click **Delete**. A warning appears asking whether you are sure you want to delete the selected item. Click **Cancel** if you want to keep the watermark. Click **OK** to delete the selected watermark.

Note

You can have no more than 30 watermarks in the **Current Watermarks** list at one time. When you reach the limit of 30 watermarks, the **New** button is disabled.

To edit an existing watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list. If you change the **Watermark Message** for that watermark, you are, in effect, creating a new watermark.

Watermark message

The **Watermark Message** is also the name that identifies the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list, except when more than one watermark has the same message. For example, you might want several different watermarks with the message DRAFT, each with a different typeface or font size. When this occurs, the string is appended with a space, a pound sign, and a number (for example, **Draft #2**). When a number is added, the number two is used first, but if the resulting name is also in the list, then the number increases until the name is unique (**Draft #3**, **Draft #4**, and so on).

Message angle

Use the controls in the **Message Angle** group box to print the watermark in different orientations in relation to the page's text. The settings are **Diagonal**, **Horizontal**, or **Angle** (custom). The default is **Diagonal**. All three settings automatically center the watermark string within the page; the selection of a particular setting affects only the angle of the string placement. **Diagonal** places the text along a line that spans the lower-left to upper-right corners of the page. **Horizontal** places the text along a line that spans the mid-left and mid-right edges of the page. **Angle** places the text at the specified angle across the page.

Font attributes

Use the controls in the **Font Attributes** group box to change the font and the shading, size, and style of the font.

The **Font Attributes** group box contains the following controls.

- **Name** drop-down menu
- **Color** drop-down menu
- **Shading** drop-down menu
- **Size** spin box
- **Style** drop-down menu

Name

The **Name** drop-down menu lists fonts that are currently installed on the system. The default is language-dependent.

Color

The **Color** drop-down menu contains a single setting: **Gray**.

Shading

The default **Shading** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Very Light**. The following range of shades is available from the **Shading** drop-down menu.

- **Lightest**
- **Very Light** (default)
- **Light**
- **Medium Light**
- **Medium**
- **Medium Dark**
- **Dark**
- **Very Dark**
- **Darkest**

These values represent the intensity of the gray that is used. A choice of **Light** produces a lightly saturated gray watermark. A choice of **Lightest** produces the lightest shade of watermark; **Darkest** produces a black watermark.

Size

Font sizes from 1 to 999 points are available from the **Size** menu. The default point size is language-dependent. The choice of **Regular**, **Bold**, **Italic**, and **Bold Italic** is available from the **Style** drop-down menu.

Style

The choice of **Regular**, **Bold**, **Italic**, and **Bold Italic** is available from the **Style** drop-down menu. The default **Style** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Regular**.

Default settings

The default settings for new watermarks are **Arial** font, **Gray** color, **Very Light** shading, **80** points, and **Regular** style. The default settings for preset watermarks are **Arial** font, **Very Light** shading, and **Bold** style. The default point size for preset watermarks is language-dependent, and varies.

Finishing tab features

Use the **Finishing** tab to print booklets and control the media output. The following illustration shows the **Finishing** tab.

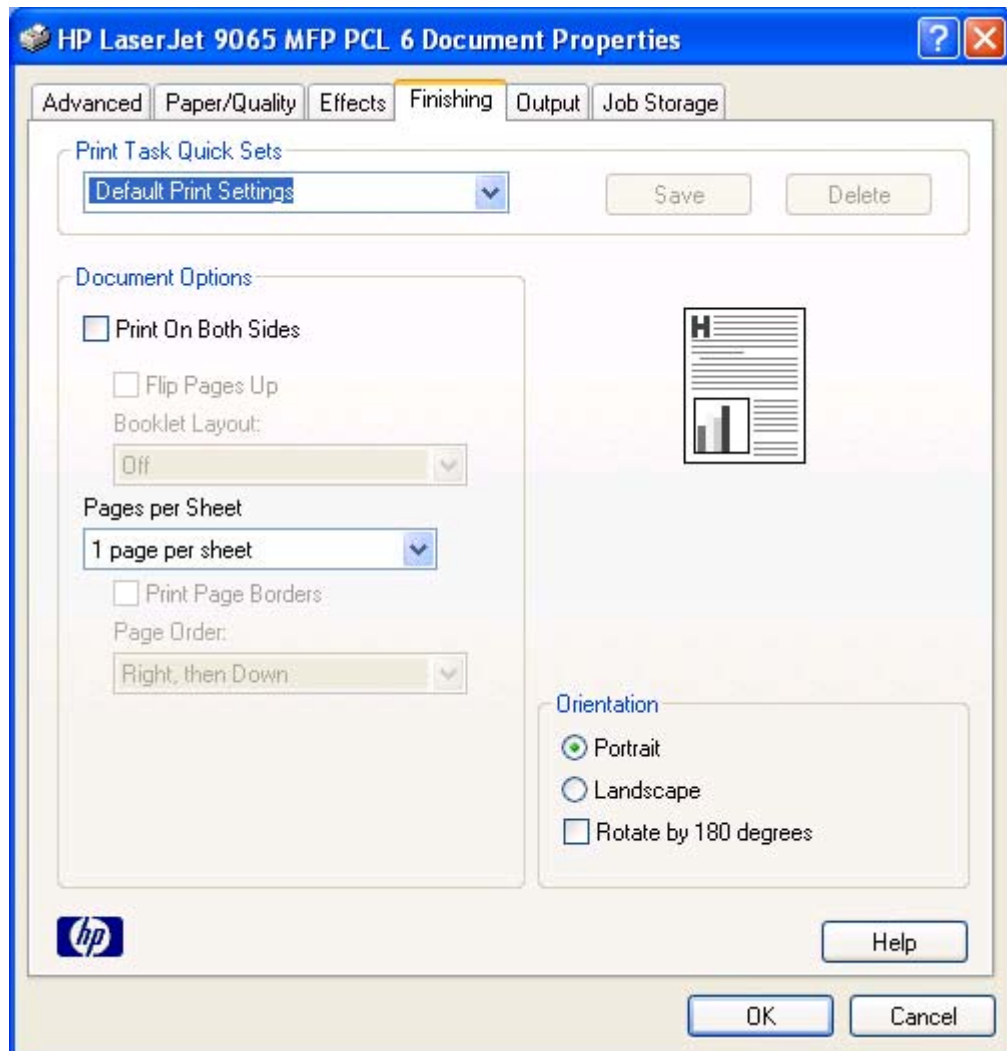


Figure 4-15. Finishing tab

The **Finishing** tab contains the following controls:

- **Print Task Quick Sets** group box
- **Document Options** group box
- Document preview image
- **Orientation** group box

Print Task Quick Sets group box

Use the **Print Task Quick Sets** control to store the current combination of driver settings that are found on all other **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. Print task quick sets are either preset or user-defined printing specifications, such as paper size and pages per sheet. For more information, see the [Paper/Quality tab features](#) section of this guide.

Document Options group box

The **Document Options** group box contains the following controls.

- **Print on Both Sides** check box
- **Flip Pages Up** option
- **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu
- **Pages per Sheet** drop-down menu
- **Print Page Borders** check box
- **Page Order** drop-down menu

Print on Both Sides check box

The default setting for the **Print on Both Sides** option is off (not selected). **Print on Both Sides** is available when the following conditions exist:

- **Type is:** on the **Paper/Quality** tab is set to any type except for **Labels, Tab, Cardstock, or Transparency**.
- **Size is:** is set to any size except for **A6, B6 (JIS), or Custom**.

When **Paper Size** is set to Letter, Legal, A4, 11x17, or B4 (JIS), selecting **Print on Both Sides** makes the **Flip Pages Up** and **Booklet Printing** options available.

Automatically printing on both sides

The duplexing unit in the MFP prints on two sides of a sheet of media when the **Print on Both Sides** option is specified in the print job. The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp comes with a duplexing unit installed.

To achieve the best print quality when printing on the second side of the page, the MFP needs to make adjustments to its print modes. When you select a media type, you are, in effect, instructing the MFP to use a group of settings (such as fuser temperature and print speed) to print the media with the best possible quality. This group of settings is known as a mode or print mode, and a different print mode is used with each media type. Print-mode adjustments are automatic when the duplexing unit is used.

Flip Pages Up

The **Flip Pages Up** check box, enabled only when **Print on Both Sides** is selected, is used to specify the duplex-binding option. By default, the **Flip Pages Up** check box is not selected. The following table demonstrates the results of selecting this box, depending on the paper orientation selected on the **Finishing** tab.

Table 4-2. Page orientation

Orientation (Finishing tab)	Flip Pages Up selected	Flip Pages Up not selected
Portrait	Short-edge binding	Long-edge binding
Landscape	Long-edge binding	Short-edge binding

When **Print on Both Sides** is selected, the document preview image changes to show a spiral binding along either the left edge or the top edge of the page. In addition, a folded-over corner appears in the lower-right portion of the preview image, indicating that printing occurs on the back side. An arrow on the folded-over corner points in the direction that the pages would be flipped if they were bound together.

Short-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a note pad. Long-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

Booklet layout

The **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu, visible when **Print on Both Sides** is selected, offers choices that are based on the current paper size. The default setting for the **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu is **Off**.

- **Left Edge Binding**
- **Right Edge Binding**

When you select **Left Edge Binding** or **Right Edge Binding**, the document preview image changes to show the location of the binding. If the **Pages per Sheet** setting is on the default setting of 1, it automatically changes to **2 pages per sheet**. If you change the **Pages per Sheet** setting manually to 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages per sheet, the booklet setting is disabled. See the [Printing a Booklet](#) section of this chapter for more information.

The **Booklet Layout** setting is disabled when A6 or B6 (JIS) is selected as the media size, and an incompatibility error message appears when you click **OK** to close the driver.

Book and booklet printing

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp supports book and booklet printing.

A book is a print job consisting of at least two pages that can have a different media type for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, or back cover. Use the **Front Cover from Feeder**, **Front Cover**, **First Page**, **Other Pages**, **Last Page**, **Back Cover**, and **Back Cover from Feeder** settings on the **Paper/Quality** tab (available when you select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box) to select different media for the front cover, first page, and last page.

A booklet is a print job that places two pages on each side of a sheet that can be folded into a booklet that is half the size of the media type. Use the **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu on the **Finishing** tab to control booklet settings.

Printing a Booklet

Complete the following steps to print a booklet.

- 1 Click **File**, click **Print**, and then click **Properties**.
- 2 Click the **Finishing** tab and select the **Print on Both Sides** check box.
- 3 In the **Booklet Layout (Booklet Printing in Windows 98)** drop-down menu, select the type of booklet printing that you want (for example, **Right Edge Binding**).
- 4 Click **OK** in the print driver.
- 5 Click **OK** in the print dialog box to print.

Printing a book

You can print a book in which the front cover, first page, other pages, and back cover have different media types. For more information, see [Paper/Quality tab features](#) of this chapter.

Pages per Sheet

Use the **Pages per Sheet** option to select the number of pages that you want to print on a single sheet of media. If you choose to print more than one page per sheet, the pages appear smaller and are arranged on the sheet in the order that they would otherwise be printed. The **Pages per Sheet** drop-down menu provides six settings:

- 1 page per sheet (this is the default)
- 2 pages per sheet
- 4 pages per sheet
- 6 pages per sheet
- 9 pages per sheet
- 16 pages per sheet

Note

When you select an option other than **2 pages per sheet**, booklet printing is unavailable.

Print Page Borders

Related controls indented beneath the **Pages per Sheet** edit box are **Print Page Borders** and **Page Order**, which become active when **Pages per Sheet** is greater than 1.

Print Page Borders sets a line around each page image on a printed sheet to help visually define the borders of each logical page.

Page Order

The **Page Order** drop-down menu contains four selections:

- **Right, then Down**
- **Down, then Right**
- **Left, then Down**
- **Down, then Left**

The preview document image changes to reflect alterations in these settings, as shown by the examples in the following illustration.

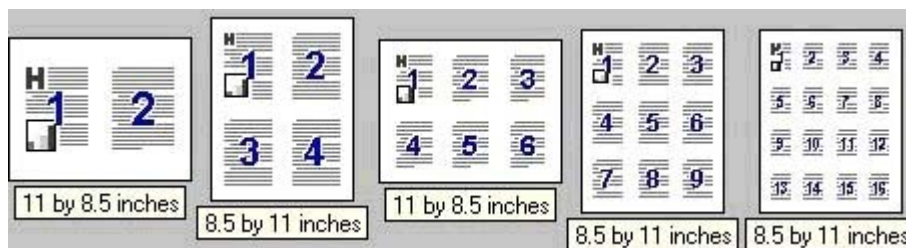


Figure 4-16.

Page-order preview images

- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of most **Printing Preferences** driver tabs (the **Paper/Quality**, **Effects**, **Finishing**, and **Output** tabs).

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the document preview image.

Orientation group box

Orientation refers to the layout of the image on the page, and does not affect the manner in which media is fed into the MFP. You can specify the orientation of the print job. The three available orientations are portrait, landscape, and rotated. The default orientation is **Portrait**.

Note

Nearly all software programs establish the orientation for the printed page, so the page orientation in the driver is useful only for the few software programs that do not set an orientation.

The **Orientation** group box contains three options:

- **Portrait.** The top edge of the document is the shorter edge of the paper.
- **Landscape.** The top edge of the document is the longer edge of the paper.
- **Rotate by 180 degrees.** This creates a landscape or portrait orientation in which the image is rotated 180 degrees. This setting is useful for printing prepunched paper.

You can toggle orientation between portrait and landscape by clicking the preview image. If you select the **Rotate by 180 degrees** check box, there is no change in the preview image.

Output tab features

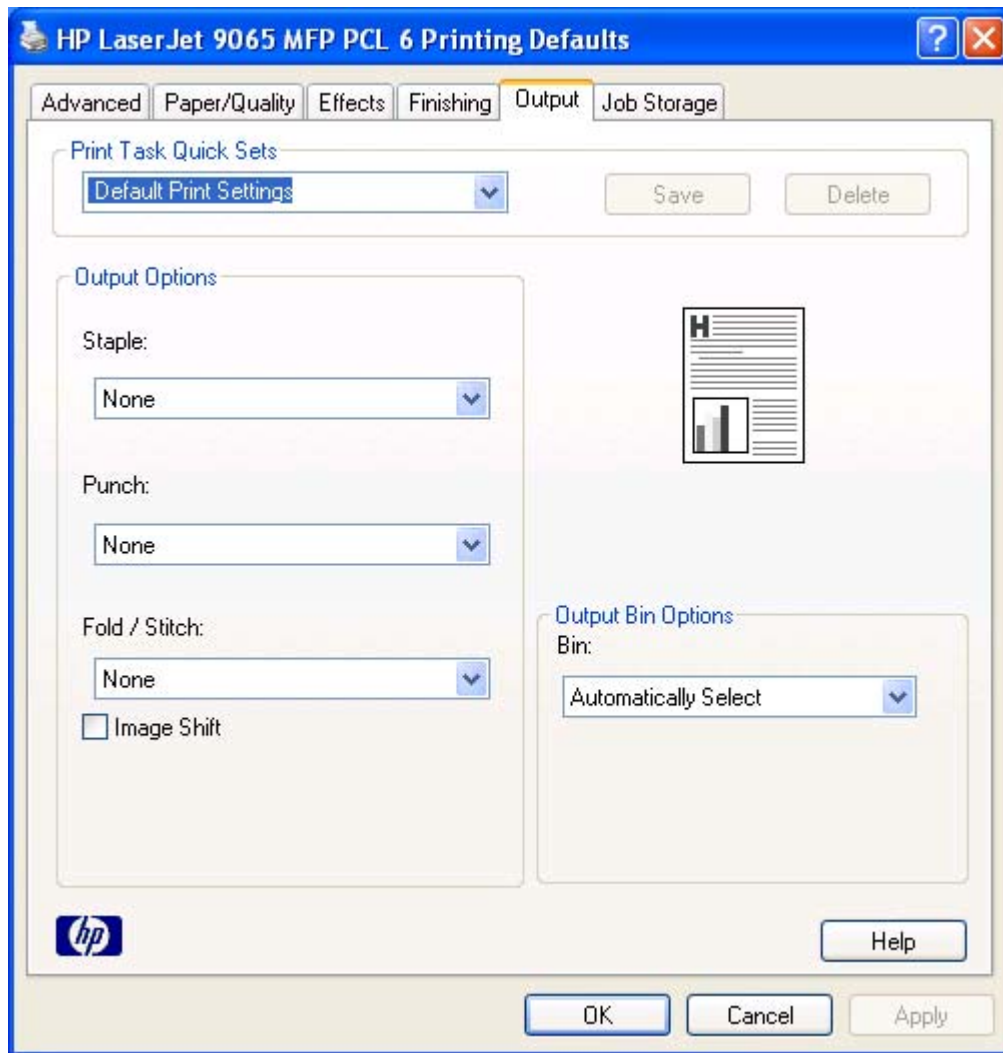


Figure 4-17. The default appearance of the Output tab

The **Output** tab contains the following controls:

- **Print Task Quick Sets** group box
- **Output Options** group box
- Document preview image
- **Output Bin Options** group box

Print Task Quick Sets

Use the **Print Task Quick Sets** control to store the current combination of driver settings that are found on all other **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. Print Task Quick Sets are either preset or user-defined printing specifications, such as paper size and pages per sheet. For more information, see the [Paper/Quality tab features](#) section of this guide.

Output Options

Use the **Output Options** group box drop-down menus and check box to select finishing and output options for a document. Only output options that are configured on the **Device Settings** tab appear in this group box.

The following output options can be selected in the driver:

- The **Staple** drop-down menu allows you to select how many staples to use and which edge of the document to staple. The staple settings are available only when the HP Multifunction Finisher or the HP 3,000-Sheet Stapler/Stacker is installed. The settings are:
 - **None**
 - **One Staple Left**
 - **One Staple Right**
 - **Two Staples Left**
 - **Two Staples Right**
 - **Two Staples Top**
- The **Punch** drop-down menu allows you to punch holes in the pages of a print job. The punch settings are available only when an optional punch unit is installed. The settings are:
 - **None**
 - **Punch Left**
 - **Punch Right**
 - **Punch Top**
- The **Fold / Stitch** drop-down menu allows you to select how the document is folded and stapled. The fold/stich settings are available only when the HP Multifunction Finisher is installed. The settings are:
 - **Tri Fold Inward**
 - **Tri Fold Outward**
 - **Half Fold Inward**
 - **Half Fold Outward**
 - **Fold and Stitch**
- The **Image Shift** check box allows you to create a margin for binding the printed document. You can set the direction and amount of image shifting at the MFP control panel. For more information about using Image Shift, see the *HP LaserJet 9055mfp/9065mfp Administrator Guide*.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of most **Printing Preferences** driver tabs (the **Paper/Quality**, **Effects**, **Finishing**, and **Output** tabs).

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the document preview image.

Output Bin Options

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp comes with several output device options. The available options depend on which accessory output bin is installed on the MFP. The options for accessories, which must be installed and configured on the **Device Settings** tab, are:

- **None**
- **HP 3000-Sheet Stapler/Stacker.** This single 3000-sheet stacking device accommodates up to 3,000 sheets of Letter-sized and A4-sized paper, or up to 1,500 sheets of 11-inch by 17-inch and A3 paper. It provides multi-position stapling for up to 50 sheets of paper per document.
- **HP Multifunction Finisher.** This booklet-printing device creates booklets and stapled documents in a variety of sizes.

Use the **Output Bin Options** group box drop-down menu to select an output bin from a list of available output bins. The following options can be selected in the **Bin:** drop-down menu in the **Output Bin Options** group box when either an HP 3000-sheet Stapler/Stacker or an HP Multifunction Finisher is installed:

- The **Automatically Select** option sends the printed pages to the MFP's default output bin.

Note

If an HP Multifunction Finisher is installed and you select **Booklet Layout** on the **Finishing** tab for a print job, the output bin for the print job changes to **Automatically Select**. The print job emerges in the bottom booklet tray of the HP Multifunction Finisher.

- The **Main Bin (Face Down)** option causes the printed pages to exit the MFP face down in the bin. Pages sent to this output bin stack in the order that they are printed. This option is always available and has no media size or type constraints beyond those determined by the MFP hardware.
- The **Main Bin (Face Up - Straightest Path)** option refers to the bin on the left side of the MFP. Printed pages exit the MFP face up and in the correct order.
- The **Upper Bin (Face Down)** option refers to the top bin on the MFP. Printed pages exit the MFP face down in the bin. Pages sent to this output bin stack in the order that they are printed.
- The **Upper Bin (Face Up)** option refers to the top bin on the MFP. Printed pages exit the MFP face up and in the correct order.

If no paper-handling accessory is installed, the **Output Bin Options** options are as follows:

- **Automatically Select**
- **Main Bin (Face Down)**
- **Main Bin (Face Up - Straightest Path)**

Job Storage tab features

Job Storage is always available to the the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp and is enabled by default.

Note

To disable Job Storage, click **Settings**, click **Printers and Faxes** (click **Printers** in Windows 2000), right-click the product icon, click **Properties**, click the **Device Settings** tab, and then select **Disabled** as the **Job Storage:** setting under **Installable Options**. When Job Storage is disabled, the **Job Storage** tab is not visible in the print driver.

Job Storage tab

The following illustration shows the **Job Storage** tab.

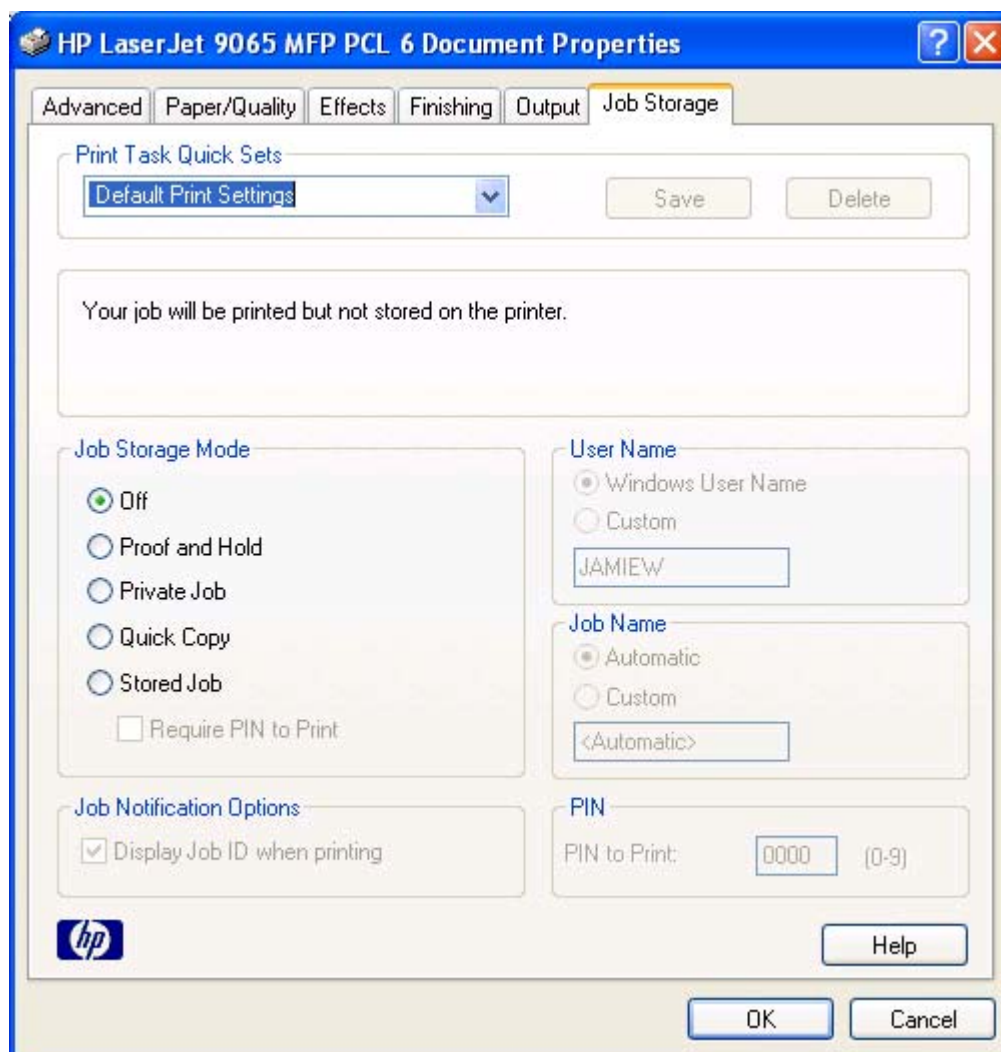


Figure 4-18.

Job Storage tab

The **Job Storage** tab contains the following controls:

- **Print Task Quick Sets** group box
- Status group box (unlabeled)
- **Job Storage Mode** group box
- **Job Notification Options** group box
- **User Name** group box
- **Job Name** group box
- **PIN** group box

Print Task Quick Sets

Use the **Print Task Quick Sets** control to store the current combination of driver settings that are found on all other **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. Print task quick sets are either preset or user-defined printing specifications, such as paper size and pages per sheet. For more information, see the [Paper/Quality tab features](#) section of this guide.

Status group box (unlabeled)

The unlabeled group box on the **Job Storage** tab contains a status message about the destination of a print job. The status information changes depending on the selections made on the **Job Storage** tab.

Job Storage Mode

Use the **Job Storage Mode** options on the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp to store documents at the MFP and then control their printing at the MFP control panel. This feature is intended to provide greater flexibility, convenience, security, and cost savings.

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp offer the following **Job Storage Mode** options:

- **Off**
- **Proof and Hold**
- **Private Job**
- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**
 - **Require PIN to Print** (available when **Stored Job** is selected)

These features and the settings that control them are described below.

Off

When selected, this option turns the **Job Storage** feature off (it is disabled), which means that the print job will not be stored in the MFP.

Proof and Hold

When selected, this option stores the print job and prints only the first copy of the job, allowing you to check the first copy. If the document prints correctly, you can print the remaining copies of the print job at the MFP control panel. You can set the number of proof-and-hold print jobs that can be stored in the MFP at the MFP control panel.

After it is released for printing, the proof-and-hold job is immediately deleted from the MFP. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second proof-and-hold job to the MFP with the same user name and job name as an existing proof-and-hold job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the job will overwrite the existing job. Proof-and-hold jobs are deleted if you turn off the MFP.

Note

The MFP configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the MFP control panel in the **CONFIGURATION** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, a newer document will overwrite the oldest. Also, a document that has the same user and job name as one that is already stored on the hard disk will overwrite the existing document.

Private Job

When you select **Private Job**, the print job is sent to the MFP, but is not printed until you request the job at the MFP control panel. Selecting **Private Job** activates the **PIN** group box. The print job can be printed only after you type the correct PIN at the MFP control panel. After the job is printed, the job is deleted from the MFP. This feature is useful when you are printing sensitive or confidential documents that you do not want to leave in an output bin after printing.

After it is released for printing, the private job is immediately deleted from the MFP. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second private job to the MFP with the same user name and job name as an existing private job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the job will overwrite the existing job, regardless of the PIN. Private jobs are deleted if you disconnect the power to the MFP.

Using a PIN for Private Job

The **Private Job** option can be secured by a four-digit personal identification number (PIN). You must type in this number at the MFP control panel before the MFP prints the job.

The group box labeled **PIN** is usually inactive. It becomes active when you select the **Private Job** option.

The Private Job/PIN coupling has a PIN restriction of four ASCII numeric characters (0-9). If you type non-numeric characters, they are removed immediately. If you type more than four characters, the characters past the fourth are truncated. The field temporarily accepts fewer than four digits in the string, but when the edit field loses focus, the zeroes pad the left end until there are exactly four digits. The default initialized value for the PIN is 0000 for **Private Job**.

Selecting **Private Job** activates . The Private Job/PIN coupling has a PIN restriction of four ASCII numeric characters (0-9). If you type non-numeric characters, they are removed immediately. If you type more than four characters, the characters past the fourth are truncated. The field temporarily accepts fewer than four digits in the string, but when the edit field loses focus, the zeroes pad the left end until there are exactly four digits. The default initialized value for the PIN is 0000 for **Private Job**.

Quick Copy

When you select **Quick Copy**, the entire print job prints and a copy of the print job is stored on the hard disk, after which you can print additional copies of the print job at the MFP control panel. The number of quick-copy print jobs that can be stored in the MFP is set by using the MFP control panel.

Note

The MFP configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the MFP control panel in the **Configuration** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, a newer document will overwrite the oldest. Also, a document that has the same user and job name as one that is already stored on the hard disk will overwrite the existing document. **Quick Copy** jobs are deleted if you turn off the MFP.

Stored Job

Use the **Stored Job** option to send a print job directly to the MFP hard disk without printing it. The print job is stored in the MFP as if it is an electronic file cabinet. After the print job is stored in the MFP hard disk, you can print the job at the MFP control panel.

The job remains stored in the MFP until it is deleted or overwritten by a document with the same user and job names. Stored jobs remain on the MFP hard disk when the MFP is turned off. Use this feature for forms and other common or shared documents.

A stored job can be managed in two ways: as either a private or a public job. Use a private stored job to send a print job directly to the MFP, which can then be printed only after you type in a PIN at the MFP control panel. (You can set the PIN in the **PIN** group box.) After the job is printed, the job remains in the MFP and can be printed again at the MFP control panel. Private mode is initiated by clicking the **Require PIN to Print** check box. In this mode, a PIN typed at the MFP control panel is required to release the job.

The box labeled **PIN** is usually inactive. The **Require PIN to Print** option becomes available when you select **Stored Job**. If you select the **Require PIN to Print** box, you must type a PIN to make the stored job private.

Note

A private stored job is not the same as a private job (see above). *Private* jobs are deleted from the MFP after they are printed. *Private stored* jobs are retained in the MFP after printing, but require that a PIN be typed each time they are printed.

Job Notification Options

Clicking a job storage mode selection causes the **User Name** and **Job Name** options to become available. The **Display Job ID when printing** check box is selected by default. The **Display Job ID when printing** option causes a pop-up dialog box to appear when the job-storage print job is printed. The dialog box shows the user name and job name associated with the stored print job, as well as the MFP name, port, and location.

User Name

Use the **User Name** settings to help identify the job at the MFP control panel. The **User Name** settings are:

- **Windows User Name.** This option associates your Windows user name with the stored print job. The Windows user name is automatically displayed in the text field below the **Windows User Name** options.
- **Custom.** Use this option to type a custom name for the stored print job. When you click the **Custom** option button, the text field below the option becomes available. The **User Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z and 0 through 9 because the name appears on the MFP control-panel display. If you try to type a lowercase character, it automatically shifts to uppercase. If you try to type a character with an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.

Job Name

Use the **Job Name** options to specify a name to identify the job at the MFP control panel. The **Job Name** settings are:

- **Automatic.** This option automatically generates the job name associated with the stored print job. The file name of the print job is used if it is available to the print driver. Otherwise, the software program name or a time stamp is used for the job name.
- **Custom.** Use this to type a custom job name for the stored print job. When you click the **Custom** option button, the text field below the option becomes available.

The **Job Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z and 0 through 9 because the name appears on the MFP control-panel display. If you try to type a lowercase character, it automatically shifts to uppercase. If you try to type a character with an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.

When the dialog box is closed, or as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the **Tab** key is pressed or another control is selected), an empty string is replaced with **<Automatic>**. The acceptable characters for job name and user name vary for each operating system. The string must be of a length and type that can appear on the MFP control-panel display.

PIN

The **PIN** group box is usually inactive. The option within the PIN group box, **PIN to Print**, is activated if you select either of the following options:

- Select **Private Job**. If selected, you must type in the PIN number at the MFP control panel to make the job print. For more information, see [Using a PIN for Private Job](#).
- Select **Stored Job**, and then select the **Require PIN to Print** check box. If the **Require PIN to Print** check box is selected, you must enter a PIN to make the stored job private. For more information, see [Stored Job](#).

Using Job Storage options when printing

Note

The print driver that is installed on your computer must be configured to use the **Job Storage** features. **Job Storage** is enabled by default. To enable **Job Storage** (if it has been disabled), click **Start**, click **Settings**, click **Printers (Printers and Faxes for Windows XP)**, and then right-click the product icon. Click **Properties**, click the **Device Settings** tab, and then click the **Job Storage** option. Use the drop-down menu to select **Enabled**, and then click **OK**.

- 1 Click **Print** from the software program. The **Print** dialog box appears.
- 2 Click **Properties**. The **Properties** dialog box appears.
- 3 Click the **Job Storage** tab.
- 4 Select one of the Job Storage options described above by clicking the appropriate option button.

Releasing a Job Storage print job

After you send a print job using the **Job Storage** feature, you can release the job to print by using the MFP control panel.

- 1 Press the **Mode** selection button until the light comes on next to **Print**. (The Mode selection key has two arrows pointing in a circular direction.)
- 2 Touch **MENUS**.
- 3 Touch **+RETRIEVE JOB**.
- 4 Touch your user name, if any.
- 5 Touch the job name, if any.
- 6 Touch **#PRINT**.
- 7 Use the numeric pad to key in your PIN, if any.
- 8 Touch **OK**.
- 9 Use the numeric pad to change the number of copies you want. The default is **1** copy.
- 10 Touch **OK**.

Deleting a Job Storage print job

Sometimes it is necessary to delete a print job from the MFP hard disk. You can do this by using the MFP control panel.

- 1 Press the **Mode** selection button until the light comes on next to **Print**.
- 2 Touch **MENUS**.
- 3 Touch **+RETRIEVE JOB**.
- 4 Touch your user name, if any.
- 5 Touch the job name, if any.
- 6 Touch **#DELETE**.
- 7 Use the numeric pad to key in your PIN, if any.
- 8 Touch **OK**.

The stored print job is deleted and the MFP returns to the **READY** state.

MFP Properties tabs

The MFP **Properties** tabs contain information about and options for configuring the MFP.

Device Settings

Note

The **Device Settings** tab is in the **Properties** for the print driver. To gain access to the print driver **Properties**, click **Start** on the Window task bar, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**. Right-click the MFP name, and then click **Properties**.

Available options depend on the feature. The following illustration shows the **Device Settings** tab.

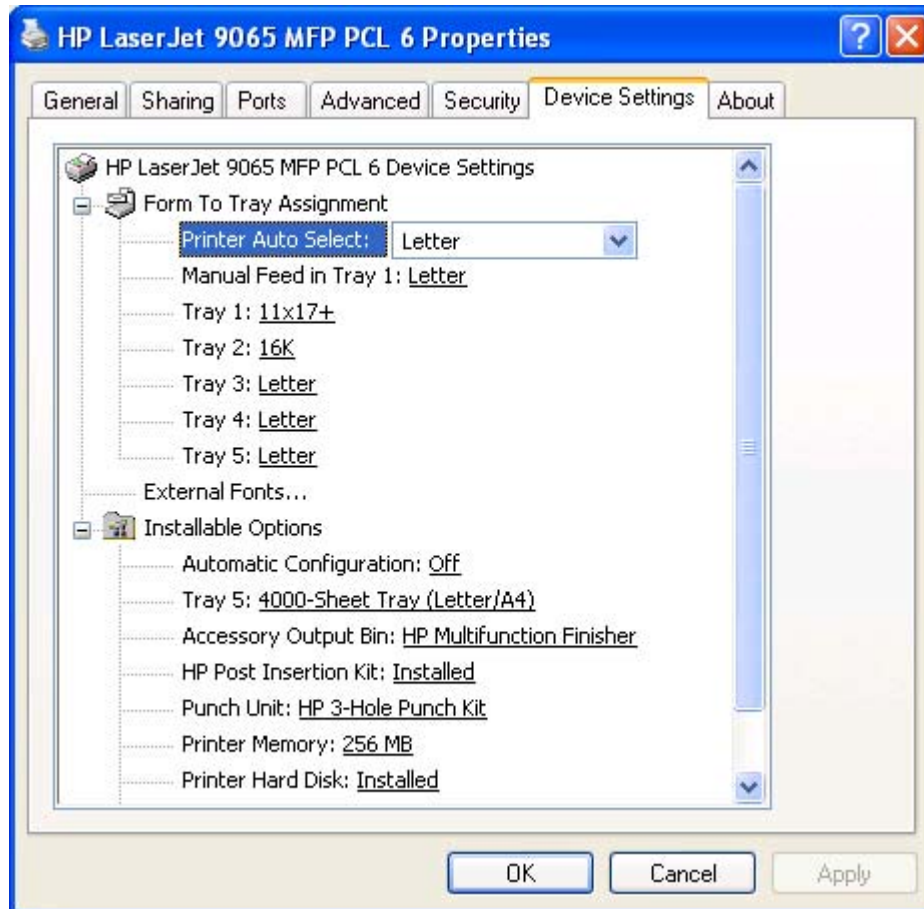


Figure 4-19. Device Settings tab

The **Device Settings** tab contains controls for media-handling devices and controls for managing the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.

The **Device Settings** tab contains the following controls:

- **Form to Tray Assignment** options
- **External Fonts** option
- **Installable Options** options

Form to Tray Assignment

A network administrator can use **Form to Tray Assignment** to specify the media size in each input tray.

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp support more than one source of media. You can assign a form (which defines the media size and margins) to each of your MFP media sources. When a form is matched to a source, you can select the form when you print. The MFP prints from the tray to which that form is assigned.

Network administrators can use the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting to specify, in the driver, the media size that is loaded into each available input tray. The use of forms constrains the choices that are available in the media-size list on the **Advanced** tab in the **Document Defaults** driver tabs. This constraint prevents (or reduces the likelihood of) tying up the MFP with paper-mount messages that occur when users request sizes or types that are not available.

The trays listed in the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting include standard trays and optional accessory trays. Generally, items that are installed separately have a separate **Installable Options** setting. For example, for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp, tray 5 is a high-capacity (4,000-sheet) tray that is listed in both the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting and the **Installable Options** setting.

The input trays listed here are also listed as media sources on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Configuring the trays

- 1 Select the appropriate tray in the **Form to Tray Assignment** list.
- 2 Use the drop-down menu to select the media size (or form) that is loaded in that tray.
- 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the remaining trays.
- 4 Click **OK** to enable your settings, or, if necessary, click the **Cancel** button to reconfigure all the trays, and remove the size and type constraints that have been imposed on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

External Fonts (PCL 6 only)

Use the **External Fonts** option to install and remove external fonts for the MFP. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Clicking the **External Fonts** option causes the **Properties** button to appear. Clicking the **Properties** button opens the **Font DIMM Installer** dialog box, which is shown in the following illustration.

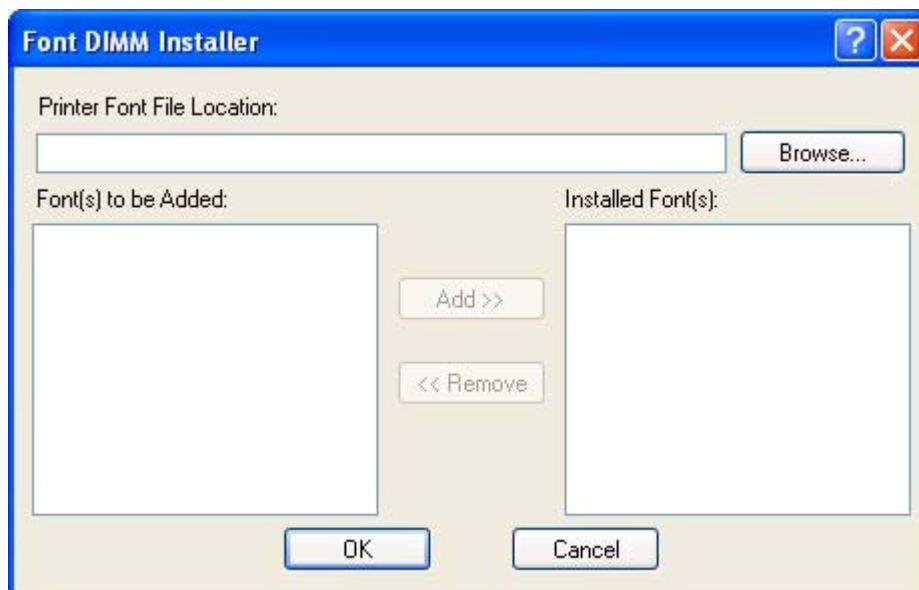


Figure 4-20. Font DIMM Installer dialog box

Installing external fonts

Follow these steps to install external fonts.

- 1 Click **Start**, click **Settings**, click **Printers and Faxes**, right-click the name of the MFP, and then click **Properties**.
- 2 Click the **Device Settings** tab.
- 3 Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
- 4 Click the **Properties** button. The **Font DIMM Installer** dialog box appears.
- 5 Type the name and path of the font metric file in the **Printer Font File Location** text box, or click **Browse** to locate the file on your computer. The font file names appear in the **Font(s) to be Added** window.
- 6 Select the fonts that you want to add, and then click **Add**. The fonts are installed and the file names appear in the **Installed Font(s)** window.
- 7 Click **OK** to close the **Font DIMM Installer** dialog box.

Removing external fonts

- 1 Click **Start**, click **Settings**, click **Printers** (**Printers and Faxes** in Windows XP and Windows Server 2003), right-click the name of the MFP, and then click **Properties**.
- 2 Click the **Device Settings** tab.
- 3 Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
- 4 Click the **Properties** button. The **Font DIMM Installer** dialog box appears.
- 5 The external fonts that are installed appear in the **Installed Fonts** window. Select the fonts that you want to remove, and then click **Remove**. The fonts are removed.
- 6 Click **OK** to close the **Font DIMM Installer** dialog box.

Installable Options

The items listed under **Installable Options** are printing options that you can install for use with your MFP. The following options are for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp:

- **Automatic Configuration**
- **Tray 5**
- **Duplex Unit** (PS only)
- **Accessory Output Bin**
- **HP Post Insertion Kit**
- **Punch Unit**
- **Printer Memory**
- **Printer Hard Disk**
- **Job Storage**
- **Mopier Mode**
- **PostScript Passthrough** (PS only)

Automatic Configuration

Use the **Device Settings** tab to tell the driver about the hardware configuration of the MFP. If bidirectional communication is enabled in a supported environment, set up this tab by selecting the **Update Now** setting in the Automatic Configuration setting. If your environment does not support bidirectional communication, the **Update Now** setting is unavailable, so you must manually configure the options on this tab. The default setting is **Off**.

Tray 5

This control specifies whether you have a high-capacity, 4,000-sheet **Tray 5** installed on your MFP. The default setting is **Not Installed**. In order to use **Tray 5**, you must use the drop-down menu to change this setting to **Installed**.

Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing) - PS only

Although this option appears only in the PS unidriver, the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp come with a duplex unit installed. This setting is enabled (**Installed**) by default.

Accessory Output Bin

Use this setting to indicate that an accessory output bin is installed on your MFP. The following settings are available:

- **Not Installed** (default)
- **HP 3000-Sheet Stapler/Stacker**
- **HP Multifunction Finisher**

When an accessory output bin is installed, you can configure the print driver to send printed pages to a particular output bin on the MFP. If you have the HP 3000-Sheet Stapler/Stacker or the HP Multifunction Finisher, you can also select stapling and folding options.

To select a default output bin, right-click the MFP icon in the **Printers** folder, select **Printer Preferences**, click the **Output** tab, and select the bin that you want to use. To select an output bin for each print job, click **Print** from the **File** menu of your software program, click **Properties**, click the **Output** tab, and then select the output bin that you want to use.

HP Post Insertion Kit

Select this option if the HP Post Insertion Kit is installed. This enables you to add blank or preprinted covers to your documents after they finish printing.

Punch Unit

Select this option if a punch kit is installed. Use the drop-down menu to select the type of punch unit that is installed.

MFP Memory

This option matches the setting to the amount of memory that is installed in the MFP. The driver generates ranges of memory that can be selected, up to the maximum that the MFP can accept. The driver can use this information to manage how the print driver uses the MFP memory.

Printer Hard Disk

When this option is enabled, the **Stored Job** option is enabled in the print driver. The **Stored Job** option allows you to store print jobs, and then print them later from the MFP control panel. The MFP comes with a hard disk installed.

Job Storage

Select this option to store print jobs on the MFP hard disk. The **Printer Hard Disk** option must be enabled to use this feature. Select **Installed** in the **Printer Hard Disk** drop-down menu.

Mopier Mode

The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job. Multiple-original printing (mopying) increases performance and reduces network traffic by transmitting the job to the MFP once, and then storing it in the MFP hard disk. The remainder of the copies are printed at the fastest speed. All documents that are printed in mopier mode can be created, controlled, managed, and finished from the computer, which eliminates the extra step of using a photocopier.

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp supports the transmit-once mopying feature because the MFP has an installed hard disk. The default **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Device Settings** tab is **Enabled**.

When you use the HP PCL 6 or PS unidriver, mopying is performed in one of two ways, either through the software or through the MFP hardware. When the mopier is enabled, mopying takes place through the MFP hardware by default. One copy of a multiple print job is transmitted once through the network to the MFP, together with a printer job language (PJM) command directing the printer to make the specified number of copies.

When you disable the mopier, you are not necessarily disabling mopying, which can still be performed by the driver through the software rather than the MFP hardware (the mopying path that is disabled when you change the **Mopy Mode** setting to **Disabled**). However, a multiple-copy print job sent with the mopier disabled loses the advantage of transmitting the print job once, since the print job is sent through the network as many times as the number of copies selected.

Mopier mode and collation

Mopying and collating print jobs are independent but closely related functions. Mopying, the ability to send original print jobs to the MFP, is performed by the print driver. Collating can be controlled by either the print driver or the document software application. The mopying mode is selected by default in the driver, and can be disabled by changing the **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Device Settings** tab to **Disabled**.

You can control collation through the print driver by selecting or clearing the **Collated** check box on the **Advanced** tab. You can clear the check box, which is available only when the **Copy Count** option is set to more than 1 copy, to allow the software application to control collation.

To receive uncollated multiple copies of a print job, you must clear the **Collated** check box *and* make sure that the software application collation feature is not selected.

The following table shows the relation between mopier mode settings and collation settings in the application and the driver. The first three columns show the settings; the last column, "Expected result", shows how a 3-page print job would appear.

Table 4-3. Driver Mopier mode and collation settings

Mopier mode	Application collation	Driver collation	Expected result
Disabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated

Table 4-3. Driver Mopier mode and collation settings (continued)

Mopier mode	Application collation	Driver collation	Expected result
Disabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated
Enabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Enabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated
Enabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated
Enabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated

PostScript Passthrough - PS only

PostScript Passthrough is enabled by default, and must be enabled for most print jobs. This option provides additional capabilities for some software programs when printing to a PostScript driver.

Options such as watermarks, n-up printing, and booklet printing might not print correctly from some software programs when **PostScript Passthrough** is enabled because such programs send PostScript information to the MFP that cannot be controlled by the driver. Other applications may print using these options without problems.

If you encounter problems while printing, select **Disabled** and print your document again. In some cases, disabling **PostScript Passthrough** might cause unexpected behavior in the software program.

5

Installing Windows printing-system components

Introduction

The information that follows discusses these topics:

- Supported Windows operating systems
- System requirements
- Font support
- General Windows installation instructions
- Detailed Windows installation instructions
- Setting a default printer

Supported Windows operating systems

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing-system software supports the following Windows operating systems:

- Windows 98
- Windows Me
- Windows NT 4.0 (parallel and networked only)
- Windows 2000 (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows XP Home Edition (32-bit)
- Windows XP Professional (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit)

If your computer is running a 64-bit Windows OS, you must install the corresponding 64-bit print driver. For instructions, see [Installing print drivers by using Add Printer](#).

Note

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp has not been tested with and does not support the Windows 3.1x or Windows 95 operating systems.

System requirements

The following are the system requirements for installing and using the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing-system software on each of the supported operating systems.

- Pentium (R) or compatible processor
- Minimum 16-color/grayscale display with 640-by-480 pixel resolution (video graphics array [VGA])
- Same amount of RAM as the minimum requirements for the operating system
- 93 MB of available hard-disk space (on the same partition as the operating system) for full installation
- Onboard parallel port or network connection

Font support

The following sections list the fonts that are included with Microsoft Windows software, and the fonts that are available on the CD-ROM that came with the MFP.

Basic fonts

Microsoft Windows software includes these basic fonts, which can be used with any HP printing product:

- Arial
- Courier New Italic
- Times New Roman Italic
- Arial Italic
- Courier New Bold
- Times New Roman Bold
- Arial Bold
- Courier New Bold Italic
- Times New Roman Bold Italic
- Arial Bold Italic
- Symbol
- Wingdings
- Courier New
- Times New Roman

Default fonts

The following default fonts are installed through a Typical Installation of the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing-system software.

Table 5-1. Default fonts

File name	Font name
ALBR85W.TTF	Albertus Extra Bold
ALBR55W.TTF	Albertus Medium
OLVR55W.TTF	Antique Olive
OLVR75W.TTF	Antique Olive Bold
OLVR56W.TTF	Antique Olive Italic
CGOR45W.TTF	CG Omega
CGOR65W.TTF	CG Omega Bold
CGOR66W.TTF	CG Omega Bold Italic
CGOR46W.TTF	CG Omega Italic
CGTR45W.TTF	CG Times
CGTR65W.TTF	CG Times Bold
CGTR66W.TTF	CG Times Bold Italic
CGTR46W.TTF	CG Times Italic
CLAR67W.TTF	Clarendon Condensed Bold
CORONET.TTF	Coronet
CPSR45W.TTF	CourierPS
CPSR65W.TTF	CourierPS Bold
CPSR66W.TTF	CourierPS Bold Oblique
CPSR46W.TTF	CourierPS Oblique
GARR45W.TTF	Garamond
GARR65W.TTF	Garamond Bold
GARR46W.TTF	Garamond Italic
GARR66W.TTF	Garamond Kursiv Halbfett
HELR45W.TTF	Helvetica (R)
HELR65W.TTF	Helvetica Bold
HELR66W.TTF	Helvetica Bold Oblique
HELR47W.TTF	Helvetica Narrow
HELR67W.TTF	Helvetica Narrow Bold
HELR68W.TTF	Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique
HELR48W.TTF	Helvetica Narrow Oblique
HELR46W.TTF	Helvetica Oblique
AVGR45W.TTF	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book
AVGR46W.TTF	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique

Table 5-1. Default fonts (continued)

File name	Font name
AVGR65W.TTF	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi
AVGR66W.TTF	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi Oblique
BOKR75W.TTF	ITC Bookman Demi
BOKR76W.TTF	ITC Bookman Demi Italic
BOKR35W.TTF	ITC Bookman Light
BOKR36W.TTF	ITC Bookman Light Italic
CHANC___.TTF	ITC Zapf Chancery Medium Italic
DINGS___.TTF	ITC Zapf Dingbats
LETR45W.TTF	Letter Gothic
LETR65W.TTF	Letter Gothic Bold
LETR46W.TTF	Letter Gothic Italic
MARIGOLD.TTF	Marigold
NCSR75W.TTF	New Century Schoolbook Bold
NCSR76W.TTF	New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic
NCSR56W.TTF	New Century Schoolbook Italic
NCSR55W.TTF	New Century Schoolbook Roman
PALR65W.TTF	Palatino Bold
PALR66W.TTF	Palatino Bold Italic
PALR46W.TTF	Palatino Italic
PALR45W.TTF	Palatino Roman
SYMPS___.TTF	SymbolPS
TIMR65W.TTF	Times* Bold
TIMR66W.TTF	Times Bold Italic
TIMR46W.TTF	Times Italic
TIMR45W.TTF	Times Roman
UNVR65W.TTF	Univers Bold
UNVR66W.TTF	Univers Bold Italic
UNVR67W.TTF	Univers Condensed Bold
UNVR68W.TTF	Univers Condensed Bold Italic
UNVR57W.TTF	Univers Condensed Medium
UNVR58W.TTF	Univers Condensed Medium Italic
UNVR55W.TTF	Univers Medium
UNVR56W.TTF	Univers Medium Italic

Ninety-two additional PostScript 3 emulation (PS) fonts are also available on the CD-ROM.

Table 5-2. Additional PS 3 fonts

File name	Font name
PS_12639.TTF	Albertus MT
PS_12640.TTF	Albertus MT Italic
PS_14530.TTF	Albertus MT Light
PS_11120.TTF	Antique Olive CompactPS
PS_11119.TTF	Antique Olive Roman
PS_11118.TTF	Antique Olive Roman Bold
PS_11846.TTF	Antique Olive Roman Italic
PS_24516.TTF	Apple Chancery Italic
PS_12704.TTF	Bodoni Poster
PS_14508.TTF	Bodoni PosterCompressed
PS_12581.TTF	BodoniPS
PS_12585.TTF	BodoniPS Bold
PS_12586.TTF	BodoniPS Bold Italic
PS_12582.TTF	BodoniPS Italic
PS_24517.TTF	Candid
PS_24518.TTF	Chicago
PS_14513.TTF	Clarendon Light
PS_10269.TTF	ClarendonPS
PS_12968.TTF	ClarendonPS Bold
PS_10369.TTF	Cooper Black
PS_10370.TTF	Cooper Black Italic
PS_14514.TTF	Copperplate32bc
PS_14515.TTF	Copperplate33bc
PS_10249.TTF	Coronet
PS_10267.TTF	Eurostile
PS_10268.TTF	Eurostile Bold
PS_14512.TTF	Eurostile Bold ExtendedTwo
PS_14511.TTF	Eurostile ExtendedTwo
PS_10267.TTF	Eurostile Medium
PS_24509.TTF	Geneva
PS_13872.TTF	GillSans
PS_13874.TTF	GillSans Bold

Table 5-2. Additional PS 3 fonts (continued)

File name	Font name
PS_13875.TTF	GillSans Bold Italic
PS_14053.TTF	GillSans Condensed
PS_14054.TTF	GillSans Condensed Bold
PS_14051.TTF	GillSans ExtraBold
PS_13873.TTF	GillSans Italic
PS_13870.TTF	GillSans Light
PS_13871.TTF	GillSans Light Italic
PS_12542.TTF	Goudy
PS_12544.TTF	Goudy Bold
PS_10695.TTF	Goudy Bold Italic
PS_12545.TTF	Goudy ExtraBold
PS_12543.TTF	Goudy Italic
PS_14526.TTF	Helvetica Condensed
PS_14528.TTF	Helvetica Condensed Bold
PS_14529.TTF	Helvetica Condensed Bold Italic
PS_14527.TTF	Helvetica Condensed Italic
PS_24519.TTF	Hoefler Text
PS_24521.TTF	Hoefler Text Black
PS_24522.TTF	Hoefler Text Black Italic
PS_24520.TTF	Hoefler Text Italic
PS_24523.TTF	Hoefler Text Ornaments
PS_14503.TTF	Joanna MT
PS_14505.TTF	Joanna MT Bold
PS_14506.TTF	Joanna MT Bold Italic
PS_14504.TTF	Joanna MT Italic
PS_13778.TTF	Letter Gothic Italic
PS_13777.TTF	Letter GothicPS
PS_13779.TTF	Letter GothicPS Bold
PS_13780.TTF	Letter GothicPS Bold Italic
PS_12675.TTF	Lubalin Graph
PS_12677.TTF	Lubalin Graph Bold
PS_12625.TTF	Lubalin Graph Bold Italic
PS_12623.TTF	Lubalin Graph Italic
PS_94073.TTF	Marigold

Table 5-2. Additional PS 3 fonts (continued)

File name	Font name
PS_14525.TTF	Mona Lisa Recut
PS_24524.TTF	Monaco
PS_24510.TTF	New York
PS_12506.TTF	Optima
PS_12510.TTF	Optima Bold
PS_12511.TTF	Optima Bold Italic
PS_12507.TTF	Optima Italic
PS_14072.TTF	Oxford Italic
PS_11546.TTF	Stempel Garamond Roman Italic
PS_11545.TTF	StempelGaramond Roman
PS_11547.TTF	StempelGaramond Roman Bold
PS_11548.TTF	StempelGaramond Roman Bold Italic
PS_14507.TTF	Taffy
PS_13501.TTF	Univers 45 Light
PS_14023.TTF	Univers 45 Light Bold
PS_14024.TTF	Univers 45 Light Bold Italic
PS_13502.TTF	Univers 45 Light Italic
PS_14030.TTF	Univers 47 Condensed Light Bold
PS_14040.TTF	Univers 47 CondensedLight Bold Italic
PS_14021.TTF	Univers 55
PS_14022.TTF	Univers 55 Italic
PS_14029.TTF	Univers 57 Condensed
PS_14039.TTF	Univers 57 Condensed Italic
PS_13548.TTF	Univers Extended Italic
PS_13547.TTF	Univers ExtendedPS
PS_14481.TTF	Univers ExtendedPS Bold Italic
PS_14480.TTF	Univers ExtendedPS Italic

Installation instructions

General installation for Windows 98, Me, NT 4.0, 2000, and XP

General installation instructions are similar for the Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, and Windows XP operating systems.

If the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp is connected through a file or print server, the printing-system software must first be installed on the server before being installed on any client systems. If the HP LaserJet printing-system software is not first installed on the server, then bidirectional communication, some driver autoconfiguration methods, and the HP Toolbox are not available to the client systems.

For Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, and Windows XP, administrator rights on the system are necessary to install the software.

When the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing-system installer runs, the HP LaserJet uninstaller is always added to the system.

Installing from the printing-system CD-ROM

Follow these instructions to install the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing system from the CD-ROM that came with your MFP.

- 1 Close all programs that are open on your computer.
- 2 Insert the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.

Note

If your CD-ROM does not start automatically, click **Start**, click **Run**, and then browse to and double-click the SETUP.EXE file in the root directory of the CD-ROM.

- 3 Click **Install Printer** and follow the onscreen prompts.

Installing from a network or from downloaded files

Follow these instructions if you downloaded the files from the Web, or if you are installing the printing system files from a network. You might need to see your network administrator for the location of the printing-system software file.

- 1 Browse to the location of the SETUP.EXE file.
- 2 Double-click the SETUP.EXE file.
- 3 Click **Install Printer** and continue to follow the instructions until the MFP is installed. For detailed installation instructions, see [Detailed Windows installation](#).

Detailed Windows installation

This section provides information about the installation dialog box sequence for installing the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing-system software in Microsoft Windows environments. You can choose to install the software by using either a typical installation or a custom installation.

Typical Installation dialog box sequence

Note

The dialog boxes shown in this chapter appear in the Windows XP Pro installation sequence. The order and appearance of dialog boxes can vary among operating systems.

The typical installation includes the following components:

- HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp PCL 6 driver.
- Screen fonts.

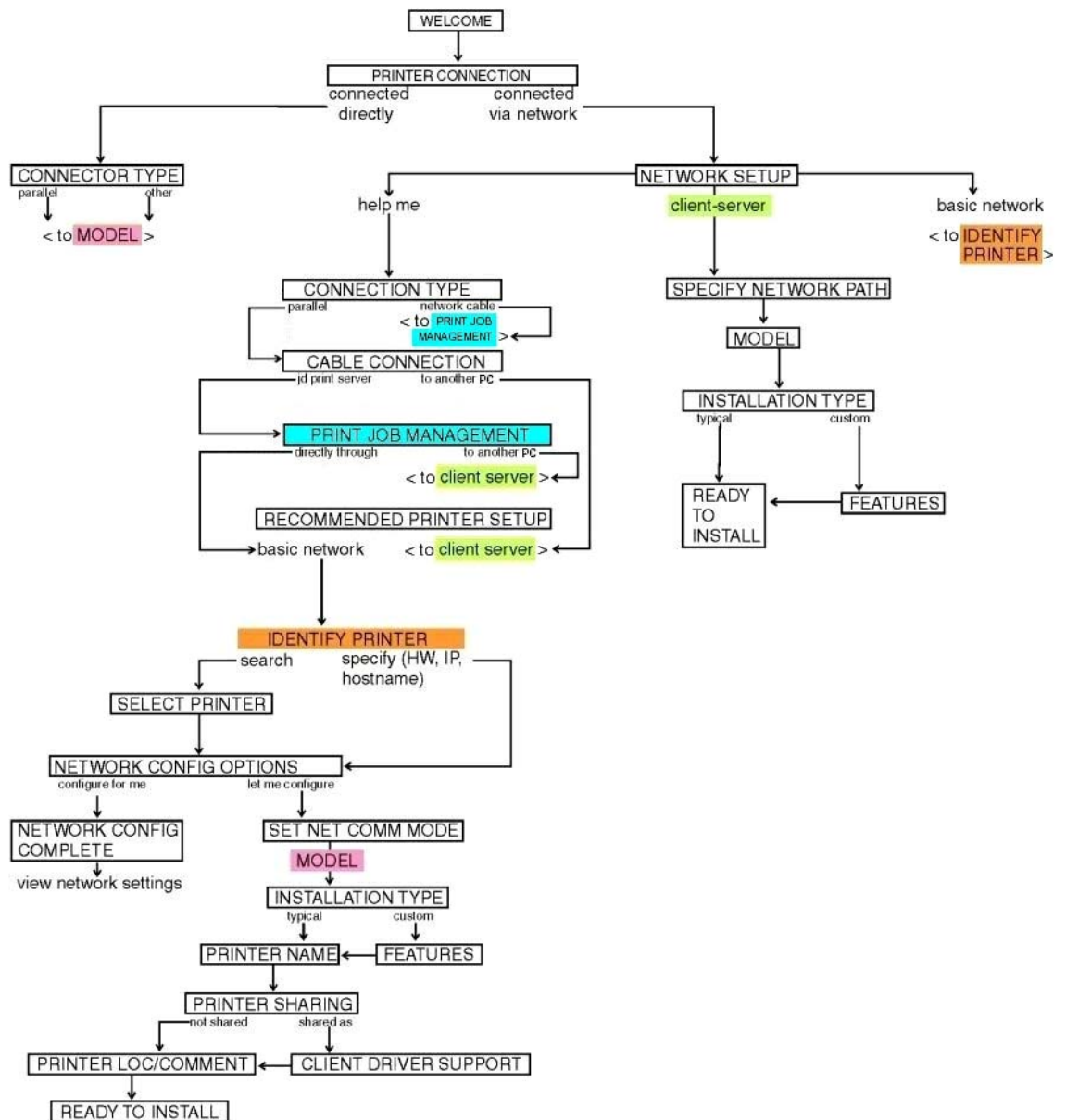


Figure 5-1. Installation path

Note

The components of a typical installation might vary from product to product.

When you select the **Install Printer** option from the HP LaserJet 9055mfp or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM, the **Choose Setup Language** dialog box appears.



Figure 5-2. Choose Setup Language dialog box

Note

The **Choose Setup Language** dialog box lists only the languages that are available on the HP LaserJet 9055mfp or HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM.

Table 5-3. Choose Setup Language dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Choose Setup Language	<p>Select the language for this installation from the choices below.</p> <p>(A drop-down menu lists available languages for installation.)</p>	<p>The installer automatically detects the language that your computer system uses and presents this selection as the default.</p> <p>You can select another language that is available on the CD-ROM by clicking the down arrow in the drop-down menu.</p> <p>Clicking OK initiates the printing system setup.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

Next, the **Preparing to Install** dialog box appears.

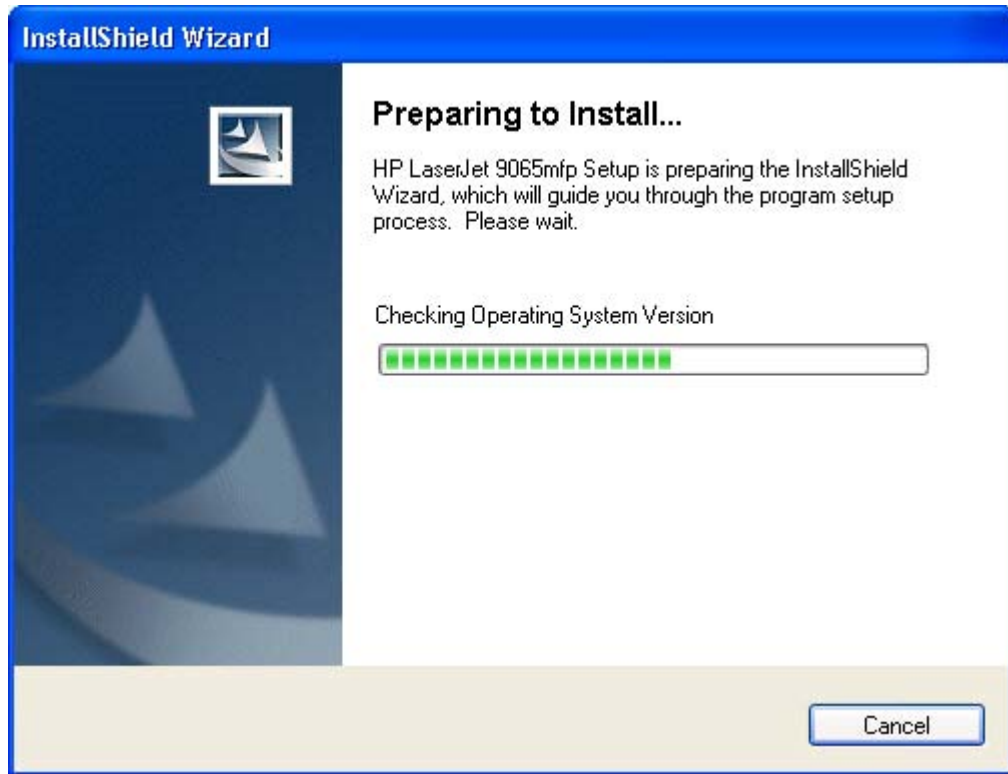


Figure 5-3. Preparing to Install dialog box

Note

While the **Preparing to Install** dialog box appears, the installer is decompressing files into the system TEMP directory. The elapsed time to complete this action depends upon the performance of your system.

Table 5-4. Preparing to Install dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Preparing to Install	HP LaserJet 9055mfp or HP LaserJet 9065mfp Setup is preparing the InstallShield Wizard, which will guide you through the program setup process. Please wait.	Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.

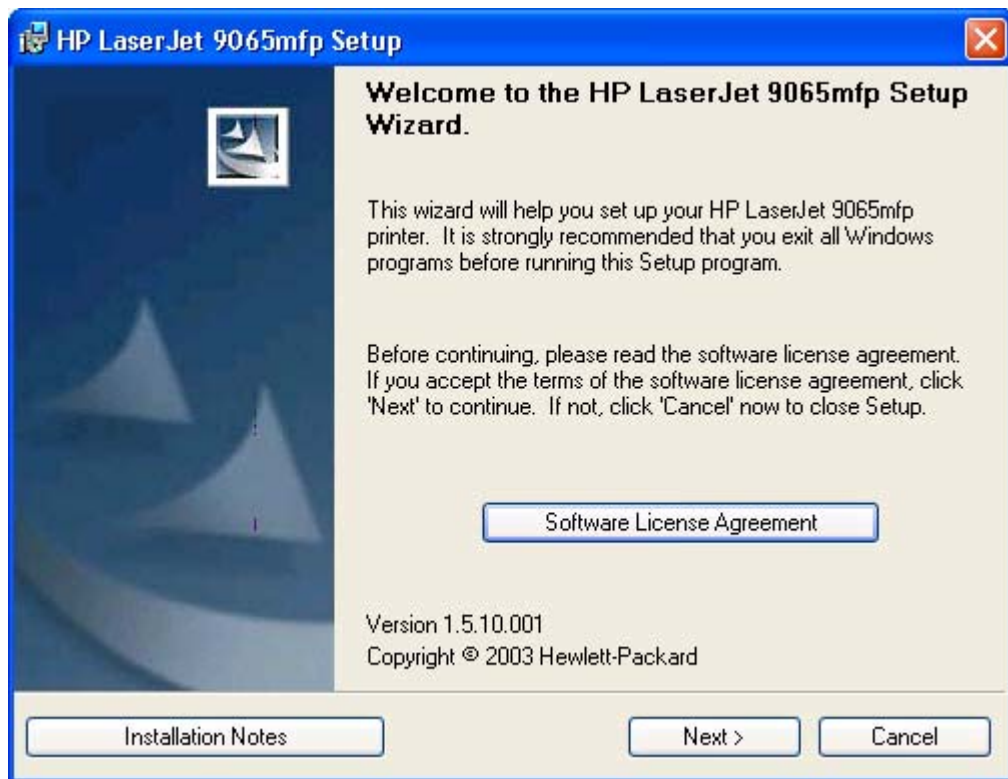


Figure 5-4. Welcome dialog box

Table 5-5. Welcome dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
<p>Welcome to the HP LaserJet 9055mfp or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp Setup Wizard</p>	<p>This wizard will help you set up your HP LaserJet 9055mfp or HP LaserJet 9065mfp. It is strongly recommend that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program.</p> <p>Before continuing, please read the software license agreement. If you accept the terms of the software license agreement, click 'Next' to continue. If not, click 'Cancel' now to close Setup.</p> <p>Copyright Hewlett-Packard</p>	<p>Clicking Software License Agreement takes you to the HP Software License Agreement dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Installation Notes opens the file LJ9055_INSTALL_NOTES_ENWW.RTF or LJ9065_INSTALL_NOTES_ENWW.RTF</p> <p>Clicking Next takes you to the Type of Connection dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

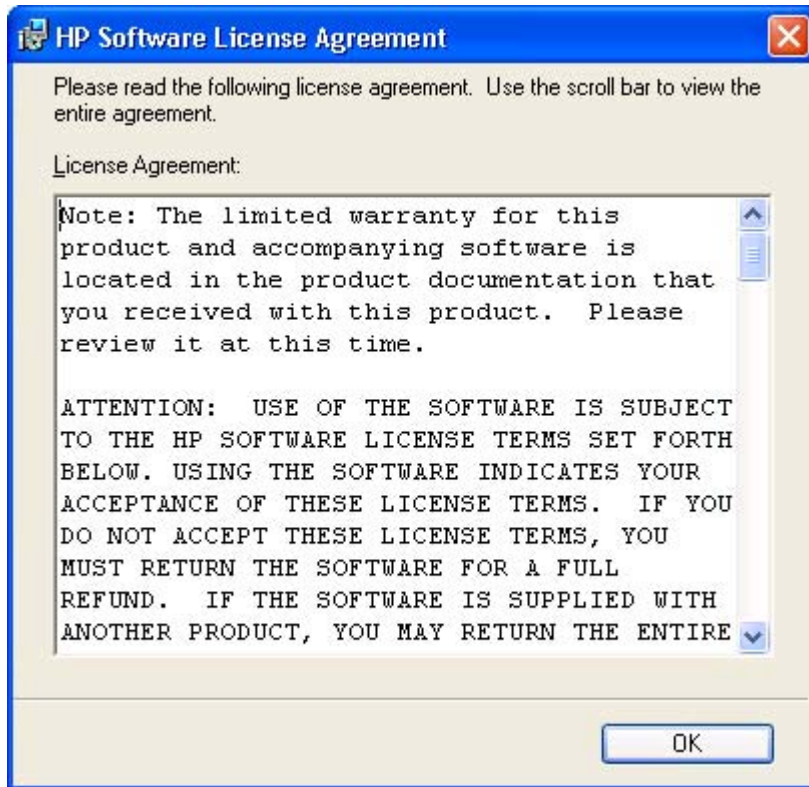


Figure 5-5. HP Software License Agreement dialog box

Table 5-6. HP Software License Agreement dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
HP Software License Agreement	Please read the following license agreement. Use the scroll bar to view the entire agreement. License Agreement: (Scrolling fields with text of license agreement) Note: The limited warranty for this product and accompanying software is located in the product documentation that you received with this product. Please review it at this time.	Clicking OK takes you back to the Welcome dialog box.

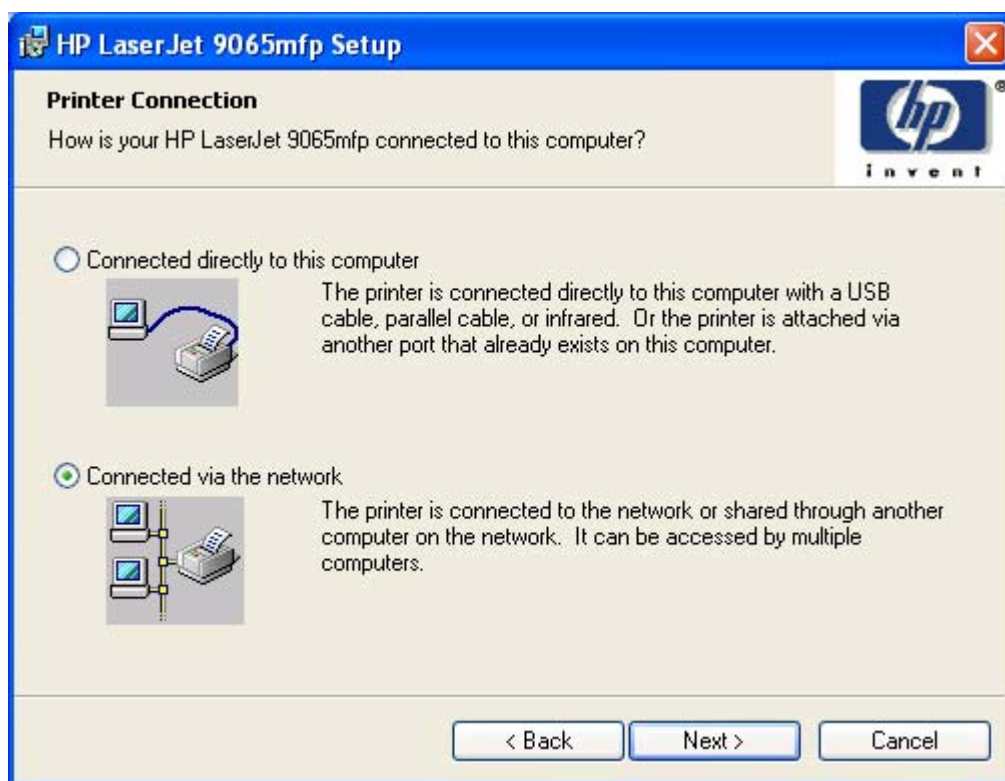


Figure 5-6. Printer Connection dialog box

Table 5-7. Printer Connection dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Printer Connection	<p>How is your HP LaserJet 9055mfp or HP LaserJet 9065mfp connected to this computer?</p> <p>Connected directly to this computer (option button): (default) The printer is connected directly to this computer with a parallel cable or infrared. Or the printer is attached via another port that already exists on this computer.</p> <p>Connected via the network (option button): The printer is connected to the network or shared through another computer on the network. It can be accessed by multiple computers.</p>	<p>Note</p> <p>The MFP does not support USB or infrared connections.</p> <p>If you select Connected directly to this computer (a "direct connection" using a parallel cable, universal serial bus cable, or infrared connection), clicking Next takes you to the Connection Type dialog box, and then to the Model dialog box. This is the default option.</p> <p>If you select Connected via the network, clicking Next takes you to the Network Setup dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Back returns you to the HP LaserJet 9055mfp or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp Welcome dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

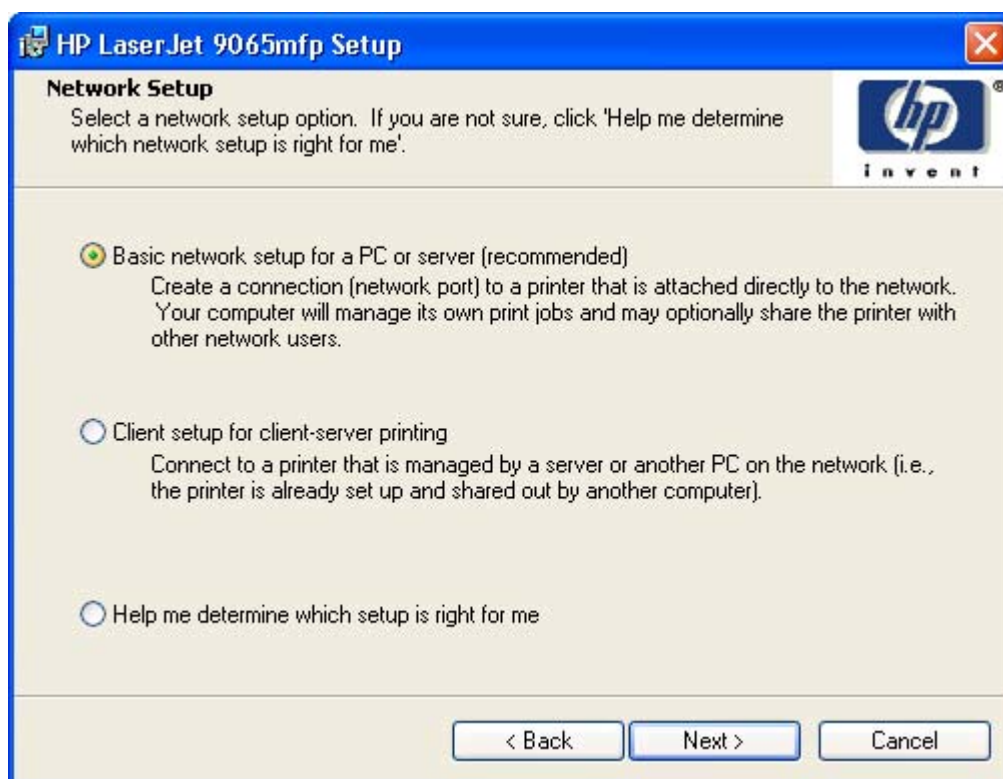


Figure 5-7. Network Setup dialog box

Table 5-8. Network Setup dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Network Setup	<p>Select a network setup option. If you are not sure, click 'Help me determine which network setup is right for me'.</p> <p>Basic network setup for a PC or server (recommended). Create a connection (network port) to a printer that is attached directly to the network. Your computer will manage its own print jobs and may optionally share the printer with other network users. (option button)</p> <p>Client setup for client-server printing. Connect to a printer that is managed by a server or another PC on the network (i.e., the printer is already set up and shared out by another computer). (option button)</p> <p>Help me determine which setup is right for me (option button)</p>	<p>If you select Basic network setup for a PC or server, clicking Next takes you to the Specify Network Path dialog box, and then to the Installation Type dialog box.</p> <p>If you select Client setup for client-server printing, clicking Next initiates a series of question dialog boxes that help you determine the best connection-type option to follow. This series begins with the Cable Type Selection dialog box.</p> <p>If you select Help me determine which setup is right for me, clicking Next takes you to the ConnectionType dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Back returns you to the Network Setup dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

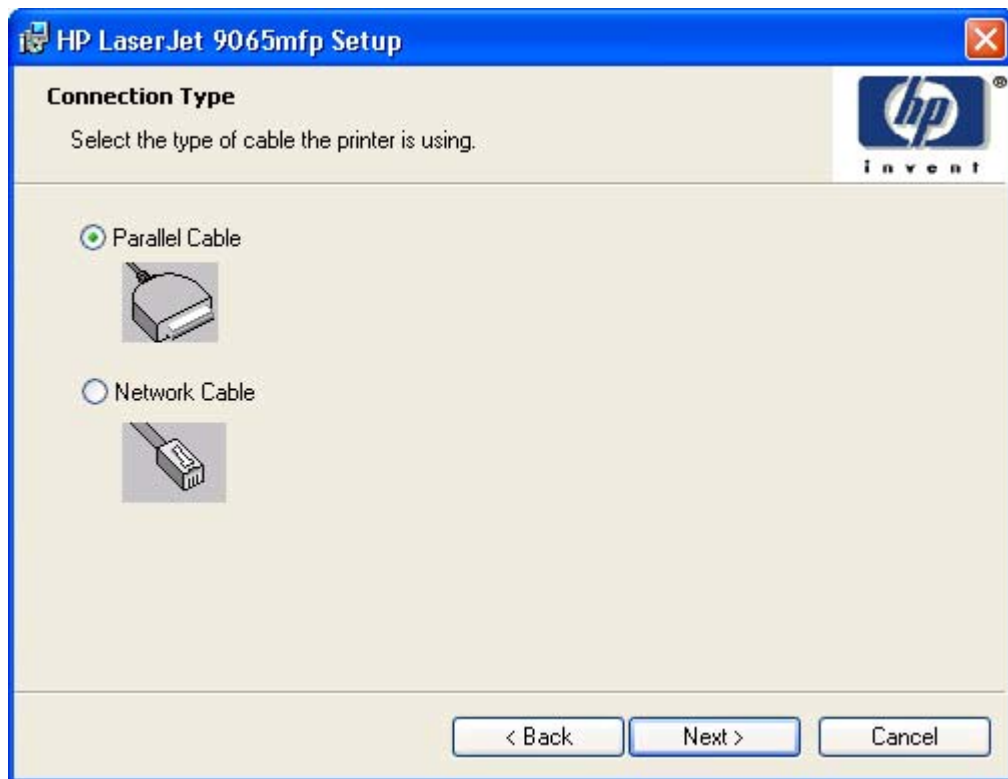


Figure 5-8. Connection type dialog box

Table 5-9. Connection type dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Connection Type	How is the printer connected to your computer? Parallel Cable (option button) Other (option button)	Clicking Parallel Cable and then clicking Next takes you to the Cable Connection dialog box. Clicking Other and then clicking Next takes you to the Print Job Management dialog box. Clicking Back takes you to the either the Print Job Management dialog box or the Cable Connection dialog box, depending on your previous selections. Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.

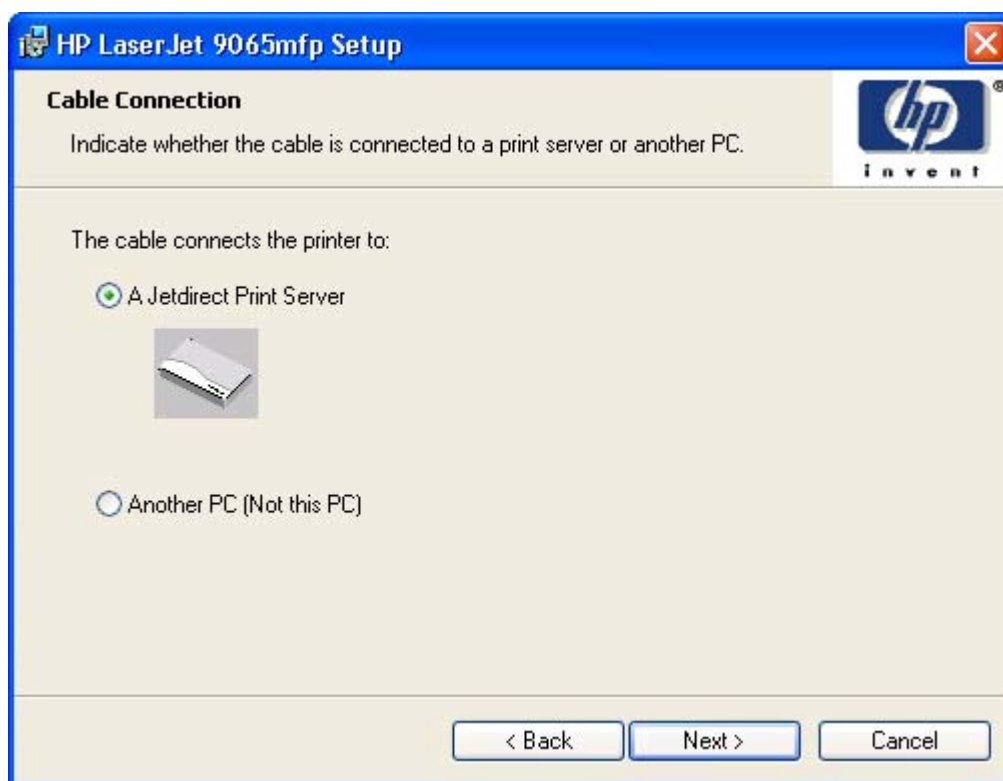


Figure 5-9. Cable Connection dialog box

Table 5-10. Cable Connection dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Cable Connection	<p>Indicate whether the cable is connected to a print server or another PC.</p> <p>The cable connects the printer to:</p> <p>A Jetdirect Print Server (option button)</p> <p>Another PC (not this PC) (option button)</p>	<p>Clicking A Jetdirect Print Server, and then clicking Next takes you to the Print Job Management dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Another PC (not this PC), and then Next takes you to the Recommended Network Setup for client-server printing dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Back takes you to the Connection Type dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

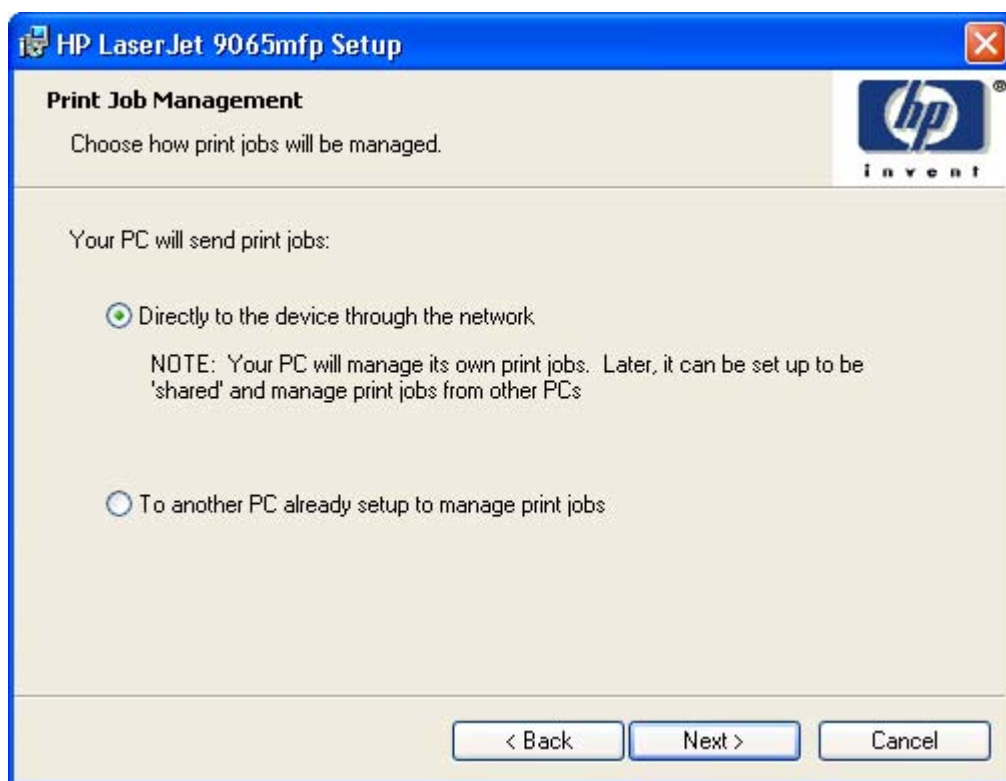


Figure 5-10. Print Job Management dialog box

Table 5-11. Print Job Management dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Print Job Management	<p>Choose how print jobs will be managed.</p> <p>Your PC will send print jobs:</p> <p>Directly to the device through the network (option button)</p> <p>NOTE: Your PC will manage its own print jobs. Later, it can be set up to be 'shared' and manage print jobs from other PCs.</p> <p>To another PC already setup to manage print jobs (option button)</p>	<p>Clicking either selection takes you to the Recommended Network Setup dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

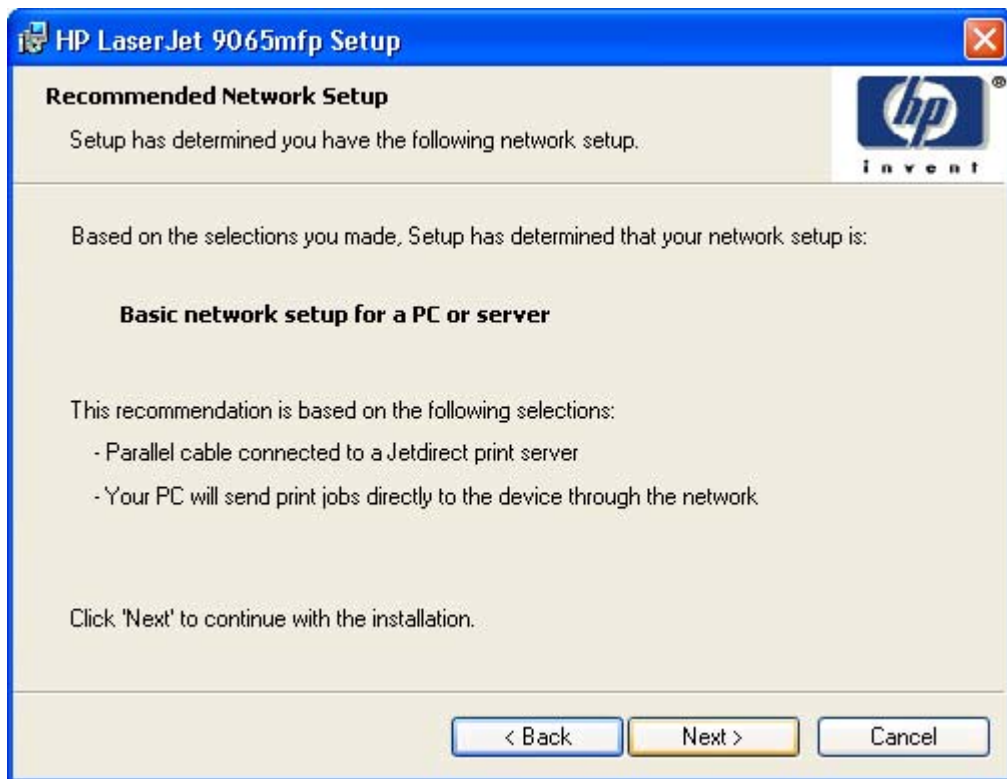


Figure 5-11. Recommended Network Setup dialog box

Table 5-12. Recommended Network Setup dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Recommended Network Setup	<p>Setup has determined you have the following network setup.</p> <p>Based on the selections you made, Setup has determined that your network setup is:</p> <p>Basic network setup for a PC or server</p> <p>This recommendation is based on the following selections:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Parallel cable connected to a Jetdirect print server - Your PC will send print jobs directly to the device through the network <p>Click 'Next' to continue with the installation.</p>	<p>Clicking Next takes you to the Identify Printer dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Back takes you to either the Cable Connection dialog box or the Network Setup dialog box, depending on the option you selected in the previous dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

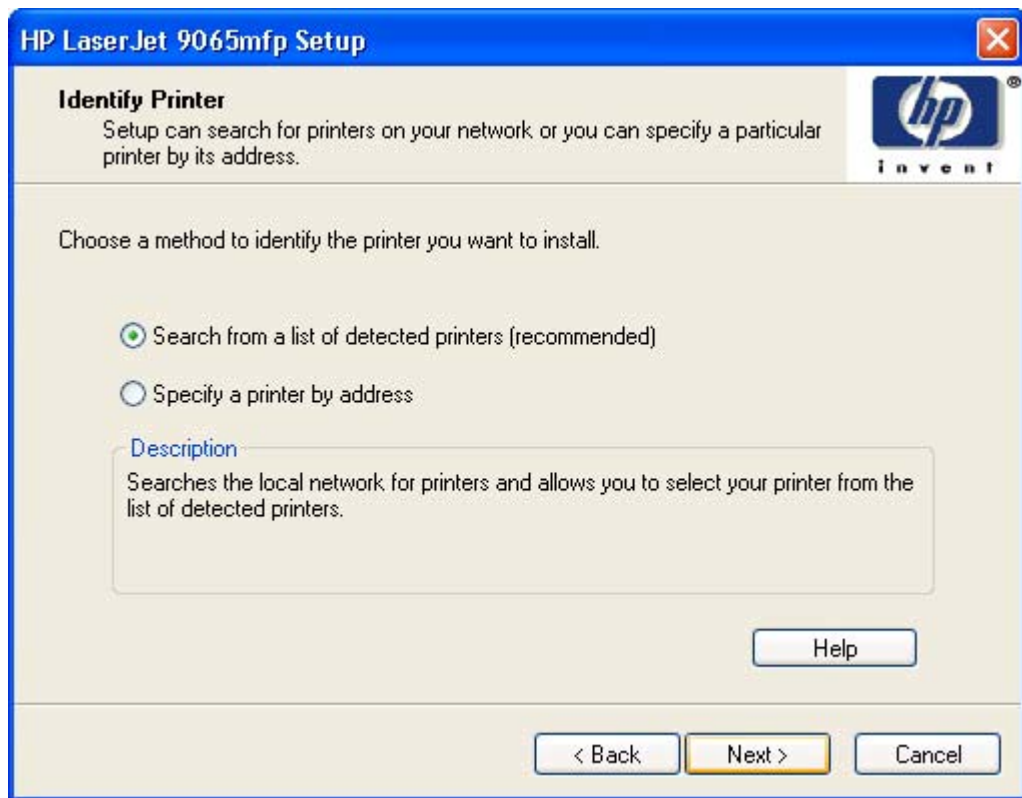


Figure 5-12. Identify Printer dialog box

Table 5-13. Identify Printer dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Identify Printer	<p>Setup can search for printers on your network or you can specify a particular printer by its address.</p> <p>Choose a method to identify the printer you want to install.</p> <p>Search from a list of detected printers (recommended) (default option button)</p> <p>Specify a printer by address (option button)</p> <p>Description: A text box contains the description of the selected feature.</p>	<p>Clicking Help takes you to context-sensitive HTML help.</p> <p>Clicking Search from a list of detected printers (recommended), and then clicking Next takes you to the Select Printer dialog box. The search returns a list of networked products.</p> <p>Clicking Specify a printer by address and then clicking Next takes you to the Specify Printer dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

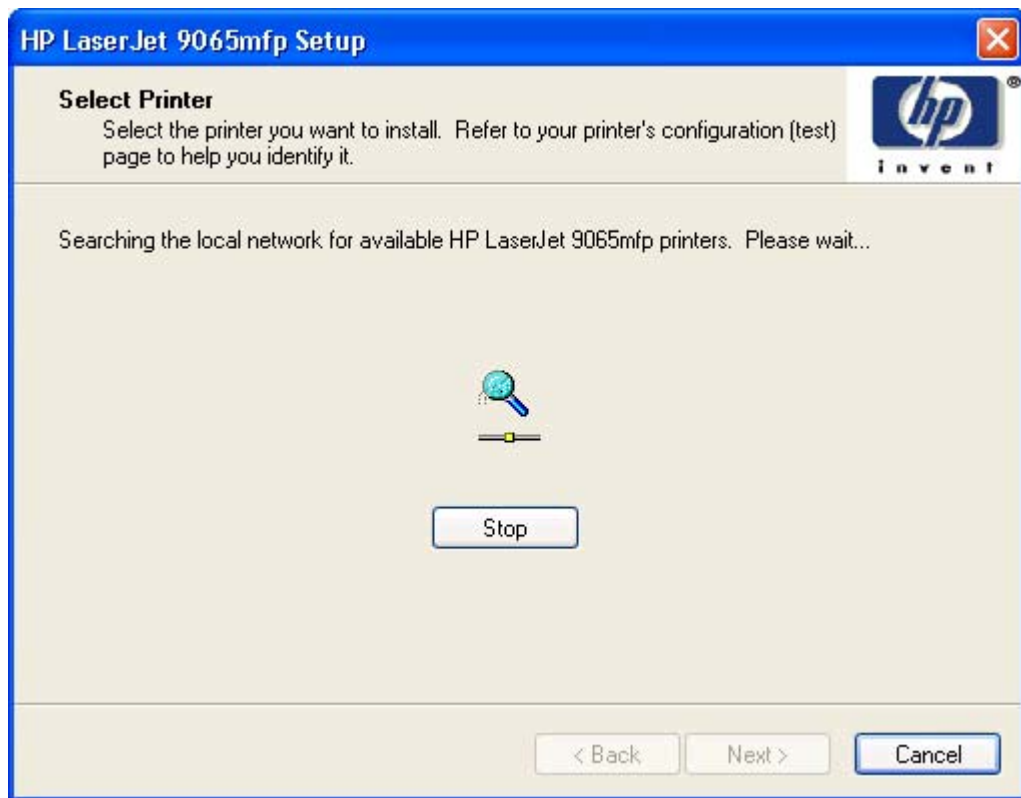


Figure 5-13. Select Printer (1 of 2) dialog box

After the search is complete, the following dialog box is displayed.

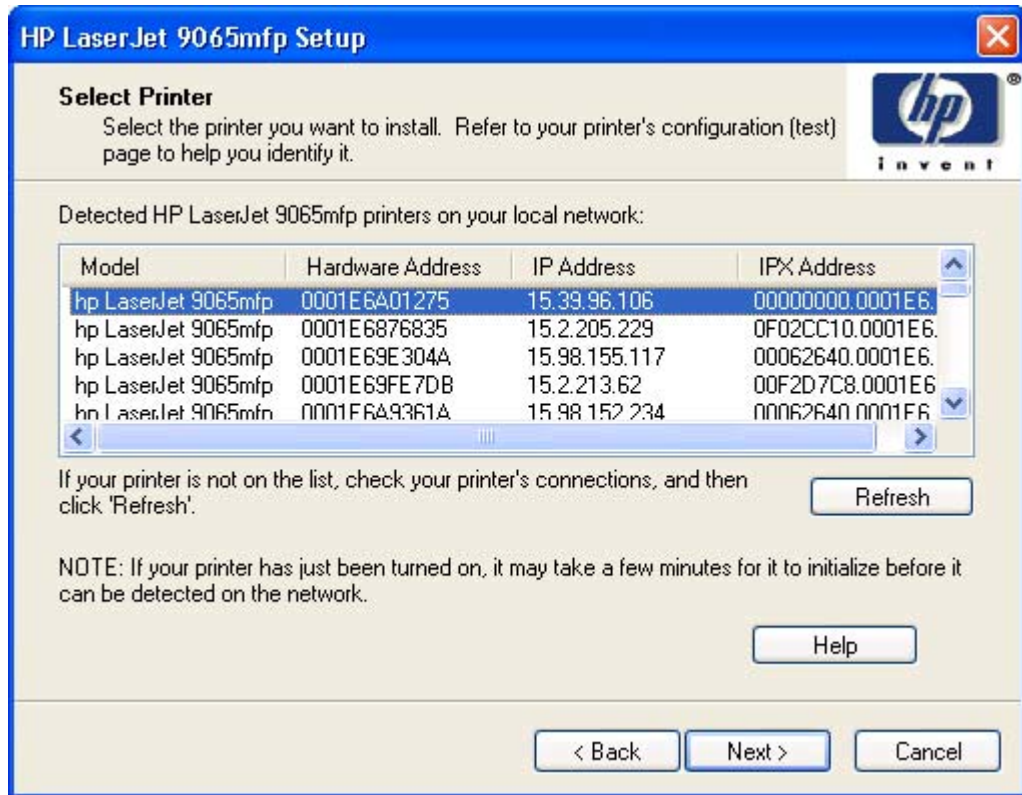


Figure 5-14. Select Printer (2 of 2) dialog box

Table 5-14. Select Printer dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Select Printer	<p>(1 of 2) Select the printer you want to install. Refer to your printer's configuration (test) page to help you identify it.</p> <p>Searching the local network for available HP LaserJet 9055mfp or HP LaserJet 9065mfp printers. Please wait...</p> <p>(2 of 2) Select the printer you want to install. Refer to your printer's configuration (test) page to help you identify it.</p> <p>Detected HP LaserJet 9055mfp or HP LaserJet 9065mfp printers on your local network: (A text box appears listing hardware addresses, IP addresses, and IPX addresses of printers on the network.)</p> <p>If your printer is not on the list, check your printer's connections, and then click 'Refresh'. (This action repeats the search process.)</p> <p>NOTE: If your printer has just been turned on, it may take a few minutes for it to initialize before it can be detected on the network.</p>	<p>Clicking Help takes you to context sensitive HTML help.</p> <p>Clicking Back takes you to the Identify Printer dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Next takes you to the Network Configuration Options dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

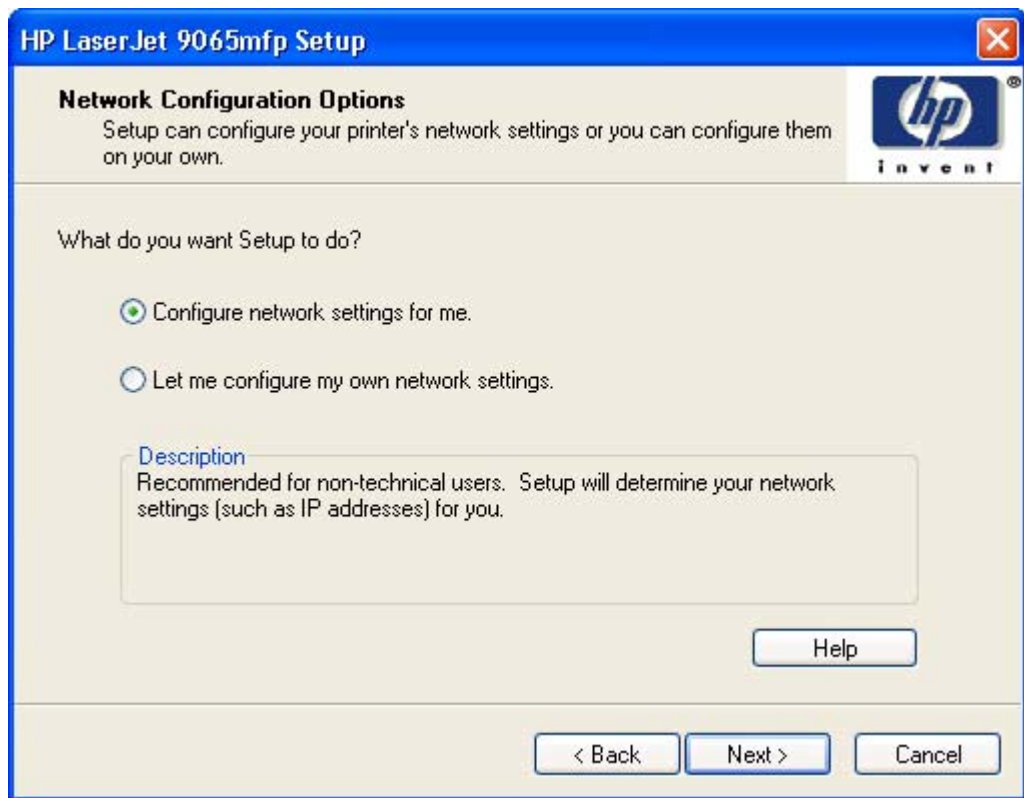


Figure 5-15. Network Configuration Options dialog box

Table 5-15. Network Configuration Options dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
<p>Network Configuration Options</p>	<p>Setup can configure your printer's network settings or you can configure them on you own. What do you want Setup to do?</p> <p>Configure network setting for me (option button)</p> <p>Let me configure my own network settings (option button).</p> <p>Description: A text box contains the description of the selected option.</p>	<p>Clicking Configure network setting for me, and then clicking Next takes you to the Network Configuration Complete dialog box. In that dialog box, clicking View Network Settings takes you to a list of network settings. Then, clicking OK returns you to the Network Configuration Complete dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Let me configure my own network settings, and then clicking Next takes you to the Set Network Communication Mode dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Help takes you to context-sensitive HTML Help.</p> <p>Clicking Back takes you to the Network Configuration Options dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

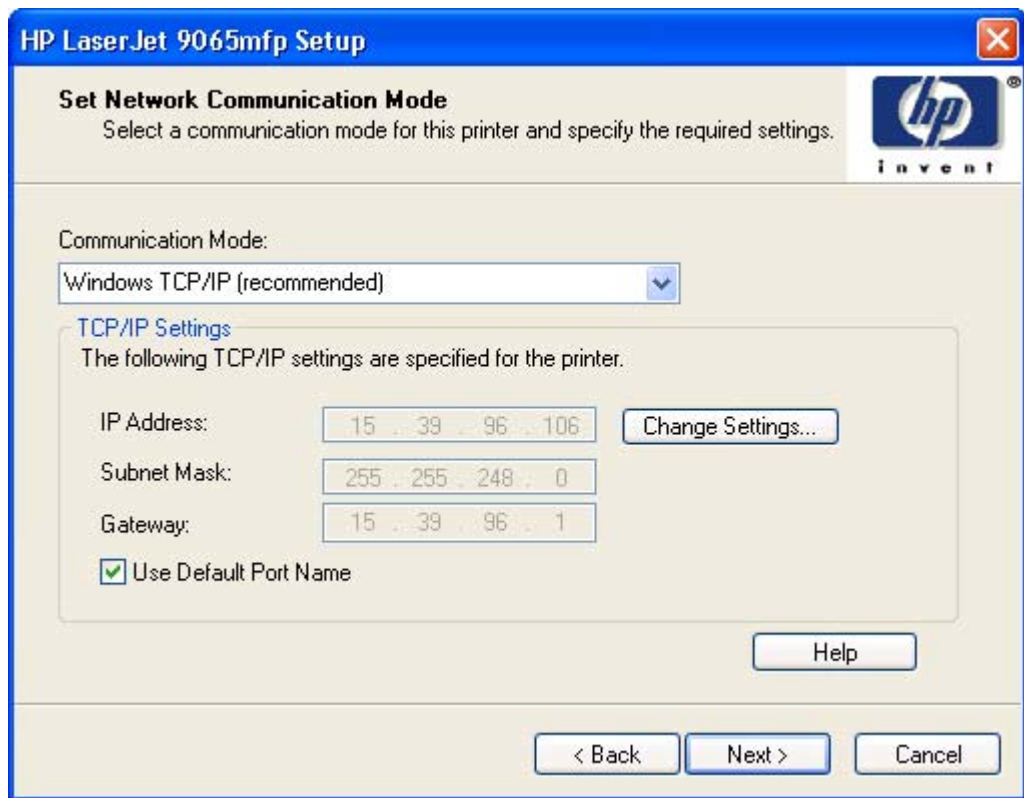


Figure 5-16. Set Network Communication Mode dialog box

Table 5-16. Set Network Communication Mode dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
<p>Set Network Communication Mode</p>	<p>Select a communication mode for this printer and specify the required settings.</p> <p>Communication Mode: (A drop-down menu displays Windows TCP/IP (recommended))</p> <p>TCP/IP Settings</p> <p>The following TCP/IP settings are specified for the printer.</p> <p>IP Address: (A text box contains the printer IP address.)</p> <p>Subnet Mask: (A text box contains the printer subnet mask.)</p> <p>Gateway: (A text box displays the printer gateway.)</p> <p>Use Default Port Name (check box)</p>	<p>Clicking Change Settings... takes you to the Change Settings dialog box, where you can type a different IP Address, Subnet Mask, and Gateway address. Clicking OK returns you to the Set Network Communications dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Next takes you to the Model dialog box or the Network Configuration Complete dialog box, depending on your previous selections.</p> <p>Clicking Back returns you to the Select Port dialog box when you are performing a direct connection installation, or to the Set Network Communication Mode dialog box when you are performing a network installation.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

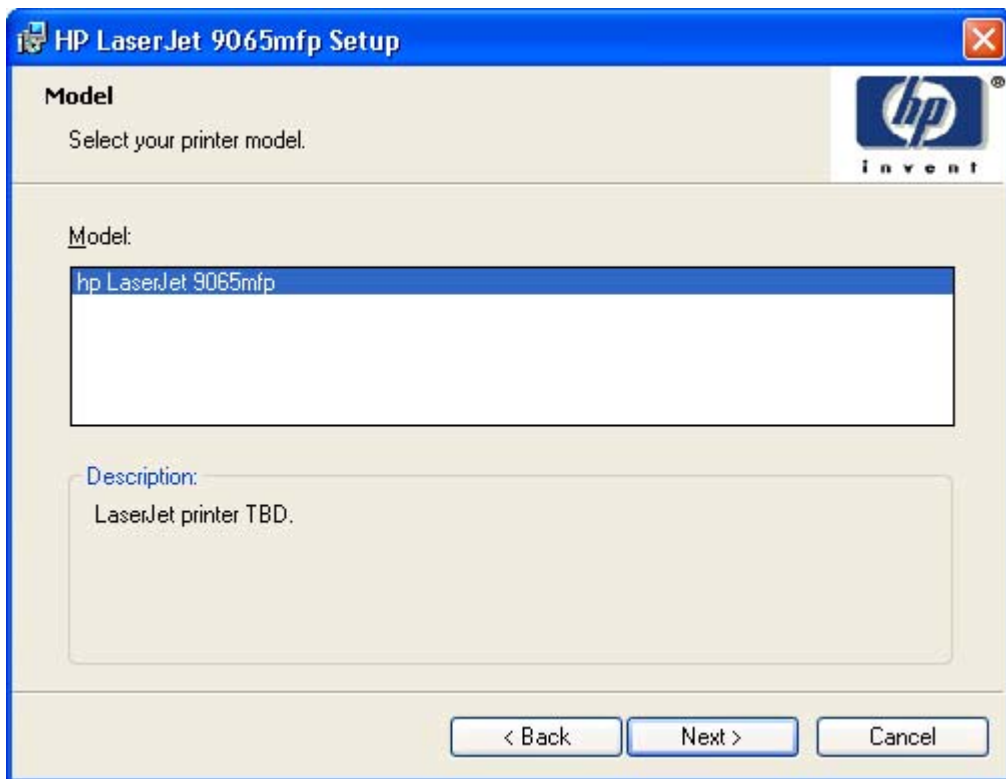


Figure 5-17.

Model dialog box

Table 5-17. Model dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Model	Select your printer model. (A list box shows available models.) A text box contains the description of the selected printer.	Clicking Back takes you to the Connection Type dialog box. Clicking Next takes you to the Installation Type dialog box. Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.

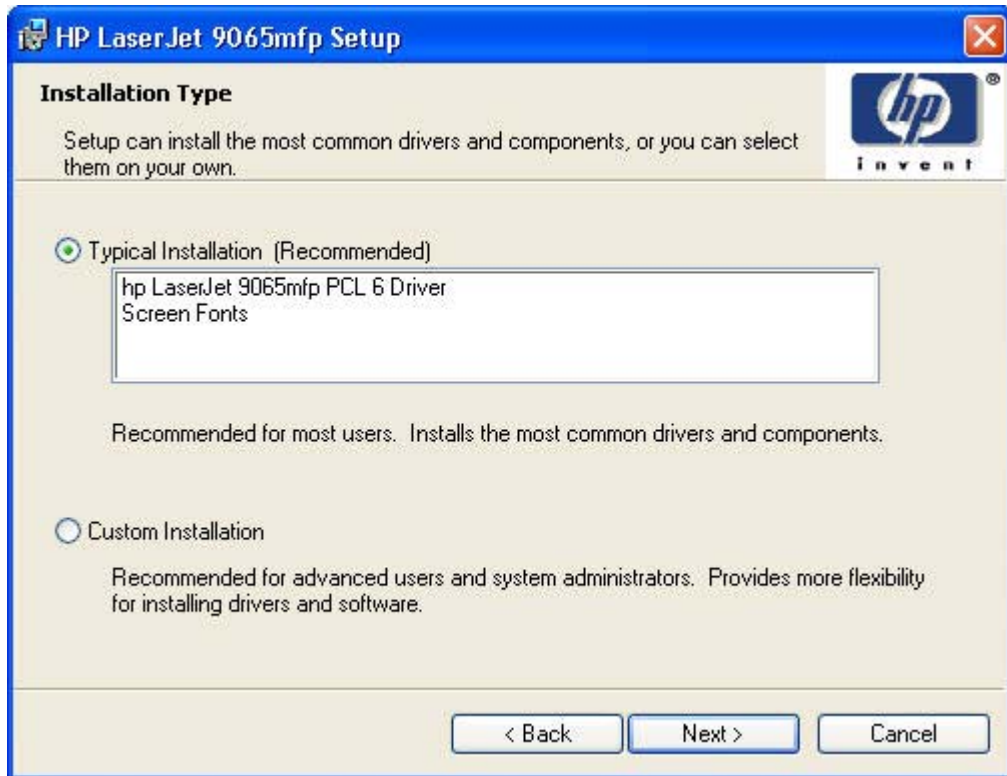


Figure 5-18. Installation Type dialog box

Note

The components of a Typical Installation might vary from product to product.

Table 5-18. Installation Type dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Installation Type	<p>Setup can install the most common drivers and components, or you can select them on your own.</p> <p>Typical Installation (Recommended) (default option button) (A text box lists components of typical installation: HP LaserJet 9055mfp or HP LaserJet 9065mfp PCL 6 Driver, and Screen Fonts)</p> <p>Recommended for most users. Installs the most common drivers and components.</p> <p>Custom Installation (option button) Recommended for advanced users and system administrators. Provides more flexibility for installing drivers and software.</p>	<p>Clicking Typical Installation (Recommended) and then clicking Next, takes you to the Printer Name dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Custom Installation and then clicking Next, opens the Features dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

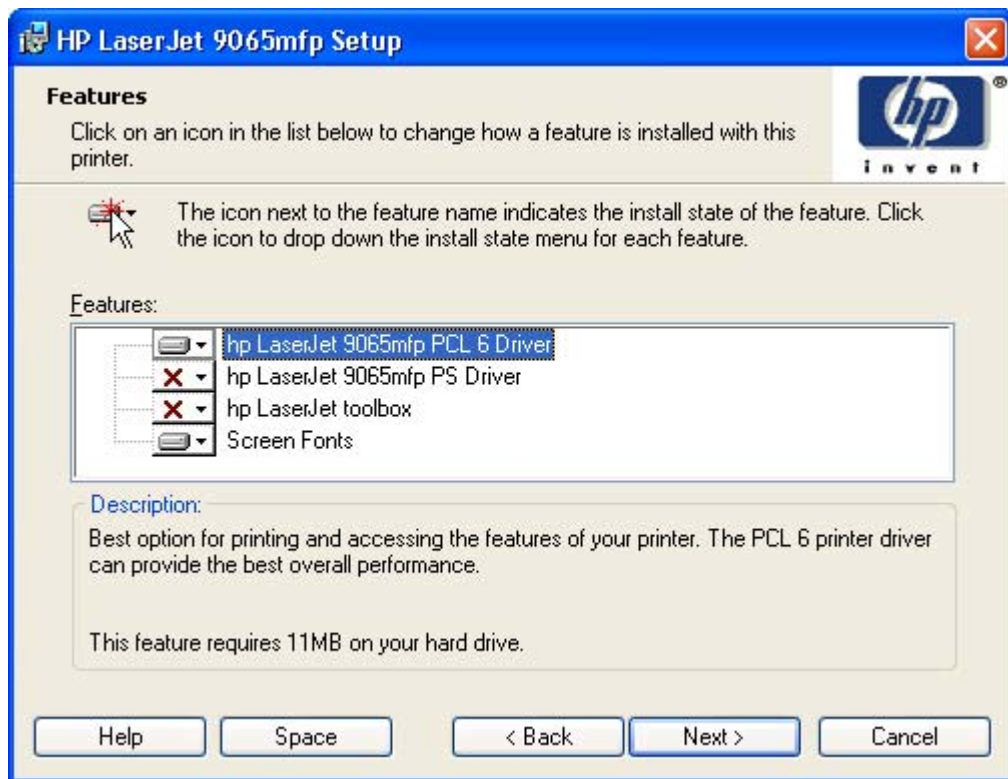


Figure 5-19. Features dialog box

Note

When you do not share the MFP, additional driver support is not available. If you share the MFP on Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 operating systems by selecting **Share as**, you must type a name. You can also provide additional print driver support for other operating systems.

Table 5-19. Features dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Features	<p>Click on an icon in the list below to change how a feature is installed with this printer.</p> <p>The icon next to the feature name indicates the install state of the feature. Click the icon to drop down the install state menu for each feature.</p> <p>Features:</p> <p>HP LaserJet 9055mfp or HP LaserJet 9065mfp PCL 6 Driver</p> <p>HP LaserJet 9055mfp or HP LaserJet 9065mfp PS Driver</p> <p>hp LaserJet toolbox</p> <p>Screen Fonts</p> <p>Description: (A text box contains the description of the selected feature, including driver suggestions and space requirements.)</p>	<p>A red X in the icon indicates that the feature is not installed. The installed icon appears when you select an install state for that feature.</p> <hr/> <p>Note</p> <p>Adobe Acrobat Reader appears as an option only if it has not been installed previously.</p> <hr/> <p>Click Space to view available space on your hard drive.</p> <p>Click Back to view the Installation Type dialog box, with Custom Installation selected.</p> <p>Click Next to view the Printer Name dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

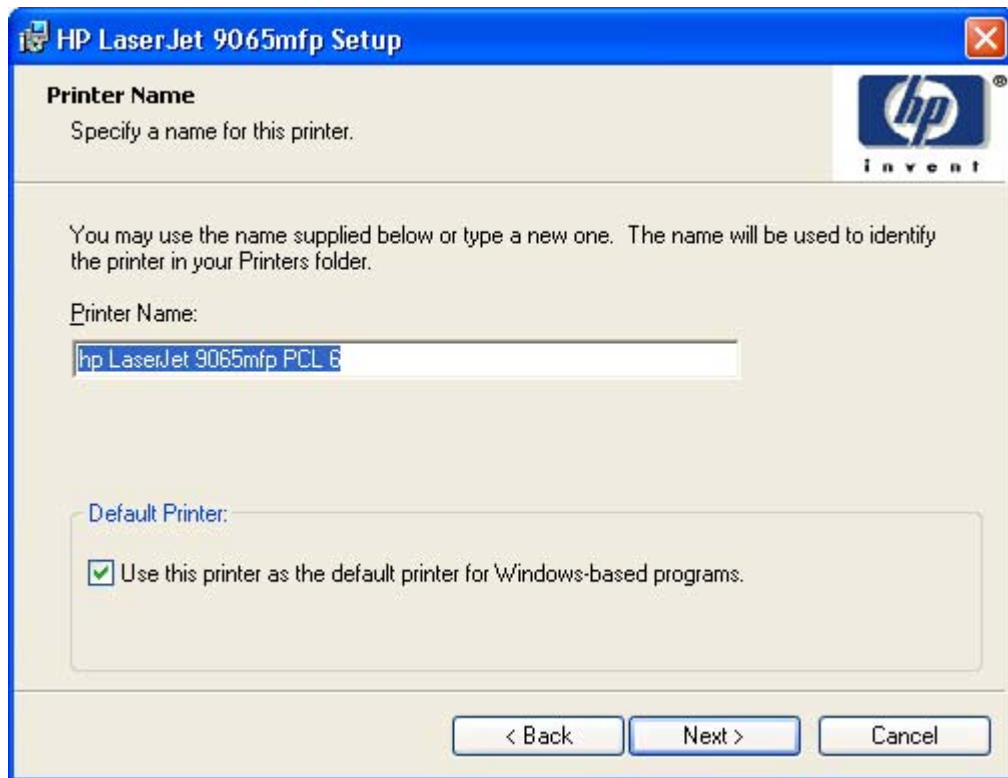


Figure 5-20. Printer Name dialog box

Table 5-20. Printer Name dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Printer Name	<p>Specify a name for this printer.</p> <p>You may use the name supplied below or type a new one. The name will be used to identify the printer in your Printers folder.</p> <p>Printer Name: (A list box contains available printer names.)</p> <p>Default printer: Use this printer as the default printer for Windows-based programs. (check box)</p>	<p>Clicking Back takes you to either the Installation Type dialog box or the Features dialog box, depending on your previous selections.</p> <p>Clicking Next takes you to the Printer Sharing dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

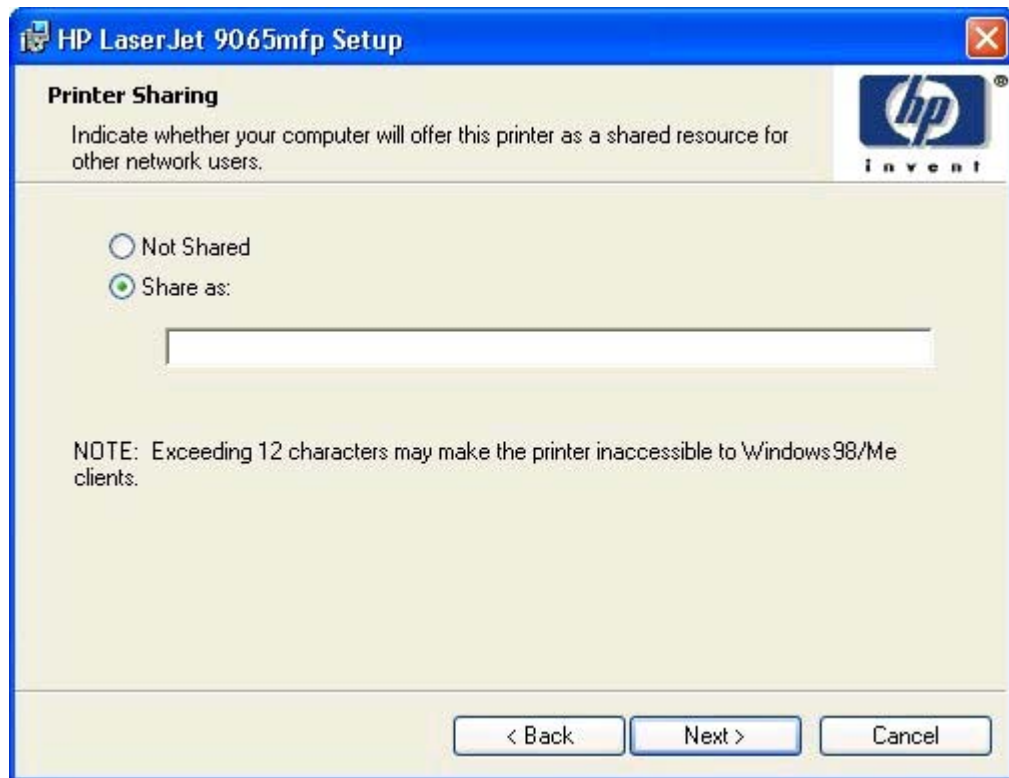


Figure 5-21. Printer Sharing Setup dialog box

Table 5-21. Printer Sharing dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
<p>Printer Sharing</p>	<p>Indicate whether your computer will offer this printer as a shared resource for other network users.</p> <p>Not shared (option button)</p> <p>Share as: (option button) (A text box appears where you can type a printer share name.)</p> <p>NOTE: Exceeding 12 characters may make the printer inaccessible to Windows 98/Me clients.</p>	<hr/> <p>Note</p> <p>The Printer Sharing dialog box does not appear if your computer is running Windows 98 or Windows Me.</p> <hr/> <p>Clicking Not shared and then clicking Next takes you to the Printer Location and Comment dialog box or the Installation Type dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Share as: causes the text box to become active. Typing the share name and then clicking Next takes you to the Client Driver and Support dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Back takes you to the Printer Name dialog box or the Installation Type dialog box, depending on your previous selections.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

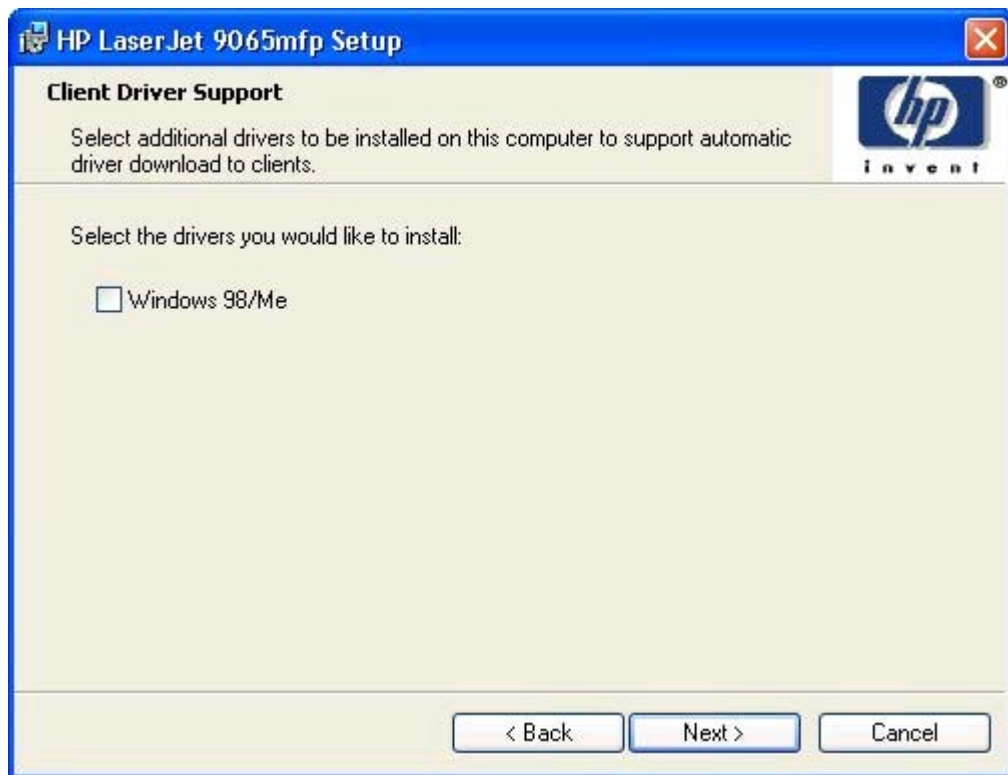


Figure 5-22. Client Driver Support dialog box

Table 5-22. Client Driver Support dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Client Driver Support	Select additional drivers to be installed on this computer to support automatic driver download to clients. Select the drivers you would like to install: Windows 98/Me (check box)	The Client Driver Support dialog box does not appear if the computer is running Windows 98 or Windows Me. <hr/> Note Adobe Acrobat Reader appears as an option only if it has not been installed previously. <hr/> Clicking Back takes you to the Printer Sharing dialog box. Clicking Next takes you to the Printer Location and Comment dialog box. Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.

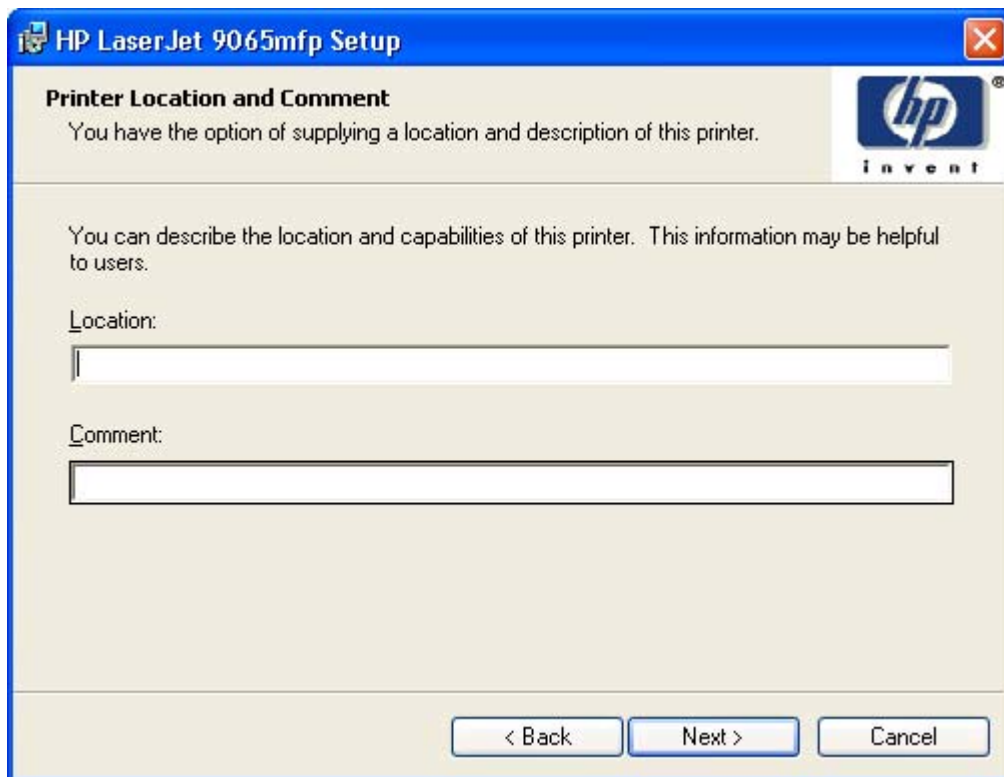


Figure 5-23.

Printer Location and Comment dialog box

Table 5-23. Printer Location and Comment dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Printer Location and Comment	<p>You can describe the location and capabilities of this printer. This information may be helpful to users.</p> <p>Location: (text box)</p> <p>Comment: (text box)</p>	<p>In the Location text box, you can type the physical location of the MFP. In the Comment text box, you can type any additional information that might be helpful to users.</p> <p>Clicking Next takes you to the Ready to Install dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Back takes you to the Printer Name dialog box or the Installation Type dialog box, depending on your previous selections.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

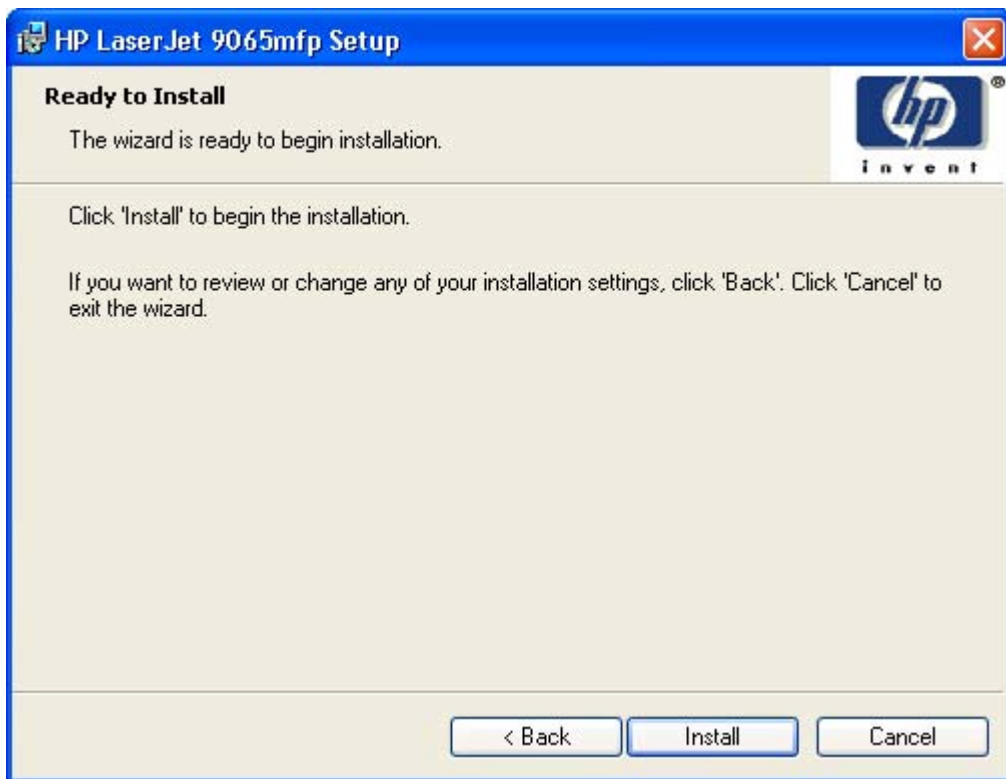


Figure 5-24. Ready to Install dialog box

Table 5-24. Ready to Install dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Ready to Install	The wizard is ready to begin installation. Click 'Install' to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any of your installation settings, click 'Back'. Click 'Cancel' to exit the wizard.	Clicking Install starts the installation process. Clicking Back takes you to the Printer Location and Comment dialog box. Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.

Custom Installation

The Custom Installation gives you the option of installing the following components:

- HP LaserJet 9055mfp and HP LaserJet 9065mfp PCL 6 Driver (for direct-connect and network installations)
- HP LaserJet 9055mfp and HP LaserJet 9065mfp PS Driver (for direct-connect and network installations)
- HP Toolbox (for network installations)

- Screen fonts
- Adobe Acrobat Reader

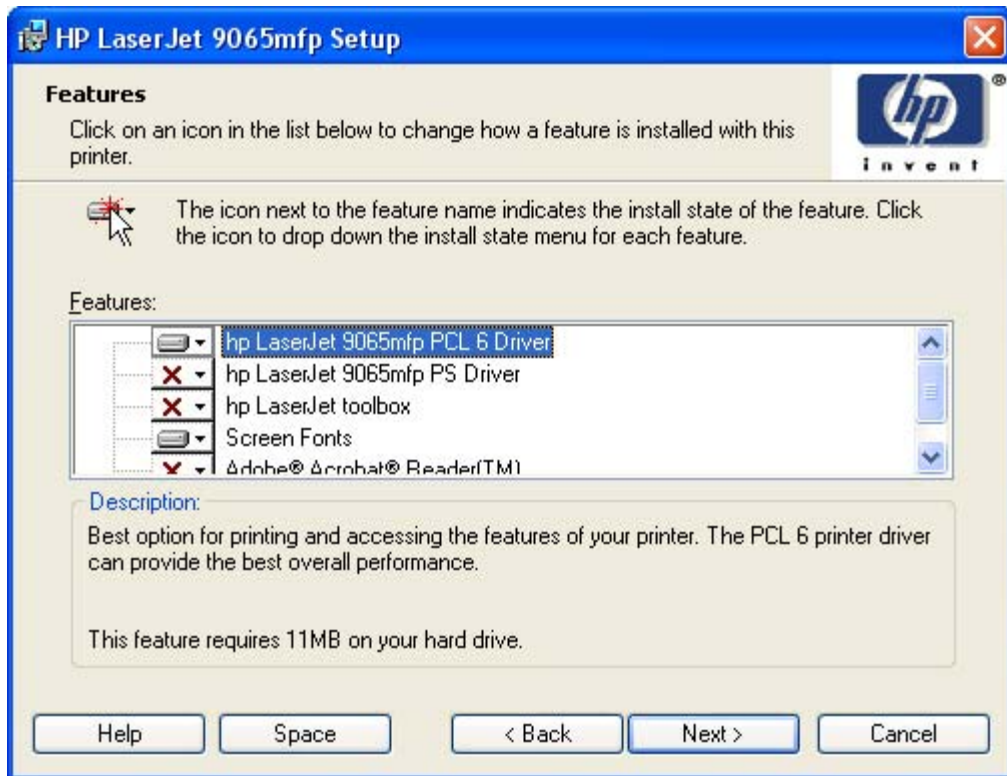


Figure 5-25. Features dialog box, Custom Installation

Note

The available features of a Custom Installation might vary from product to product. Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 computers running a terminal server do not support the HP Toolbox option. The appearance of the **Features** dialog box might vary, depending on MFP and connection type.

Table 5-25. Custom Installation dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Features	<p>Click on an icon in the list below to change how a feature is installed with this printer.</p> <p>Features: (list with check boxes)</p> <p>Description: (A text box contains information about the selected feature.)</p> <p>Space Required: (Specifies the disk space that is required to install components that are currently selected in list)</p>	<p>Clicking Next takes you to the Printer Name dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Back returns you to the Installation Type dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p> <hr/> <p>Note</p> <p>Custom Installation automatically selects the options that are available in the Typical Installation. You can also select from among the following components:</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● PCL 6 driver ● PS driver ● HP Toolbox ● Screen Fonts ● Adobe Acrobat Reader

Installing print drivers by using Add Printer

Use the following steps to install the print drivers by using the Add Printer feature of Windows.

- 1 Insert the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
- 2 Go to the **Add a printer** feature in Windows.
 In Windows XP, click **Start** on the desktop, and then click **Printers and Faxes**. The **Printers and Faxes** window appears. Click **Add a printer**. The **Add a printer** wizard screen appears.
 In Windows NT, Windows 9x, and Windows 2000, click **Start** on the desktop, click **Settings**, click **Printers and Faxes** and then click **Add a printer**. The **Add a printer** wizard screen appears.
- 3 Use the **Add a printer** wizard to find and connect to the MFP. The print drivers are loaded as a part of this process.

If your computer is running a 64-bit Windows OS, you must install the corresponding 64-bit print driver. 64-bit print drivers are included on the software CD-ROM. Use the following steps to install a print driver by using the Add Printer feature.

- 1 Insert the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
- 2 Click **Start** on the desktop, click **Settings**, click **Printers and Faxes** and then click **Add a printer**. The **Add a printer** wizard screen appears.
- 3 Use the **Add a printer** wizard to find and connect to the MFP. The print drivers are loaded as a part of this process.

- 4 Add a printer wizard process, select the **Have disk** option and navigate to one of the the following files on the software CD-ROM:
To install the PCL 6 driver, select \<language>\DRIVERS\WIN64_XP_S2003\PCL6\hpc9065m.inf
To install the PS driver, select \<language>\DRIVERS\WIN64_XP_S2003\PS\hpc9065n.inf
- 5 Complete the wizard steps. The print driver will be installed as part of the wizard process.

Installer Customization Wizard for Windows

The **Installer Customization Wizard** option allows administrators to customize the HP LaserJet 9055mfp and the HP LaserJet 9065mfp installer by pre-setting the installation options in a response file. To start the utility, click **installer customization wizard** on the main menu of the software CD-ROM browser. Using this option, administrators can create a silent (unattended) installer that is customized with any of the following selections:

- Language
- Operating system
- Print drivers
- Components

Installer customization wizard

Administrators can use the Installer Customization Wizard (ICW) to create a customized, one-language installer package. Administrators preset the options for installation in a response file. The installer is then ready for silent, unattended installation by end users.

Note

For detailed information about the ICW, see the *HP Device Installer Customization Wizard ReadMe* file. This document (CUSTOMIZATIONDOC.RTF) is available on the printing-system software CD-ROM at the root of the <language> folder.

Running the installer customization wizard

Running the ICW produces one installation package and a response file (RESPONSE.INI) for a single system installation. The installation package might work for multiple systems that have the same response information, or the RESPONSE.INI file can be edited for system configuration differences directly in the RESPONSE.INI file. The ICW readme file, which is available and the end of the ICW process, provides the exact text for replacing entries in the RESPONSE.INI file.

To run the installer customization wizard

- 1 Insert the HP LaserJet 9055mfp or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM in the computer's CD-ROM drive.
- 2 In the CD-ROM browser main screen, click **installer customization wizard**.
- 3 Choose the setup language you wish to use. The installer automatically detects the language that your computer system uses and presents this selection as the default. Click **OK** to continue.
You can select another language that is available on the CD-ROM by clicking the down arrow in the drop-down menu.

The ICW starts automatically. To complete the ICW, follow the instructions in the dialog boxes, as described in the following section.

Dialogs

ICW runs from the CD-ROM. It can be launched from the CD browser, depending on product-specific instantiation. It runs separately from MSI with its own interface. The **Choose Setup Language** dialog box, the **InstallShield Wizard** dialog box, and the **Preparing to Install** dialog box appear the same as they appear in the standard installer. After these dialog boxes, the **Installer Customization Wizard Welcome** dialog box appears.

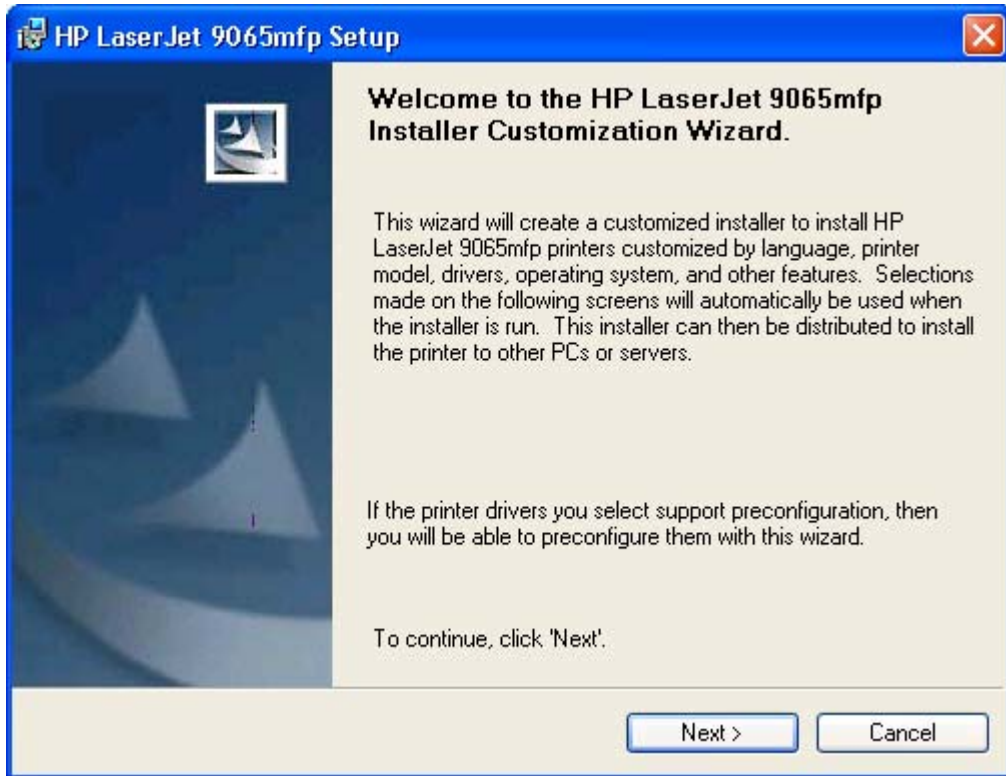


Figure 5-26. Installer Customization Wizard Welcome dialog box

Table 5-26. Installer Customization Wizard Welcome dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
<p>Welcome to the HP LaserJet 9055mfp or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp Installer Customization Wizard</p>	<p>This wizard will create a customized installer to install HP LaserJet 9055mfp or HP LaserJet 9065mfp printers customized by language, printer model, drivers, operating systems, and other features. Selections made on the following screens will automatically be used when the installer is run. This installer can then be distributed to install the printer to other PCs or servers.</p> <p>If the printer drivers you select support preconfiguration, then you will be able to preconfigure them with this wizard.</p> <p>To continue, click 'Next'.</p>	<p>Clicking Next takes you to the Language dialog box.</p>

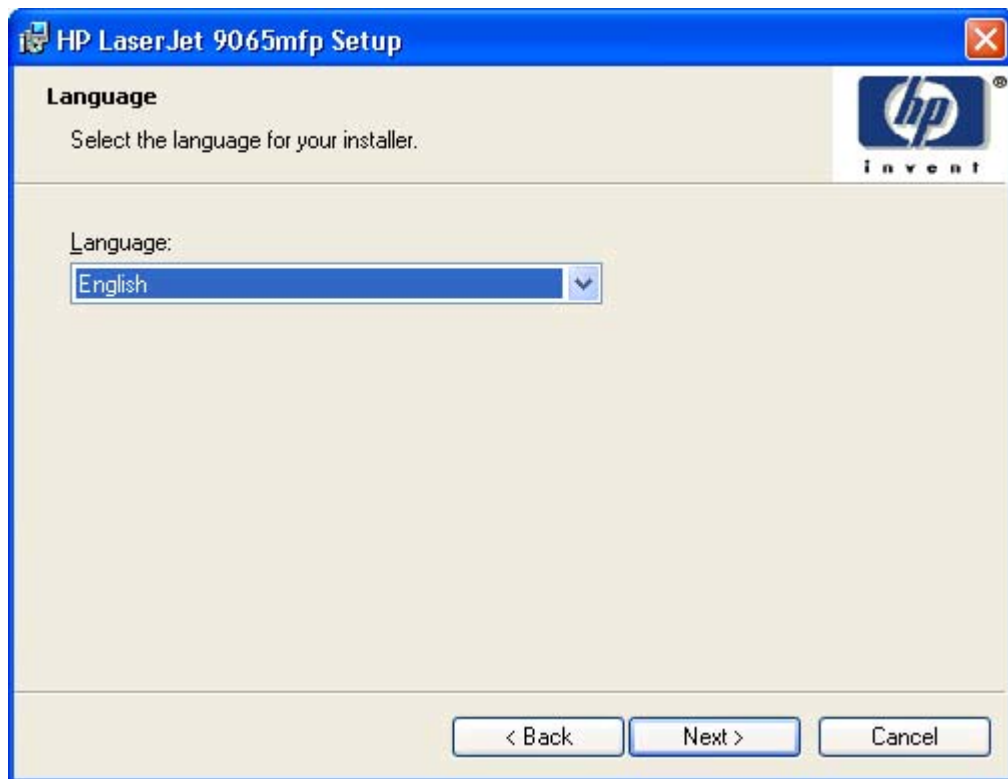


Figure 5-27. Language dialog box\

Note

The customized installer limits all system installations of the MFP to the language that is selected in the **Language** dialog box. Maintenance Mode on systems where installation has been completed using the customized installer does not provide options for changing the language. To change the language on a system that used an ICW installation, the customized installation must be uninstalled, and a new MFP must be installed to restore the option to install other languages.

Table 5-27. Language selection dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Language	Select the language for your installer. Language: (A drop-down menu lists available languages for the installer.)	The language that you selected is installed on users' computers regardless of the language of the text in the dialog boxes (as specified in the Choose a language dialog box earlier). The Language dialog box defaults to the language that was selected in the Choose a language dialog box, but any language (that is available on the CD-ROM) can be chosen for the customized installer. The language choice is recorded in the response file. Clicking Next takes you to the Printer Port dialog box. Clicking Back returns you to the Welcome dialog box. Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.

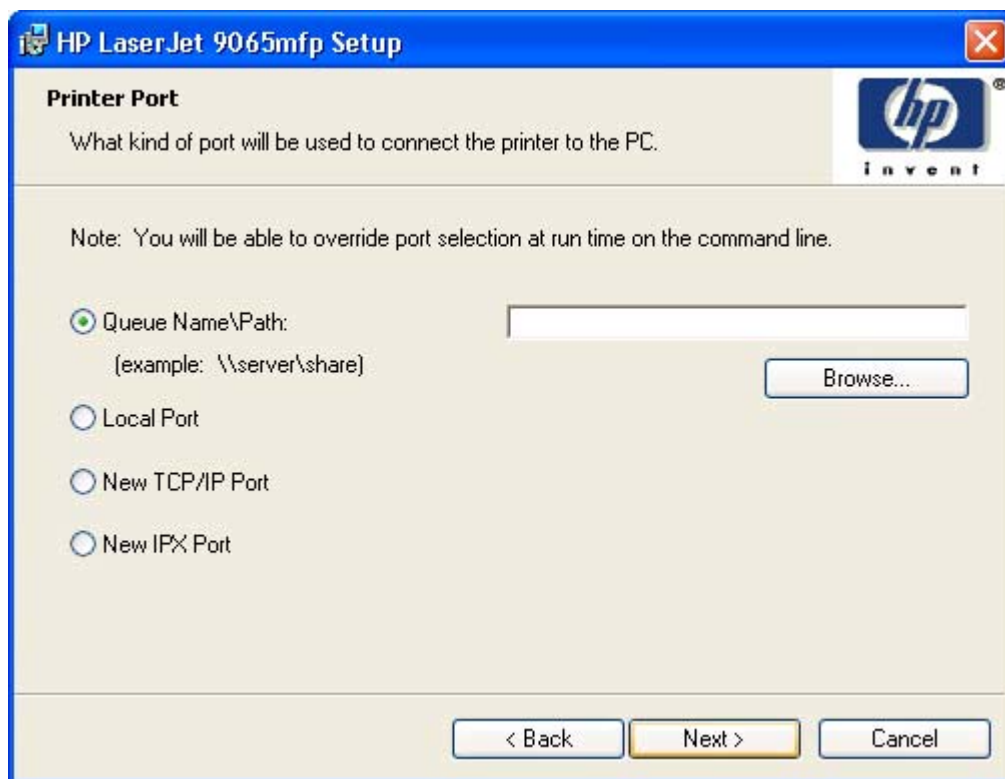


Figure 5-28.

Printer Port dialog box

Table 5-28. Printer Port dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
<p>Printer Port</p>	<p>What kind of port will be used to connect the printer to the PC?</p> <p>Note: You will be able to override port selection at run time on the command line.</p> <p>Queue Name\Path (example: \server\share) (option button)</p> <p>Local Port (option button)</p> <p>New TCP/IP Port (option button)</p> <p>New IPX Port (option button)</p>	<p>Clicking Queue Name\Path makes a text field available for a Queue entry. Click the Browse button to navigate to a MFP to record the path.</p> <p>Clicking Local Port and then clicking Next takes you to the Connection Type dialog box, which is similar to the Connection Type dialog box that appears during a standard installation. However, the ICW Connector Type dialog box includes all types of local ports regardless of local support. It also includes all custom network ports that are available on the local system. To use any custom network port for the customized installer, the port must be created identically on the system where the port will be used.</p> <p>Clicking New TCP/IP Port and then clicking Next takes you to the Specify Printer dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Back returns you to the Language dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

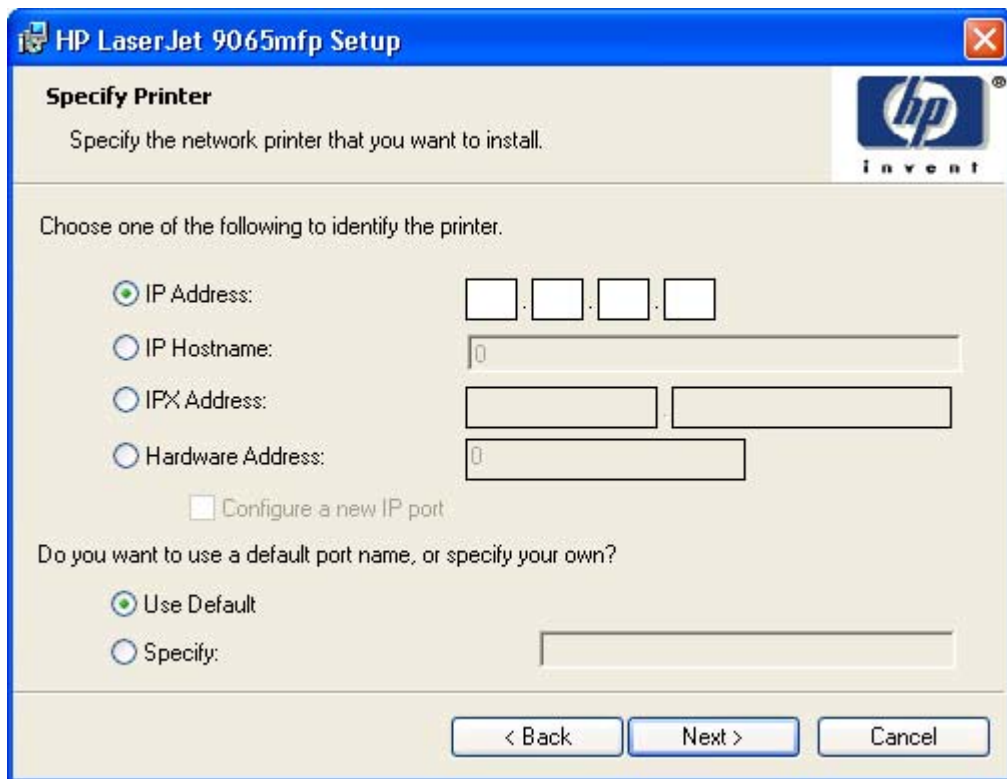


Figure 5-29.

Specify Printer dialog box

Table 5-29. Specify Printer dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
<p>Specify Printer</p>	<p>Specify the network printer that you want to install.</p> <p>Choose one of the following to identify the printer.</p> <p>IP Address: (option button)</p> <p>IP Hostname: (option button)</p> <p>IPX Address: (option button)</p> <p>Hardware Address: (option button)</p> <p>Do you want to use a default port name, or specify your own?</p> <p>Use Default (option button)</p> <p>Specify: (option button)</p>	<p>Clicking IP Address: makes a field available for typing the IP address for the MFP. Only numerals are allowed in this field. If this option is selected, at least one digit must be typed in the IP Address field to prevent an error message from appearing, asking for a valid IP address.</p> <p>Clicking IP Hostname: makes a field available for typing the IP hostname for the MFP. Any characters are allowed in this field, but an error message appears if spaces are included in the field. If this option is selected, at least one character must be typed in the IP Hostname field to prevent an error message from appearing, asking for a valid IP hostname.</p> <p>Clicking IPX Address: makes a field available for typing the IPX address of the MFP.</p> <p>Clicking Hardware Address: makes a field available for typing the hardware address of the MFP. It accepts any characters but limits the entry to 13 characters.</p> <p>The Hardware Address: option also creates an option to configure a new port. Clicking Next in the Specify Printer dialog box with Configure a new IP port selected opens an IP Settings dialog box for setting up the new port.</p> <p>Clicking Back takes you to the previous dialog box, based on your previous selections.</p> <p>Clicking any of the options and then clicking Next takes you to either the ICW IP Settings dialog box or the ICW Model dialog box, depending on your selection.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

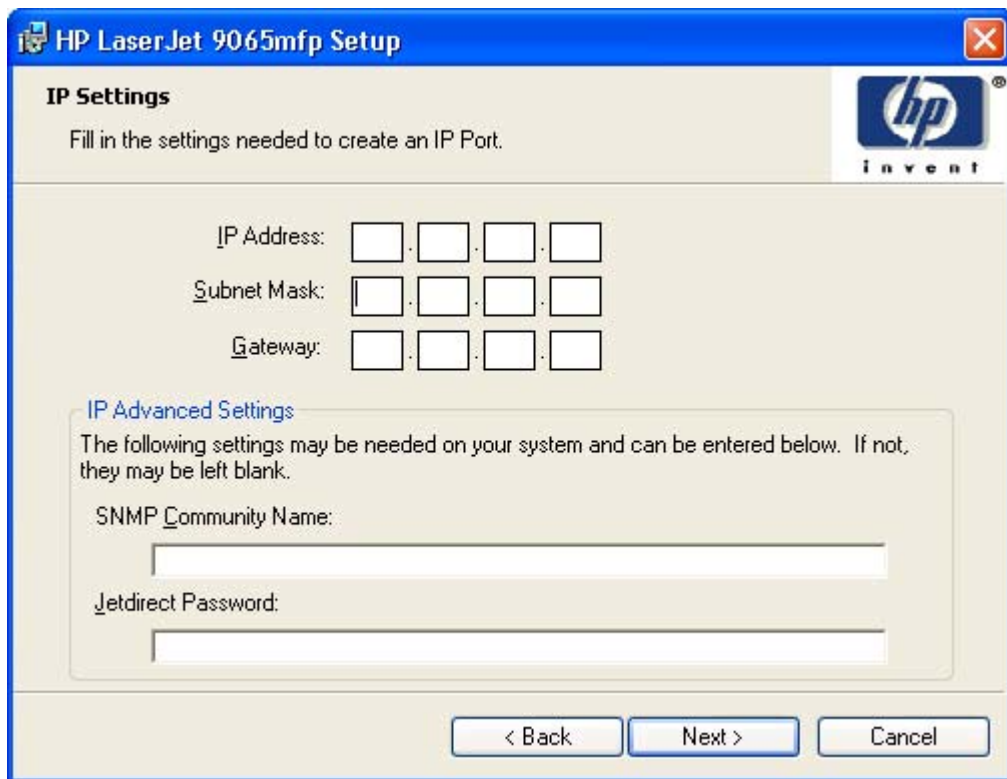


Figure 5-30. IP Settings dialog box

Note

ICW does not validate that the MFP or any of the MFP identification entries actually exist on the network, because the customized installer can be used on a separate network.

Table 5-30. IP Settings dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
IP Settings	<p>Fill in the settings needed to create an IP Port.</p> <p>IP Address: (numeric field)</p> <p>Subnet Mask: (numeric field)</p> <p>Gateway: (numeric field)</p> <p>IP Advanced Settings. The following settings may be needed on your system and can be entered below. If not, they may be left blank.</p> <p>SNMP Community Name: (text field)</p> <p>Jetdirect Password: (text field)</p>	<p>Typing the appropriate information and then clicking Next takes you to the New IPX Port dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Back takes you to the Specify Printer dialog box or the Printer Port dialog box, depending on your previous selections.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

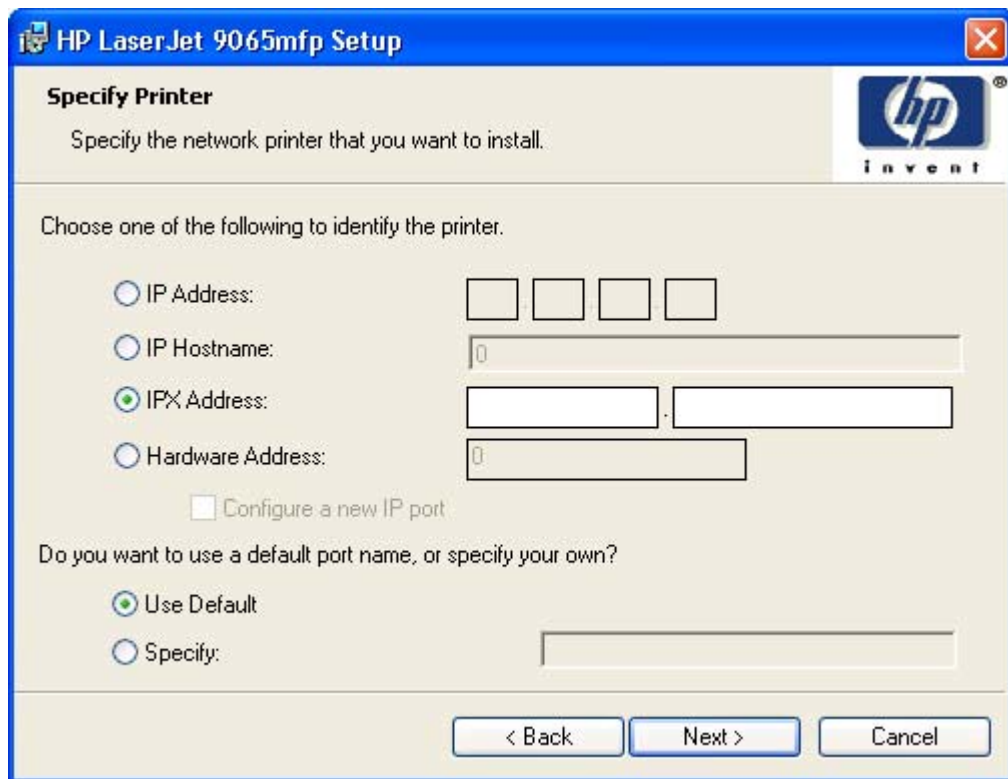


Figure 5-31. New IPX Port dialog box

The **New IPX Port** selection in the **Printer Port** dialog box behaves the same way that the **New TCP/IP Port** selection behaves: The **Specify Printer** dialog box opens with the same options, each with the same results.

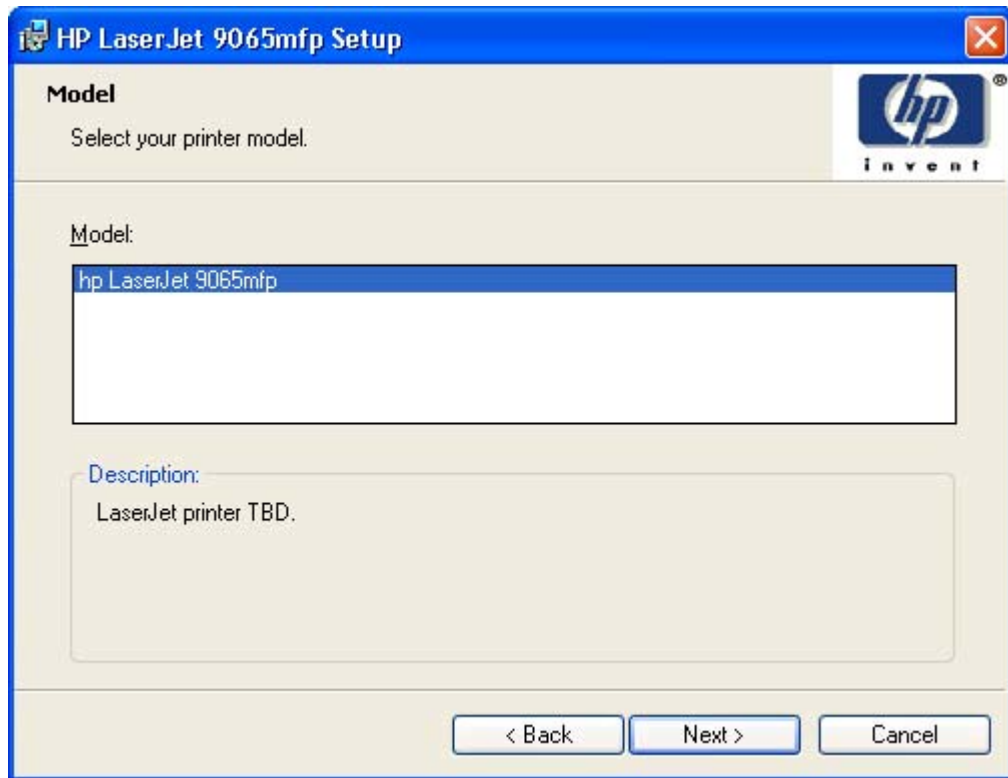


Figure 5-32.

Model dialog box

After the identification or port setup dialog boxes are completed, the **Model** dialog box appears.

Table 5-31. Model dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Model	Select your printer model. Model: (A list box shows available printers.) A text box contains information about the features for each printer selected.	The model selection can affect which features are available for the installation. It can also affect driver defaults depending on the product-specific instantiation. Clicking Next takes you to the Features dialog box. Clicking Back takes you to the Printer Port, Connection Type, IP Settings, or Specify Printer dialog box, depending on your previous selections. Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.

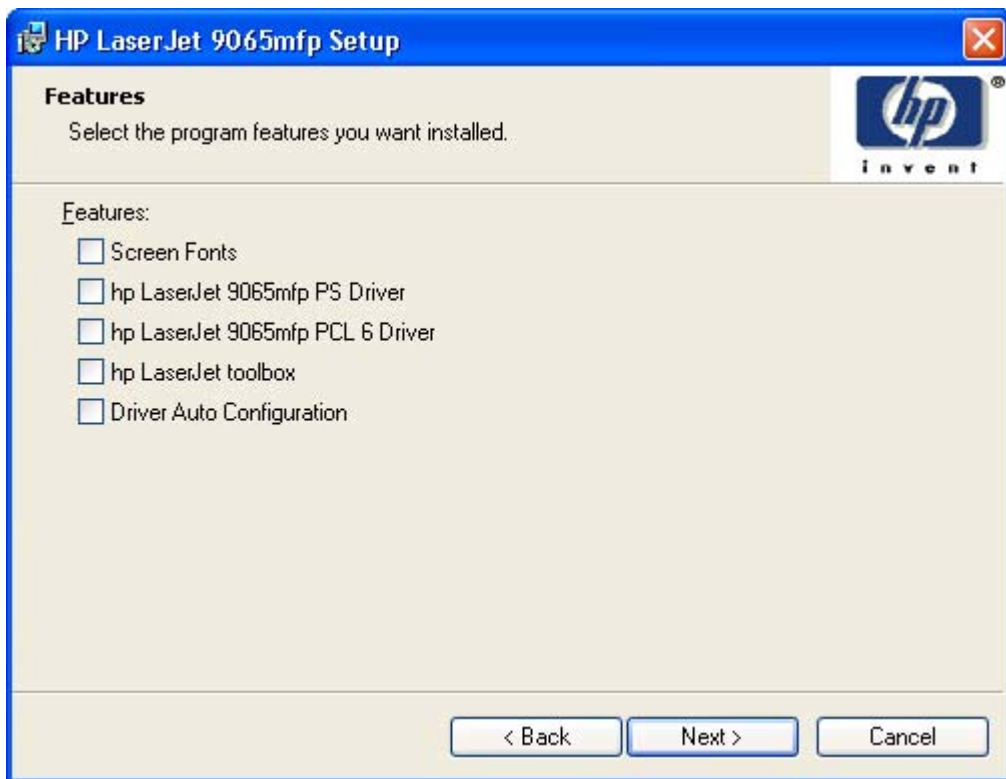


Figure 5-33. Features dialog box

Any combination of features can be selected for the installer, and none depends on any other feature selection. It is possible to create a custom installer that installs features without including a print driver.

Table 5-32. Features dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Features	Select the program features you want installed. Features: (A list contains the available features, each preceded by a check box.)	Clicking Next takes you to the Driver Configuration dialog box. Clicking Back takes you to the Model dialog box. Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.

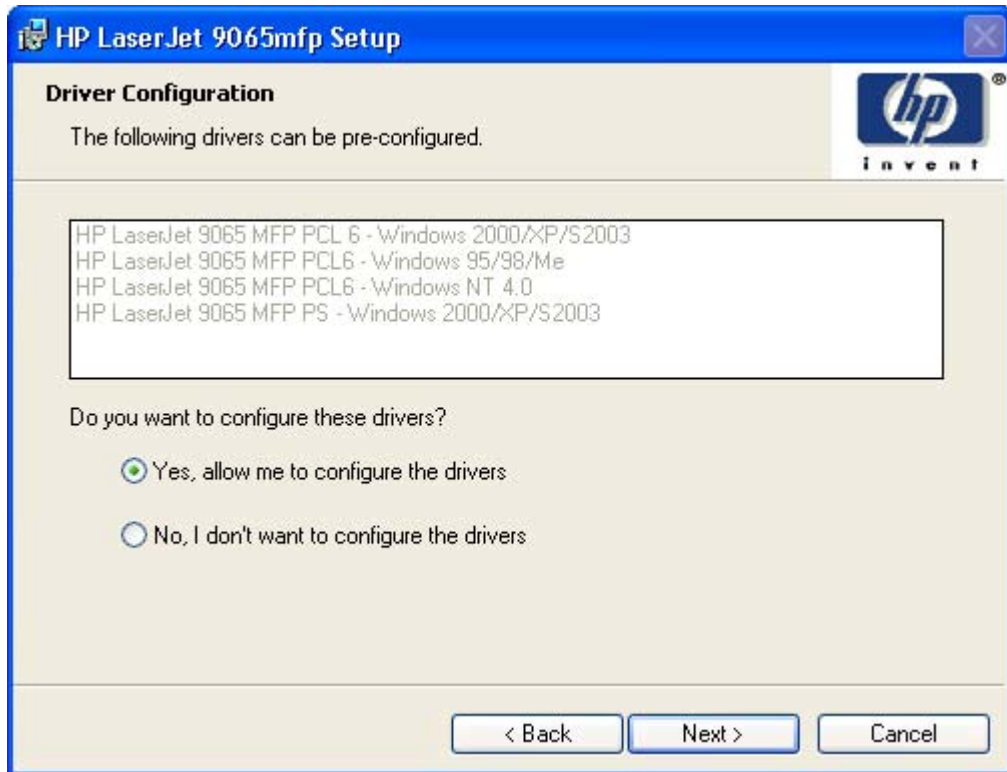


Figure 5-34. Driver Configuration dialog box

It is possible to supply a preconfigured driver in the customized installer if the driver supports it. You can use the preconfigured driver to place default settings on the MFP that is installed. If a driver that supports this feature is selected in the **Features** dialog box, the **Driver Configuration** dialog box appears.

Table 5-33. Driver Configuration dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Driver Configuration	<p>The following drivers can be pre-configured.</p> <p>(A list box shows the available drivers.)</p> <p>Do you want to configure these drivers?</p> <p>Yes, allow me to configure the drivers (default) (option button)</p> <p>No, I don't want to configure the drivers (option button)</p>	<p>Clicking Yes and then clicking Next opens a list of all printing preferences and device options for the MFP.</p> <p>Clicking No and then clicking Next takes you to the Printer Name dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Back takes you to the Features dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

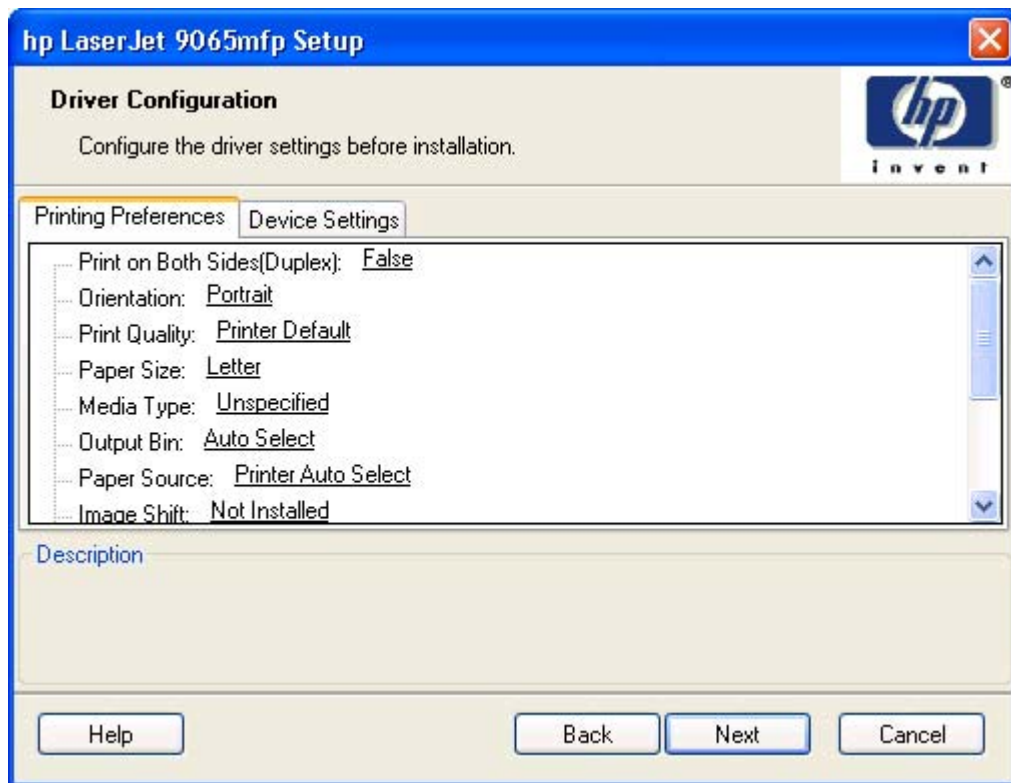


Figure 5-35. Driver Configuration preconfigure driver dialog box

Table 5-34. Driver Configuration preconfigure driver dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Driver Configuration	<p>Configure the driver settings before installation.</p> <p>Printing Preferences (tab) (A list box shows the available settings.)</p> <p>Device Settings (tab) (A list box shows the available settings.)</p> <p>Description: (A text box contains information for each selected setting.)</p>	<p>Any setting in this dialog box, including those on the Device Settings tab, can be preset before the MFP is installed (subject to normal driver constraints).</p> <p>Clicking Next opens either the Preconfigure Printer dialog box for another driver that supports preconfiguration (if any), or the Printer Name dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Back takes you to the previous Driver Configuration dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>



Figure 5-36.

Printer Name dialog box

Table 5-35. Printer Name dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Printer Name	<p>Specify a name for this printer.</p> <p>You may use the name supplied below or type a new one. The name will be used to identify the printer in your Printers folder.</p> <p>Printer Name: (A text field appears where you can type a name for the printer.)</p> <p>NOTE: A printer will be created for each driver being installed. The driver type will be appended to the name specified above. Example: HP LaserJet 9055mfp (PCL6)</p> <p>Default Printer:</p> <p>Use this printer as the default printer for Windows-based programs. (checkbox)</p> <p>Default Driver: (A drop-down menu lists available print drivers.)</p>	<p>The Default Printer: drop-down menu lists only those drivers that are selected in the Features dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Next opens the Printer Sharing dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Back takes you to the previous Driver Configuration dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

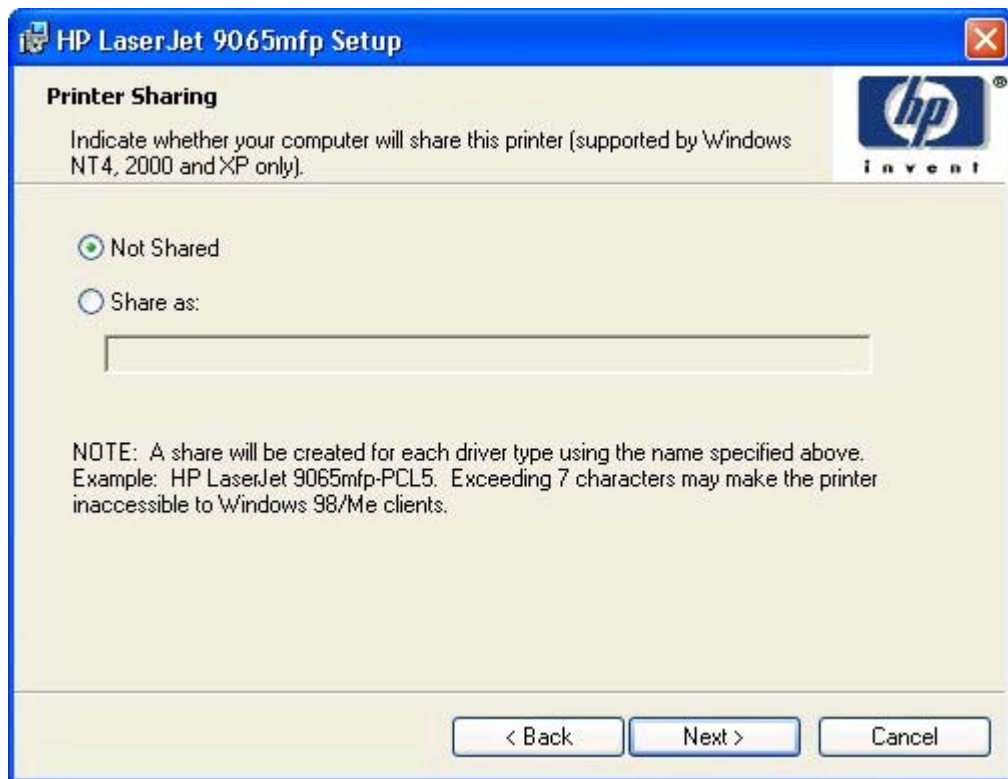


Figure 5-37. Printer Sharing dialog box

Table 5-36. Printer Sharing dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Printer Sharing	<p>Indicate whether your computer will share this printer (supported by Windows NT 4, 2000 and XP only).</p> <p>Not Shared (default) (option button)</p> <p>Share as: (option button)</p> <p>NOTE: A share will be created for each driver type using the name specified above. Example: HP LaserJet 9055mfp-PCL6. Exceeding 7 characters may make the printer inaccessible to Windows 98/Me clients.</p>	<p>Clicking Share as: opens a field for naming the MFP as it will appear on the network.</p> <p>Clicking Next with Not Shared selected takes you to the Printer Location and Comment dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Share as: and then clicking Next takes you to the Client Driver Support dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Back takes you to the Printer Name dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>



Figure 5-38. Client Driver Support dialog box

Note

This dialog box provides options for selecting OS-specific drivers to add to the installation to provide for Point and Print driver vending on the system. Either or both optional drivers can be selected.

Table 5-37. Client Driver Support dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Client Driver Support	<p>Select additional drivers to be installed on this computer to support automatic driver download to clients.</p> <p>Select the drivers you would like to install:</p> <p>Windows 98/Me (check box)</p>	<p>Clicking Next takes you to the Printer Location and Comment dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Back takes you to the Printer Sharing dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

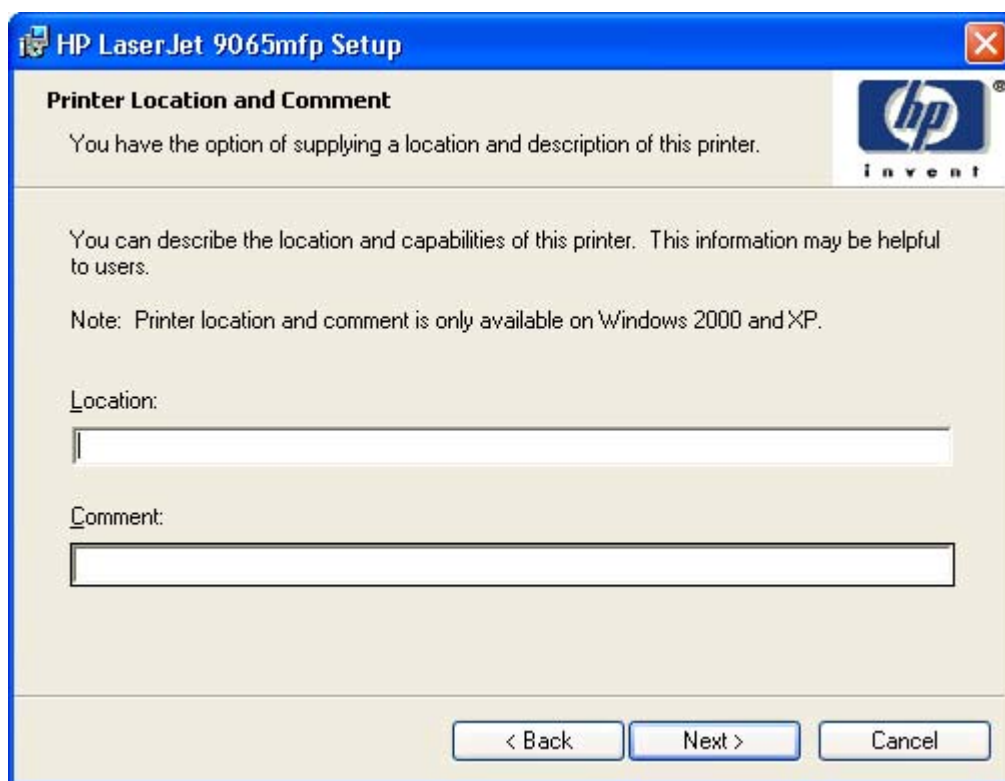


Figure 5-39. Printer Location and Comment support dialog box

Table 5-38. Printer Location and Comment dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Printer Location and Comment	<p>You have the option of supplying a location and description of this printer.</p> <p>You can describe the location and capabilities of this printer. This information can be helpful to users.</p> <p>Note: Printer location and comment is only available on Windows 2000 and XP.</p> <p>Location: (A text field opens where you can type a location for the printer.)</p> <p>Comment: (A text field opens where you can type a additional information about the printer.)</p>	<p>Use the Location: text field to type a description of the physical location of the MFP. The field is limited to 241 characters.</p> <p>Use the Comment: text field to type any other helpful text such as capabilities about the MFP. The field is limited to 241 characters.</p> <p>Clicking Back takes you to the Printer Sharing or the Client Driver Support dialog box, depending on your previous selection.</p> <p>Clicking Next takes you to the Custom Installer Location dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

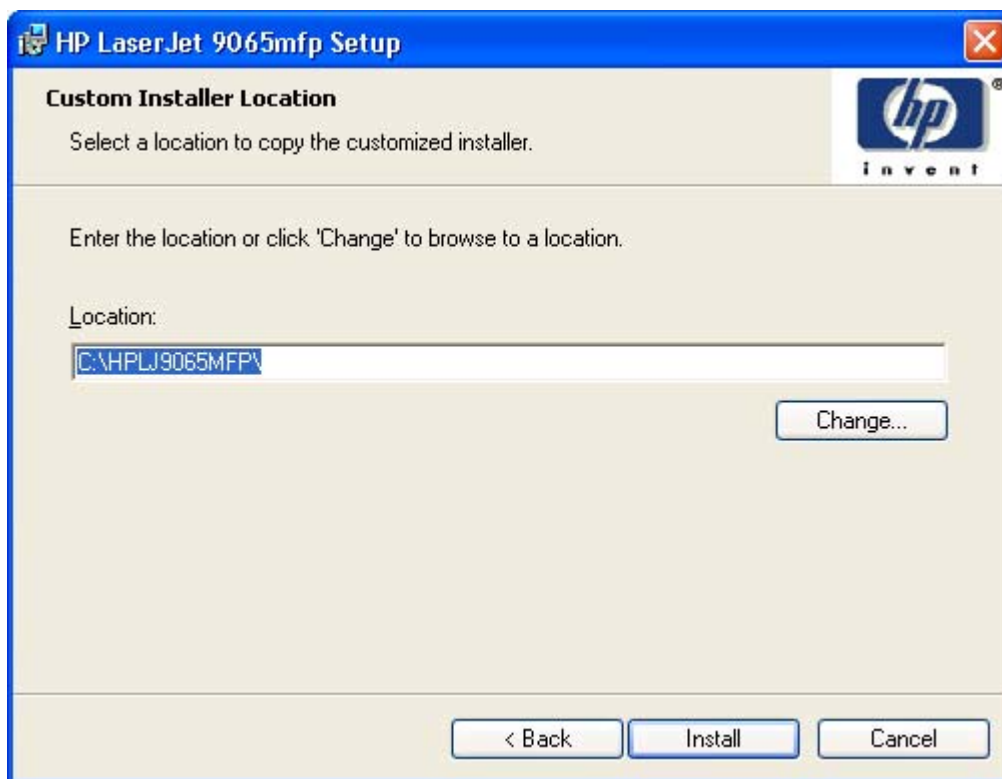


Figure 5-40. Custom Installer Location dialog box

Note

The location for the installer package defaults to the drive that the system user opened last.

Table 5-39. Custom Installer Location dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Custom Installer Location	<p>Select a location to copy the customized installer.</p> <p>Enter the location or click 'Change' to browse to a location.</p> <p>Location: (A text field shows the default location for the customized installer package.)</p>	<p>Clicking Change opens the Change Current Destination Folder dialog box to navigate to the drive that you want.</p> <p>Clicking Back takes you to the Printer Location and Comment dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Install after you have specified a location (or browsed to a location) starts the file copy process and takes you to the Installing dialog box.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

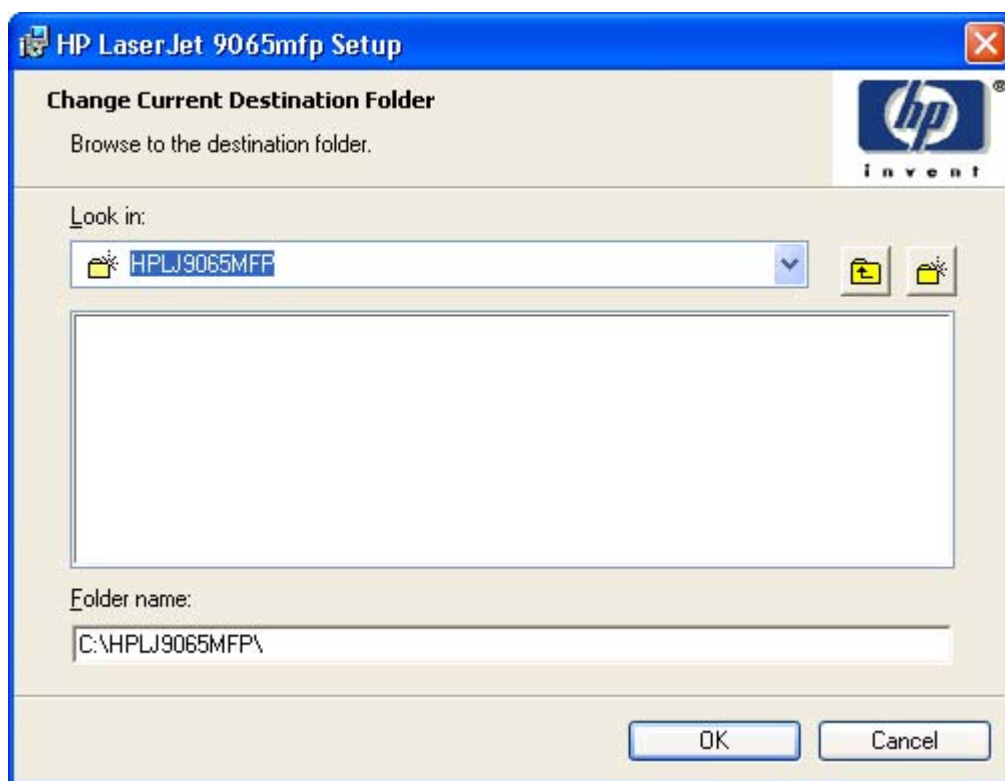


Figure 5-41. Change Current Destination Folder dialog box

Note

Several files including system files will be placed at the root of the directory that appears in the **Folder Name** field. These files collectively occupy approximately 37 MB on the directory. Be sure that enough space is available on the directory before continuing.

Table 5-40. Change Current Destination Folder dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
<p>Change Current Destination Folder</p>	<p>Browse to the destination folder.</p> <p>Look in: (A drop-down menu lists the available drives.)</p> <p>Folder name: (A text field shows the available folders in the selected drive.)</p>	<p>After you select a location, click OK to return to the Custom Installer Location dialog box. The location appears in the Folder name field.</p> <p>Click the New Folder button to create a new folder.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

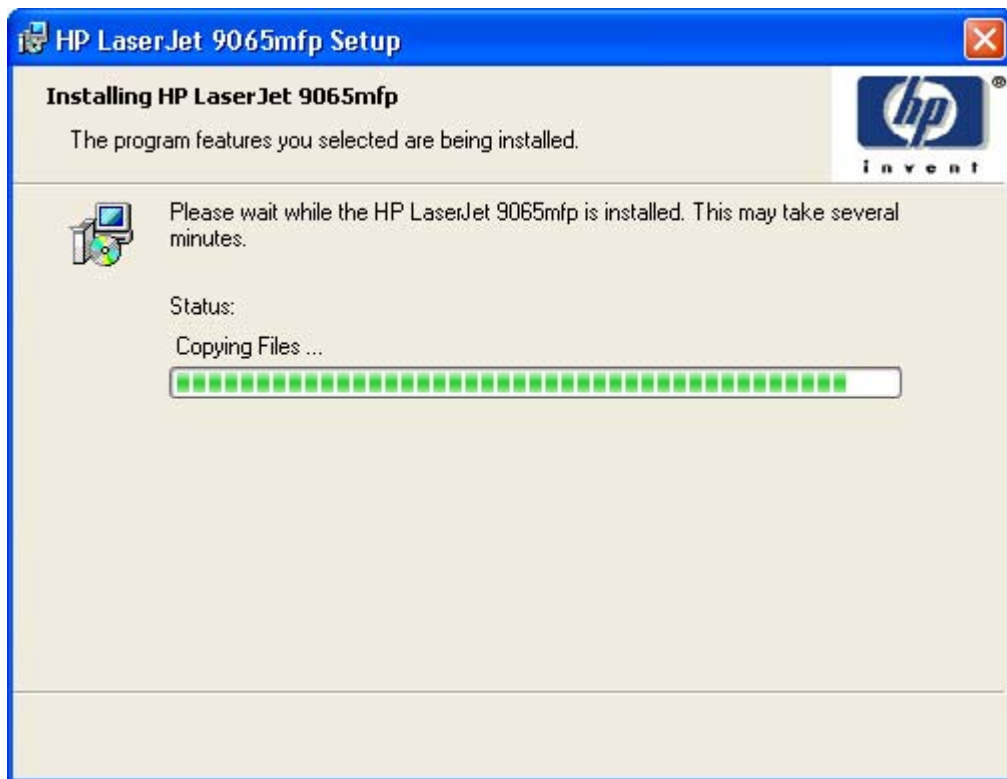


Figure 5-42.

Installing dialog box

Table 5-41. Installing dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Installing HP LaserJet 9055mfp or HP LaserJet 9065mfp	<p>The program features you selected are being installed.</p> <p>Please wait while the HP LaserJet 9055mfp or the HP LaserJet 9065mfp is installed. This may take several minutes.</p> <p>Status: (A status bar shows the progress of the file copy.)</p>	<p>This dialog box remains on the screen until the status bar reaches the end.</p> <p>Clicking Cancel takes you to the Exit Setup dialog box.</p>

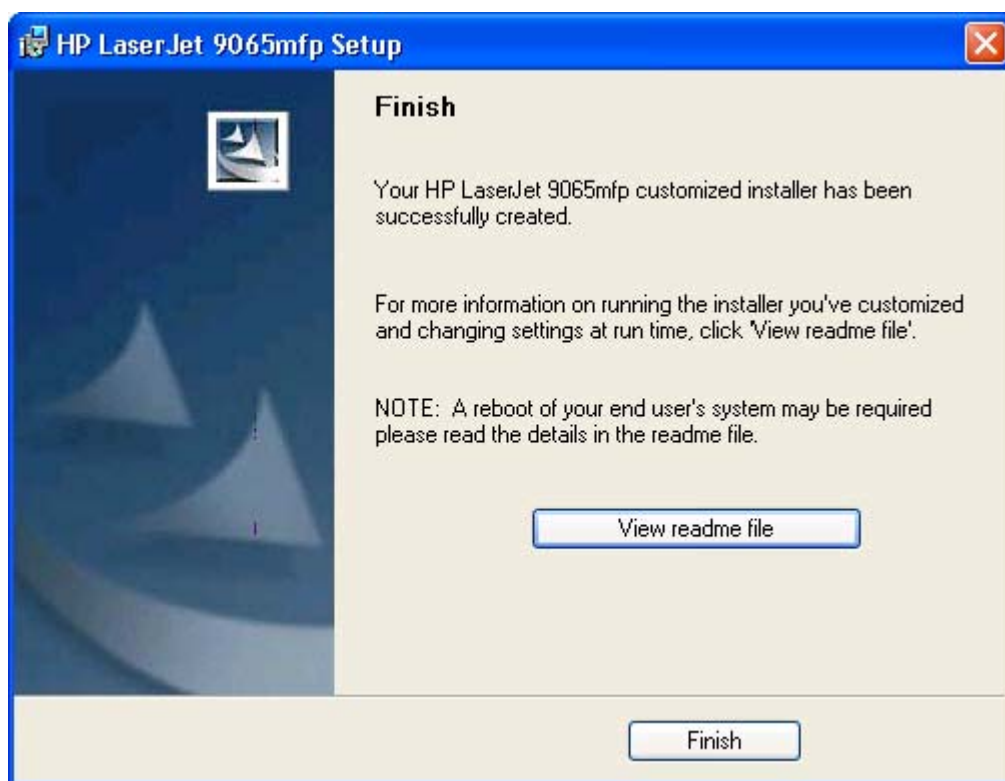


Figure 5-43. Finish dialog box

Table 5-42. Finish dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Finish	<p>Your HP LaserJet 9055mfp or HP LaserJet 9065mfp customized installer has been successfully created.</p> <p>For more information on running the installer you've customized and changing settings at run time, click 'View readme file'.</p> <p>NOTE: A reboot of your end user's system may be required. Please read the details in the readme file.</p>	<p>Clicking View readme file opens the readme file.</p> <hr/> <p>Note</p> <p>Instructions contained in the readme file are not included in this document.</p> <hr/> <p>Clicking Finish closes the Finish dialog box and exits the Installer Customization Wizard.</p>

Distribution

The installation package is now ready for distribution. It is the same as the package on the CD-ROM, except that it is limited to one language, and it contains the features and options that you selected. The installation package is run silently so that it requires no user interaction. This installation method is useful when you want to use the default selections that the installer provides or when you want to run the installation without being prompted.

You can perform the silent installation in two ways:

- customized silent installer
- command-line silent installer (See the *HP Device Installer Customization Wizard* ReadMe file. This document (CustomizationDoc.rtf) is available on the printing-system software CD-ROM at the root of the **<language>** folder.

The response file can be renamed, but it must be in the root directory of the installer package. The name cannot contain spaces; spaces prevent the SETUP.EXE file from passing to the installer package.

Command-line silent install

This method cannot be customized. It installs only the printing-system components that are included in the Typical Installation. For more information, see the *HP Device Installer Customization Wizard* ReadMe file. This document (CustomizationDoc.rtf) is available on the printing-system software CD-ROM at the root of the **<language>** folder.

Point and Print installation for Windows 98, Me, NT 4.0, 2000, XP, and 2003

Point and Print is a Microsoft term that describes a two-step driver installation process. The first step is to install a shared driver on a network print server. The second step is to "point" to the print server from a network client so that the client can use the print driver.

Note

This section outlines the procedures for installing print drivers by using Point and Print. If these procedures are not successful, contact Microsoft. Hewlett-Packard provides drivers that are compatible with the Point and Print feature, but this is a function of the Microsoft operating systems, not of HP print drivers. Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 drivers from HP are supported only on Intel X86 processor types. Any other processor types must use Windows NT 4.0 drivers from Microsoft.

To install the print driver on a Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 server, you must have administrator privileges. To completely install the Windows NT 4.0 print driver on the Windows NT 4.0 server (or the Windows 2000 print driver on the Windows 2000 server), you must have administrator privileges on the server. The Windows NT 4.0 Printer .INF file (or the Windows 2000 Printer .INF file) must contain the same product name as the Windows 98 or Windows Me printer .INF file.

Point and Print installation of a PS driver is supported only with a Microsoft Windows 98 or Windows Me PS driver version 4.0 or later.

In a homogenous operating system environment (one in which all of the clients and servers running the same operating system), the same print driver version that is vended from the server to the clients in a Point and Print environment also runs and controls the print queue configuration on the server.

However, in a mixed operating system environment (one in which servers and clients might run on different operating systems), conflicts can occur when client computers run a version of the print driver that is different from the one on the print server. With Windows NT 4.0, print drivers executed in *kernel* mode. A kernel mode process runs in a specially privileged part of the operating system that gives the process access to all of the system resources. Consequently, a misbehaving driver can cause serious system stability problems, including operating system crashes. In an effort to increase operating system stability, Microsoft determined that, starting with Windows 2000 and continuing with all future operating systems, print drivers would run as *user-mode* processes. User-mode drivers execute in a protected part of the operating system just like all of the normal end-user processes and software programs. A user-mode print driver that misbehaves is capable of crashing only the process in which it is running, and cannot crash the whole operating system. Because access to critical system resources is restricted, overall operating system stability is increased.

Setting a default printer

This section applies to the Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 operating systems.

- 1 In Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows NT 4.0, and Windows 2000 OSs, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**. In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, click **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional) or **Printers and other hardware devices** (Windows XP Home).
- 2 Right-click the product that you want to set as the default printer.
- 3 Click **Set As Default**. A check mark appears next to the menu option.

6

Installation for Macintosh and Linux operating systems

Introduction

- Macintosh
- Linux

System requirements

The following are system requirements for installing and using the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing-system software on each of these supported operating systems.

Macintosh

- PowerPC processor
- Macintosh OS 9.x or later or Mac OS X (10.1 or later)
- 256 MB RAM
- 110 MB available disk space

Linux

For information about Linux support for the MFP, see the HP Linux Web site:

- <http://www.hp.com/go/linux>.

UNIX

For information about UNIX support for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp, see the following Web site:

- http://www.hp.com/go/jetdirectunix_software

Macintosh

The following sections contain information about using HP LaserJet printing software for the Macintosh OS.

Macintosh component descriptions

The MFP includes the following software for Macintosh computers:

- PPDs for Mac OS 9.x and Mac OS X (10.1 and later)
- PDEs for Mac OS X only (10.1 and later)

HP LaserJet PPDs

In Mac OS 9.x, these PS printer-definition files for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp are installed to the **Printer Descriptions** folder, which is in the **Extensions** folder within the **System** folder. In Mac OS X, the PPDs are installed in **Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/Resources:<lang>.lproj** where **<lang>** is the appropriate localized folder.

PPDs, in combination with the driver, provide access to the MFP features and allow the computer to communicate with the MFP. An installation program for the PPDs is provided on the printing software CD-ROM.

For Mac OS 9.x, the Apple LaserWriter 8 driver must be installed to use the PPD file. Use the Apple LaserWriter 8 driver that came with your Macintosh. For Mac OS X, use **Print Center** to print.

PDEs (Mac OS X only, 10.1 and later)

Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs) are code plug-ins that provide access to MFP features, such as number of copies, duplexing, and quality settings.

HP Toolbox

The HP Toolbox is a tool for end users that is made up of a series of Web pages and a supporting Windows-based and Macintosh-based software programs. The HP Toolbox provides links to MFP status information and enables you to receive alerts for MFP events.

For more information about the HP Toolbox, see the [HP Toolbox](#) section of this guide.

HP Embedded Web Server

The HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) is supported by Macintosh OS 9.x operating systems. Use the HP LaserJet Utility to control features that are not available in the driver. Use the HP EWS to perform the following tasks:

- name the MFP, assign it to a zone on the network, and change MFP settings
- set a password for the MFP
- from the computer, lock out functions on the control panel to prevent unauthorized access (see the printing software help).

Install notes

This text file contains important information about MFP features, instructions for installing the printing-system software, and technical assistance.

Online help

This HTML-based help system replaces the Apple Guide help system that was provided with Mac OS 9.x HP products. The help system can be viewed through a browser or in the Macintosh OS Help Center.

Screen fonts (Mac OS classic)

These screen fonts are available only for Macintosh computers and Macintosh-compatible computers. Because the screen fonts match your printing fonts, you can see onscreen how your printed page looks.

Font support

- Avant Garde
- Helvetica Narrow
- Times
- Bookman
- New Century Schoolbook
- Zapf Chancery
- Courier
- Palatino
- Zapf Dingbats
- Helvetica
- Symbol

The Macintosh printing system also includes the HP 45 XPS font families:

- Clarendon Condensed Bold
- Symbol
- Albertus Medium
- Coronet
- Times New Roman
- Antique Olive
- Courier
- Univers
- Arial
- Garamond
- Univers Condensed
- CG Omega
- Letter Gothic
- Wingdings
- CG Times
- Marigold

The following bitmap screen fonts reside on the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp:

- ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book
- Helvetica
- Palatino
- ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique
- Helvetica Bold
- Palatino Bold
- ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi
- Helvetica Bold Oblique
- Palatino Bold Italic
- ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi Oblique
- Helvetica Oblique
- Palatino Italic
- ITC Bookman Demi
- Helvetica Narrow
- Symbol
- ITC Bookman Demi Italic
- Helvetica Narrow Bold
- Times Bold
- ITC Bookman Light
- Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique
- Times Bold Italic
- ITC Bookman Light Italic

- Helvetica Narrow Oblique
- Times Italic
- Courier
- New Century Schoolbook Bold
- Times Roman
- Courier Bold
- New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic
- ITC Zapf Chancery Medium Italic
- Courier Bold Oblique
- New Century Schoolbook Italic
- ITC Zapf Dingbats
- Courier Oblique
- New Century Schoolbook Roman

The following fonts reside on the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp, but can be used by Macintosh platforms only if you install additional screen fonts. You can either use these screen fonts directly from the HP LaserJet 9055mfp software CD-ROM and the HP LaserJet 9065mfp software CD-ROM, or obtain them from the following Web sites: <http://www.hp.com/support/lj9055mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/lj9065mfp>.

- Albertus Extra Bold
- CG Times Italic
- Marigold
- Albertus Medium
- Clarendon Condensed Bold
- Symbol
- Antique Olive
- Coronet
- Times New Roman
- Antique Olive Bold
- Courier
- Times New Roman Bold
- Antique Olive Italic
- Courier Bold
- Times New Roman Bold Italic
- Arial Courier Bold Oblique
- Times New Roman Italic
- Arial Bold
- Courier Italic
- Univers Bold
- Arial Bold Italic
- Garamond Antiqua
- Univers Bold Italic
- Arial Italic

- Garamond Halbfett
- Univers Condensed Bold Italic
- CG Omega
- Garamond Kursiv
- Univers Condensed Medium
- CG Omega Bold
- Garamond Kursiv Halbfett
- Univers Condensed Medium Italic
- CG Omega Bold Italic
- Letter Gothic
- Univers Medium
- CG Omega Italic
- Letter Gothic Bold
- Univers Medium Italic
- CG Times
- Letter Gothic Italic
- Univers Italic
- CG Times Bold
- CG Times Bold Italic
- Wingdings
- CG Times Bold Italic

Installing the Macintosh printing system

On a Macintosh-compatible computer, the installation procedures are the same for a network administrator, a network client, and a single user. Install the software on any computer that has access rights to the MFP.

Note

If the computer is connected to the MFP by a LocalTalk (printer port) or EtherTalk connection, you must configure the AppleTalk (or network) control panel for the correct connection to communicate with the MFP. You must set up the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp, connect them to the computer, and turn them on before the software is installed. Macintosh OS systems do not support parallel connections. You can use a cross-over Ethernet cable for a direct connection to a computer running the Macintosh OS. In the following instructions, "XXXX" represents the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp number (9055 or 9065).

The Macintosh partition contains an installer program for each language. Find the appropriate language for the operating system that is being used, and then use the installer program for that language.

To install the HP LaserJet printing-system software for the Macintosh OS

- 1 Insert the CD-ROM that came with the Macintosh printing-system software into the CD-ROM drive.

Note

If the CD screen does not open automatically, double-click the **CD-ROM** icon on the desktop to open the CD-ROM window.

- 2 Open the **HP LaserJet Installers** folder. Find the **Installer** icon for the appropriate language. Double-click the **Installer** icon to launch the Installer. In the opening dialog, click **Continue**.

Note

The **Continue** button appears only after you type the "Admin" password in the **Authenticate** dialog box (OS X, versions 10.1 and later only).

- 3 The main **Installer** dialog box appears. Click **Install** and then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the software installation.

Note

If you are installing the printing-system software on a Macintosh OS X system, please be patient. The installer must perform an initial search of the computer for up to 1 minute. During this time the installer might appear to be stalled.

- 4 When software installation is complete, click **Quit**. Select one of the following options to finish setting up your MFP:
 - Set up an AppleTalk networked MFP with Mac OS 9.x
 - Set up an MFP with Mac OS X

To set up an AppleTalk networked MFP with Mac OS 9.x

- 1 Open the **Chooser** from within the **Apple Menu**.
- 2 Click **LaserWriter 8** on the left side of the **Chooser** dialog box.
- 3 Click the appropriate **Zone** to select it, if required.
- 4 Click your MFP name from the list that appears on the right side of the **Chooser** dialog box, and then click **Create**.

To set up an MFP with Mac OS X

- 1 In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Print Center**.
- 2 Click **Add** (in Mac OS X 10.2) or **Add Printer** (in Mac OS X 10.1).
- 3 From the top pop-up menu, select the appropriate connection type for your MFP.
- 4 Select or type in any other information as indicated for the type of connection for your MFP. For example, if you are using an AppleTalk connection, select your MFP zone; or if you are using IP Printing, type in an IP address.

Note

If the automatic selection fails, or if you want to manually select a PPD file, click the **Printer Model** pop-up menu, select **HP**, and then click **LaserJet 9055mfp** or **LaserJet 9065mfp**.

- 5 Click **Add**.

- 6 To configure installable options in Mac OS X 10.2, such as a duplexing unit or optional paper trays, click the appropriate MFP icon in the **Print Center Printer List** window. Select **Show Info** from the **Printers** menu, and then select the appropriate options from the **Installable Options** popup menu.
- 7 Configure the options, and then click **Apply Changes**.

To set up an IP/LPR networked MFP with Mac OS 9.x

- 1 Run the Apple Desktop Printer utility.
- 2 Click **Printer (LPR)**, and then click **OK**.
- 3 Click **Change** in the LPR Printer Selection area.
- 4 Click the appropriate IP address and Queue, and then click **OK**.
- 5 Click **Change** and scroll through the list of products.
- 6 Click **HP LaserJet 9055mfp** or **HP LaserJet 9065mfp**, and then click **Select**.
- 7 Click **Create**.

Uninstalling the Macintosh printing system

To uninstall the Macintosh Printing System, drag the PPDs and the unwanted component(s) to **Trash**. See the tables in the following sections for a list of new folders and files added when the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing-system software is installed in Macintosh OSs.

In-box disk layout

The Macintosh Printing System consists of one file: the HP LaserJet Installer - Integrated installer program.

Folders and files added through installation of the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp software (Mac OS)

The tables in the following sections detail the changes to your system as new folders and files are added when the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp printing-system software is installed on Macintosh OS systems.

Note

This listing does not include temporary directories and files that are created, and then deleted, during the installation process.

In the following listing, "MACINTOSH HD" indicates the drive on which the software was installed.

Mac OS Classic installation

This section provides information about the various installation dialog box sequences for the Mac OS Classic.

Main Install dialog box sequence

This subsection provides information about the Macintosh installation dialog box sequence for the Easy Install (the typical installation option).



Figure 6-1. HP LaserJet for Macintosh installer splash screen dialog box

Table 6-1. HP LaserJet for Macintosh installer splash screen dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Splash screen (This title does not appear in the dialog box.)	hp LaserJet for Macintosh Continue... (button)	Click Continue to open the HP LaserJet Installer dialog box.



Figure 6-2. HP LaserJet Installer dialog box (easy install)

Table 6-2. HP LaserJet Installer dialog box text strings (easy install)

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
hp LaserJet Installer	<p>Easy Install (drop-down menu)</p> <p>Click the Install button to install:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Printer Descriptions (Classic) · hp LaserJet Utility (Classic) · Install Notes (Classic) · hp LaserJet Help (Classic) <p>Disk space available: (conditional)</p> <p>Approximate disk space needed: (conditional)</p> <p>Items will be installed on the disk "Macintosh HD" (name can be customized)</p> <p>Quit (button)</p> <p>Install (button) (default option)</p>	<p>If you want to install the files in a location other than the default "Macintosh HD," click Install Location: to specify a location.</p> <p>You can also select the Custom installation option from the drop-down menu at the upper left. Easy Install is the default.</p> <p>Click Read Me to open the Installer readme file.</p> <p>Click Install to start the installation on the selected disk.</p> <p>Click Quit to quit the Installer without making changes to the system.</p> <hr/> <p>Note</p> <p>A Read Me... button appears on each Macintosh installation screen.</p>



Figure 6-3. HP LaserJet Installer dialog box (custom install)

Table 6-3. HP LaserJet Installer dialog box text strings (custom install)

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
hp LaserJet Installer	Custom Install (drop-down menu) Printer Descriptions (Classic) hp LaserJet Utility (Classic) Install Notes (Classic) hp LaserJet Help (Classic) Disk space available: (conditional) Approximate disk space needed: (conditional) Items will be installed on the disk "Macintosh HD" (name can be customized) Quit (button) Install (button) (default option)	If you want to install the files in a location other than the default "Macintosh HD," click Install Location: to specify a location. Select which of the available components to install by using the check boxes in the list. Click Read Me to open the Installer readme file. Click Install to start the installation on the selected disk. Click Quit to quit the Installer without making any changes to the system.

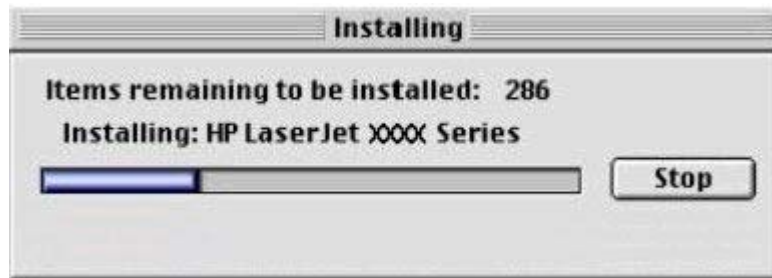


Figure 6-4. Installing dialog box

Table 6-4. Installing dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Installing	Items remaining to be installed: (conditional number) Installing: HP LaserJet XXXX Series Stop (button)	This dialog box shows installation progress. No action is required unless you want to stop the installation. Click Stop to interrupt the install file copy process.



Figure 6-5. Installation was successful dialog box

Table 6-5. Installation successful dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
(This untitled dialog box begins with the words "Installation was successful.")	Installation was successful. If you are finished, click Quit to leave the Installer. If you wish to perform additional installations, click Continue .	Click Quit to exit the Installer. The Printer Setup Assistant opens. Click Continue to return to the HP LaserJet Installer.

HP LaserJet Screen Fonts Installer dialog box sequence

This section provides information about the installation dialog box sequence for the HP Screen Font Installer.



Figure 6-6.

HP LaserJet Screen Fonts splash screen dialog box

Table 6-6. HP LaserJet Screen Fonts splash screen dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
HP LaserJet Screen Fonts	HP LaserJet Screen Fonts (The phrase "Screen Fonts" is repeated in multiple scripts and languages.) Continue (button)	Click Continue to open the HP LaserJet Screen Fonts dialog box.

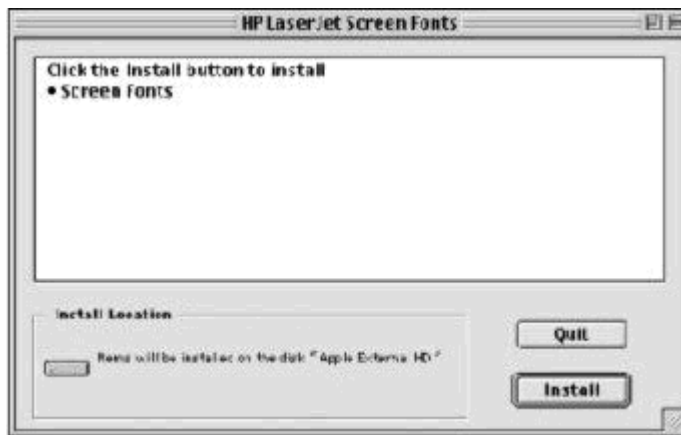


Figure 6-7. HP LaserJet Screen Fonts installer dialog box

Table 6-7. HP LaserJet Screen Fonts installer dialog box text strings (1 of 2)

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
HP LaserJet Screen Fonts	Click the Install button to install: Screen Fonts Install Location Items will be installed on the disk "Apple External HD" Quit (button) Install (button) (default option)	Click Install to start the installation. Click Quit to quit the Installer without making changes to the system.

When you click **Install**, an installation progress bar dialog box briefly appears. The following table details the contents of that dialog box.

Table 6-8. HP LaserJet Screen Fonts installer dialog box text strings (2 of 2)

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Installing	Items remaining to be installed: (conditional number) Stop (button)	Click Stop to interrupt the install file copy process.



Figure 6-8. Installation was successful dialog box

Table 6-9. Installation was successful dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
(This untitled dialog box begins with the words "Installation was successful.")	Installation was successful. If you are finished, click Quit to leave the Installer. If you wish to perform additional installations, click Continue.	Click Quit to exit the Installer. Click Continue to return to the HP LaserJet Screen Fonts installer.

Mac OS X installation

This section provides information about the various installation dialog box sequences for the Mac OS X operating system.

Main Install dialog box sequence

This section provides information about the Macintosh installation dialog box sequence for the Easy Install (the typical installation option).



Figure 6-9.

HP LaserJet for Macintosh installer splash screen dialog box

Table 6-10. HP LaserJet for Macintosh installer splash screen dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Splash screen (This title does not appear in the dialog box.)	hp LaserJet for Macintosh Continue... (button)	Click Continue to open the HP LaserJet Installer dialog box.



Figure 6-10. HP LaserJet Installer dialog box (easy install)

Table 6-11. HP LaserJet Installer dialog box text strings (easy install)

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
hp LaserJet Installer	<p>Easy Install (drop-down menu)</p> <p>Click the Install button to install:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Printer Dialog Extensions (OS X) · Printer Descriptions (OS X) · Printer Descriptions (Classic) · hp LaserJet Utility (Classic) · Install Notes (Classic) <p>Disk space available: (conditional)</p> <p>Approximate disk space needed: (conditional)</p> <p>Install location: Items will be installed on the disk "Mac"</p> <p>Install Location (drop-down menu)</p> <p>Quit (button)</p> <p>Install (button) (default option)</p>	<p>If you want to install the files in a location other than the default "Mac," click the Install Location drop-down menu to specify a location.</p> <p>You can also select a Custom installation option from the drop-down menu at upper left.</p> <p>Click Read Me to open the Installer readme file.</p> <p>Click Install to start the installation on the selected disk</p> <p>Click Quit to quit the Installer without making changes to the system.</p>



Figure 6-11. HP LaserJet Installer dialog box (custom install)

Table 6-12. HP LaserJet Installer dialog box text strings (custom install)

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
hp LaserJet Installer	Custom Install (drop-down menu) Printer Dialog extensions (OS X) Printer Descriptions (OS X) Printer Descriptions (Classic) hp LaserJet Utility (Classic) Install Notes (Classic) hp LaserJet Help (Classic) Disk space available: (conditional) Approximate disk space needed: (conditional) Install Location: Items will be installed on the disk "Mac" Install Location (drop-down menu) Quit (button) Install (button) (default option)	Select the install location using the Install Location drop-down menu (if the desired location is different from "Mac"). Select which of the available components to install by using the check boxes in the list. Click Read Me to open the Installer readme file. Click Install to start the installation on the selected disk. Click Quit to quit the Installer without making any changes to the system.



Figure 6-12. Installing dialog box

Table 6-13. Installing dialog box text strings

Title of dialog box	Text in dialog box	User options and descriptions
Installing	Items remaining to be installed: (conditional number) Installing: HP LaserJet XXXX Series Stop (button)	This dialog box shows installation progress. No action is required unless you want to stop the installation. Click Stop to interrupt the install file copy process.

7

Engineering Detail

Introduction

This section presents engineering detail for the following topics:

- [Media attributes](#)
- [Enabling or disabling HP Toolbox support](#)

Media attributes

This section includes the following information about media attributes:

- paper sources and destinations
- paper-tray configurations
- paper-source commands
- media types and sizes
- PCL 6 custom paper sizes

Paper sources and destinations

The following table indicates the standard and optional paper sources and destinations for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.

Table 7-1. HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp paper sources and destinations

Paper sources	multipurpose tray (tray 1)	standard
	500-sheet paper tray (tray 2)	standard
	500-sheet paper tray (tray 3)	standard
	1,500-sheet paper tray (tray 4)	standard
	4,000-sheet paper tray (tray 5)	optional accessory

Table 7-1. HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp paper sources and destinations (continued)

Paper destinations	main output bin	standard
	HP 3,000-Sheet Stapler/Stacker accessory	optional accessory
	HP Multifunction Finisher accessory	optional accessory

Paper-tray configurations

The HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp comes with a standard multipurpose tray (tray 1), two 500-sheet trays (trays 2 and 3), one 1,500-sheet tray (tray 4). In addition, the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp has an optional 4,000-sheet tray (tray 5).

The following table indicates the paper tray configurations that are possible for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.

Table 7-2. Media tray configurations for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp

Product	Tray number	Tray type	Standard/optional
HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp	Tray 1	multipurpose tray	standard
	Tray 2	500-sheet tray	standard
	Tray 3	500-sheet tray	standard
	Tray 4	1,500-sheet tray	standard
	Tray 5	4,000-sheet tray	optional

Note

A duplexing unit is standard for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.

Paper-source commands

The PCL 5 escape sequence for paper source is `Esc&l#H` (the "l" is a lowercase "L" rather than the numeral "1"). See the following table for values of #. For example, `Esc&l8H` is the command for tray 4.

Table 7-3. Paper-source commands

Paper source	PCL 6 ubyte # MediaSource or ubyte_array "string" MediaSource ¹	PCL 5 Esc&l#H	Postscript /MediaPosition # or Null
Tray 1	3	4	3
Tray 2 (500-sheet)	4	1	0
Tray 3 (500-sheet)	5	5	1
Tray 4 (1,500-sheet)	7	8	4
Tray 5 ² (4,000-sheet)	TRAY5	No command available ³	38
Auto Select	1	7	Null

Table 7-3. Paper-source commands (continued)

Paper source	PCL 6 ubyte # MediaSource or ubyte_array "string" MediaSource ¹	PCL 5 Esc&l#H	Postscript /MediaPosition # or Null
Manual feed in tray 1	2	2	3

- ¹ For the string value, you must use include the quotation marks around the variable. For example, `ubyte_array "TRAY5" MediaSource` is the PCL 6 command for Tray 5.
- ² Tray 5 is optional for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.
- ³ Tray 5 can usually be selected by sending the **Auto Select** command. It can also be selected by using tray switching, which can be set by performing the following steps in Key Operator mode:

- 1 Select the `Number 13 Memory Switch` settings.
- 2 Set the `Number 9 Automatic Tray switching` option to **ON**.
- 3 Select the `Number 11 Tray Auto Select` setting.

Media types and sizes

The tables in this section provide information about media features, media attributes, and paper-handling constraints for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp. Media sizes followed by a plus sign (+) indicate wide sizes, which allows near edge-to-edge printing on the media size specified. For example, **8.5x11+** media allows you to print all the way to the edge within the 8.5 by 11-inch area, with only a small margin left around the page. You can then trim the margin so that the printed image extends to the edge of the page.

Note

The following table lists the features and attributes of various media listed under the **Size Is:** drop-down menu on the **Paper** tab. The list order can vary, depending on the product and operating system. The list contains all of the following sizes, and might contain sizes from other drivers.

Table 7-4. Supported features and attributes by driver

Paper sizes ⁵	Width	Height	PCL 6 ¹
Letter	216 mm (8.5 inches)	279 mm (11.0 inches)	"LETTER"
Statement	140 mm (5.5 inches)	216 mm (8.5 inches)	"STATEMENT"
Legal	216 mm (8.5 inches)	356 mm (14.0 inches)	"LEGAL"
Executive	184 mm (7.25 inches)	267 mm (10.5 inches)	"EXEC"
Executive (JIS)	216 mm (8.5 inches)	330 mm (12.99 inches)	"JISEXEC"

Table 7-4. Supported features and attributes by driver (continued)

Paper sizes⁵	Width	Height	PCL 6¹
A5	148 mm (5.83 inches)	210 mm (8.27 inches)	"A5"
A4	210.0 mm (8.27 inches)	297 mm (11.69 inches)	"A4"
B5 (JIS)	182 mm (7.16 inches)	257 mm (10.12 inches)	"JIS B5"
16K ²	197 mm (7.75 inches)	273 mm (10.75 inches)	"ROC16K"
11x17	279 mm (11.0 inches)	431 mm (17.0 inches)	"LEDGER"
B4 (JIS)	257 mm (10.12 inches)	363 mm (14.33 inches)	10
A3	296 mm (11.69 inches)	419 mm (16.53 inches)	"A3"
8K	273 mm (10.75 inches)	393 mm (15.50 inches)	"ROC8K"
B4 (JIS)			"JIS B4"
A6			
8.5x11+			"LETTER+"
5.5x8.5+			"STATEMENT+"
11x17+			"LEDGER+"
A3+			"A3+"
A4+			"A4+"
A5+			"A5+"
B4 (JIS)+			"JIS B4+"
B5 (JIS)+			"JIS B5+"

Table 7-4. Supported features and attributes by driver (continued)

Paper sizes ⁵	Width	Height	PCL 6 ¹
Custom (leading edge) (other edge)	Minimum: 100 mm (3.9 inches) Maximum: 314 mm (12.4 inches)	Minimum: 195 mm (7.68 inches) Maximum: 459 mm (18.07 inches)	⁴

¹ The PCL 6 command for paper size is `ubyte array(String)MediaSize`. The values in this column are the values for "String."

² In Windows NT 4.0, this paper size is treated as a custom size.

³ For custom sizes, the HP traditional PCL 6 driver specifies actual dimensions, for example, for 8 by 9 inch custom size, "real32_8.000000 9.000000 CustomMediaSize."

⁵ For all paper sizes, the PCL 6 margins are 100,100.

Table 7-5. Supported input media types

Input media types (PS string)	Tray 1	Tray 2 (500-sheet)	Tray 3 (500-sheet)	Tray 4 (1,500-sheet)	Tray 5 ¹ (4,000-sheet)	Duplexing unit
Plain	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Preprinted	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Letterhead	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Transparency	N	N	N	N	N	N
Prepunched	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Labels	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
Bond	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Recycled	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Color	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Cardstock ²	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Rough	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Envelope	N	N	N	N	N	N
Light ³	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Heavy ⁴	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Gloss	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

Table 7-5. Supported input media types (continued)

Input media types (PS string)	Tray 1	Tray 2 (500-sheet)	Tray 3 (500-sheet)	Tray 4 (1,500-sheet)	Tray 5 ¹ (4,000-sheet)	Duplexing unit
Heavy Gloss	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Non-HP Heavy Gloss	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Tough Paper (Gloss Film)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

¹ Tray 5 is optional for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.

² Tray 1 accepts cardstock between 164 g/m² (45 lb.) and 200 g/m² (53 lb.).

³ Light paper is less than 59 g/m² (16 lb.).

⁴ Heavy paper is supported between 91 g/m² (24 lb.) and 163 g/m² (43 lb.).

PCL 6 custom paper sizes

The following table shows custom paper sizes that are available for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.

Table 7-6. PCL 6 custom paper sizes

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 1 (multipurpose)	Width	100 mm (3.9 inches)	297 mm (11.71 inches)
	Height	148 mm (5.8 inches)	459 mm (18.07 inches)
Tray 2 (500-sheet)	Width	140 mm (5.5 inches)	297 mm (11.71 inches)
	Height	210 mm (8.3 inches)	459 mm (18.07 inches)
Tray 3 (500-sheet)	Width	140 mm (5.5 inches)	297 mm (11.71 inches)
	Height	210 mm (8.3 inches)	459 mm (18.07 inches)
Tray 4 (1,500-sheet)	Width	140 mm (5.5 inches)	297 mm (11.71 inches)
	Height	210 mm (8.3 inches)	459 mm (18.07 inches)
Tray 5 ¹ (4,000-sheet) Letter/A4	Width	182 mm (7.17 inches)	223 mm (8.78 inches)
	Height	257 mm (10.12 inches)	314 mm (12.36 inches)
Tray 5 ¹ (4,000-sheet) 11x17/A3	Width	195 mm (7.68 inches)	297 mm (11.77 inches)
	Height	210 mm (8.27 inches)	459 mm (18.07 inches)

Table 7-6. PCL 6 custom paper sizes (continued)

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Duplexing unit	Width	Custom sizes not supported	Custom sizes not supported
	Height	Custom sizes not supported	Custom sizes not supported

¹ Tray 5 is optional for the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp.

Paper type commands

The PCL 5e escape sequence for paper type is "Esc&n#Wdpapertype", where "n#" is the number of characters in the paper type plus 1. For example, in the sequence "Esc&n6WdPlain", "Plain" has 5 letters plus 1, for a total of 6.

Note

The PCL 5e driver is not available with the HP LaserJet 9055/9065mfp. However, PCL 5e commands are supported by the MFP.

For the command to work properly, at least one of the media trays in the product must be configured at the control panel for the paper type that is used in the command.

Note

Some paper type options listed in the following table might not be defined in the print driver.

Table 7-7. Paper-type commands

Esc&	n#	Wd	Paper type
Esc&	5	Wd	Bond
Esc&	10	Wd	Cardstock ¹
Esc&	6	Wd	Color
Esc&	5	Wd	Gloss
Esc&	5	Wd	Heavy
Esc&	11	Wd	Heavy Gloss
Esc&	10	Wd	Gloss Film ²
Esc&	7	Wd	Labels
Esc&	11	Wd	Letterhead
Esc&	5	Wd	Light
Esc&	15	Wd	NHP Heavy Gloss
Esc&	6	Wd	Plain
Esc&	11	Wd	Preprinted
Esc&	11	Wd	Prepunched
Esc&	9	Wd	Recycled
Esc&	6	Wd	Rough
Esc&	13	Wd	Transparency ³

Table 7-7. Paper-type commands (continued)

Esc&	n#	Wd	Paper type
Esc&	9	Wd	Envelope

- ¹ The correct command for cardstock is "Esc&n11WdCard Stock", with a space between the "d" and the "S", and with an uppercase "S".
- ² You must spell out the term "Gloss Film" in the string, although it is shown as TOUGHPAPER on the control panel.
- ³ You must spell out the word "Transparency" in the string, although it is abbreviated as TRNSPRNCY on the control panel.

Enabling or disabling HP Toolbox support

To start status manually, select the **Start|Run** menu, and type `HPSTATUS`.

Index

Symbols/Numerics

- % of Normal Size setting
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 94
 - unidrivers 181

A

- About button, PCL 6 traditional driver 124
- accessibility support in drivers 62
- accessibility, documentation 9
- accessories, automatic configuration 26
- ADA (Americans with Disabilities Act) compliance 9
- Add Printer installation 205
- Add Printer wizard 27
- administrator documentation 6, 11
- Adobe Acrobat Reader
 - availability by operating system 18
 - installing 6
 - printing PDF files without 26
 - viewing documentation 3
- Adobe Document Structuring Conventions (ADSC) 159
- Adobe Web site 133
- Advanced Printing Features setting, unidrivers 158
- Advanced tab
 - PS traditional driver 136
 - unidrivers 156
- alerts
 - HP Embedded Web Server 36, 38
 - HP Toolbox 45
- Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) compliance 9
- application settings
 - traditional drivers 73
 - unidrivers 153
- ASCII output protocol
 - PS traditional driver 148
- autorun CD-ROM, Windows 5

B

- Back Cover settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 99, 112
 - unidrivers 169, 176
- Back to Front printing, unidrivers 160
- Basics tab, PCL 6 traditional driver 122
- bidirectional communication
 - about 26
 - availability by operating system 17
 - driver support 62
 - Enterprise AutoConfiguration 27
 - PCL 6 traditional driver, configuring 126
- binary output protocol, HP traditional PS driver 148
- binding settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 83
 - unidrivers 186

- bins
 - custom paper sizes 104
 - driver support 70
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 89
 - PS traditional driver settings 150
 - unidriver settings 190, 202
- black, printing all text as
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 88
 - unidrivers 160
- booklet printing
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 83
 - Print Task Quick Set, PCL 6 traditional driver 81
 - Print Task Quick Set, unidrivers 166
 - unidriver settings 187
- browsers, required for HP Toolbox 40
- Bubble help 76

C

- Cable Connection dialog box, Windows 222
- cardstock
 - drivers supported 69
 - paper type commands 294
 - trays supported 292
- CD-ROM
 - documentation 6, 3
 - in-box file layout 14
 - installing Macintosh printing-system software 275
 - installing Windows printing-system software 4, 212
 - regional versions 15
- Change Current Destination Folder dialog box 263
- CHM files, viewing 9
- Choose Setup Language dialog box, Windows 215
- Client Driver Support dialog box, Customization Wizard 260
- Client Driver Support dialog box, Windows
 - Typical Installation 239
- collation settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver mopier settings 128
 - PS traditional driver 151
 - unidriver 157
 - unidrivers 157, 203
- command-line printing
 - FTP, Windows 56
 - local port, Windows 57
 - LPR 60
 - Macintosh 59
 - networks, Windows 58
 - UNIX 59
 - Windows 26
- command-line silent install for Windows 266
- commands, paper
 - size 291
 - source 288
 - type 293
- common installer, features 6
- Configuration Page, HP Embedded Web Server 32, 35
- Configure Device page, HP Embedded Web Server 36, 37
- Configure tab, PCL 6 traditional driver 126
- Connection type dialog box, Windows 221
- connectivity
 - bidirectional communication support 26
 - driver support 61
 - MFP features 2
 - Network Setup dialog box, Windows 220
 - Printer Connection dialog box, Windows 219
- constraint messages
 - driver support 63
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 75
 - unidrivers 154

- context-sensitive help
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 74
 - unidrivers 154
 - continuous export 31
 - control panel settings
 - traditional drivers 73
 - unidrivers 153
 - Copy Count setting
 - unidrivers 203
 - Copy Count settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 123
 - PS traditional driver 135, 151
 - unidrivers 157
 - Copy Monitor 36
 - covers, use different paper settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 99
 - unidrivers 169
 - Ctrl-D settings
 - PS traditional driver 149
 - Custom Installation 5
 - Custom Installation dialog box, Windows 243
 - custom installation for Windows 241
 - Custom Installer Location dialog box 262
 - custom paper sizes
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 99
 - sizes supported 68
 - custom preference recall support 65
 - custom Print Task Quick Sets
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 82
 - unidrivers 166
 - customer support 33
 - Customization Utility 17
 - Customization Wizard 13, 244
- D**
- datecode, firmware 32
 - default Print Task Quick Sets
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 78
 - unidrivers 162
 - default printer, setting 267
 - deleting Job Storage jobs 198
 - destinations, paper 287
 - Device Information page, HP Embedded Web Server 33, 36
 - Device Settings tab
 - PS traditional driver 146
 - unidrivers 198
 - Device Status page, HP Embedded Web Server 34
 - dialog boxes, printing-system software installation
 - Mac OS Classic 276
 - Mac OS X 282
 - Windows, Typical 212
 - DIMMs, fonts
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 131
 - unidriver settings 200
 - directory structure, software CD-ROM 14
 - disabling
 - driver features 30
 - HP Toolbox 294
 - disk space requirements
 - Macintosh and Linux 269
 - Windows 206
 - document layout features driver support 64
 - Document Options
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 82
 - unidrivers 158
 - document preview image, unidrivers 177
 - documentation
 - administrator 11
 - Help feature support 63
 - install notes 10
 - online, availability by operating system 18
 - Print Task Quick Set for use guide, PCL 6 traditional driver 82
 - Print Task Quick Set for use guide, unidriver 166
 - viewing 6, 3
 - wall poster 11
 - double-sided printing
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 82
 - unidriver settings 186
 - downloading
 - firmware 47
 - printing-system software 16
 - Driver Configuration dialog box, Customization Wizard 256
 - Driver Work Space (DWS) 132
 - drivers
 - accessibility support 62
 - accessing 4, 73
 - accessory configuration 26
 - Add Printer installation 205
 - availability by operating system 17
 - bidirectional communication support 62
 - bins supported 70
 - connectivity support 61
 - constraint messages 63
 - continuous export feature 31
 - custom preference recall support 65
 - document layout features support 64
 - Enterprise AutoConfiguration 27
 - Help feature support 63
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration support 31, 62
 - included 3, 7
 - installable options support 70
 - job storage support 65
 - job stream output support 61
 - Linux operating systems 8
 - lockable features 30
 - Macintosh 8
 - media supported 289
 - older, using with new products 7
 - paper sizes supported 67
 - paper source commands 288
 - paper types supported 68
 - Point and Print installation 266
 - Preconfiguration guide 12
 - print controls support 65
 - Print Quality options 87
 - PS traditional driver features 133
 - PS-specific features 71
 - settings 73, 153
 - standalone 16
 - stream output mode support 61
 - trays supported 69
 - UNIX operating systems 8
 - user interface support 62
 - watermarks support 66
 - See *also* PCL 6 traditional driver; PS traditional driver; PCL 6 unidriver; PS unidriver
 - duplexing unit
 - custom paper sizes 104
 - media supported 3, 291
 - models including 288
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 82
 - print modes 83
 - unidriver settings 186
 - DWS (Driver Work Space) 132

E

- e-mail alerts 36, 38
- ECM (Electronic Copy Monitor) 36
- EconoMode
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 88
 - unidrivers 178
- Edit Other Links page, HP Embedded Web Server 36
- Effects tab
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 92
 - unidrivers 179
- EIO cards, supported 2
- EIO Jetdirect page, printing 32
- Electronic Copy Monitor (ECM) 36
- Email Server page, HP Embedded Web Server 36
- embedded Web server. *See* HP Embedded Web Server
- Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) files, creating 159
- enhanced input/output. *See* HP Jetdirect EIO cards
- Enterprise AutoConfiguration
 - about 27
 - Novell NetWare operating systems supported 29
 - operating systems supported 18
 - Windows operating systems supported 27
- EPS support 61
- escape sequences
 - paper source 288
 - paper type 293
- euro character 26
- event log 33
- EWS. *See* HP Embedded Web Server
- exporting driver parameters 31
- External Fonts settings, PCL 6 unidriver 200

F

- Features dialog box, Windows
 - Customization Wizard 255
 - Typical Installation 236
- features, MFP 2
- file layout for software CD-ROM 14
- files added by Macintosh software 276
- Finishing tab
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 77
 - unidrivers 185
- firmware
 - datecode, locating 32
 - determining current level 47
 - downloading 47
 - FTP updates, Macintosh 52
 - FTP updates, Windows 48
 - HP Web Jetadmin updates 53
 - LPR command updates 53
 - Macintosh, updating 52
 - messages during update 50
 - troubleshooting updates 55
 - UNIX updates 52
 - updating remotely 26
 - verifying installation 54
 - Windows network updates 51
 - Windows, local port update 50
- First Page paper settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 108
 - unidrivers 173
- Flip Pages Up
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 83
 - unidriver settings 186
- Fold/Stitch settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 90
 - unidrivers 191
- folders added by Macintosh software 276

fonts

- configuring for watermarks 96
- DIMM settings, PCL 6 traditional driver 131
- DIMM settings, unidrivers 200
- DIMM support in drivers 70
- euro character 26
- External, PCL 6 unidriver 200
- installers 17
- Macintosh 271
- PS 3 emulation 133
- PS traditional driver settings 149
- Send TrueType as Bitmap, PCL 6 traditional driver 88
- Send TrueType as Bitmap, PCL 6 unidriver 160
- substitution table, PS traditional driver 148
- TrueType download option 71
- TrueType, PS unidriver settings 159
- unidriver settings 158
- Windows 206, 209
- Foreign Interface Harness connection (FIH) 2
- Form to Tray Assignment
 - PS traditional driver 147
 - unidrivers 199
- Front Cover settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 99
 - unidrivers 169
- Front to Back printing, unidrivers 160
- FTP
 - command-line printing, Windows 56
 - Macintosh command-line printing 59
 - Macintosh firmware updates 52
 - Windows firmware updates 48

G

- guides. *See* documentation

H

- hard disk
 - included 2
 - PS traditional driver settings 150
 - unidriver settings 202
- heavy paper
 - drivers supported 69
 - trays supported 292
 - type commands 294
- help
 - availability by operating system 18
 - Bubble 76
 - Macintosh 271
 - operating systems supported 63
 - PCL traditional drivers 74
 - PS traditional driver 134
 - unidrivers 154
- Hole Punch Unit
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 90, 128, 129
 - PS traditional driver settings 150
 - supported 3
 - unidriver settings 191, 202
- HP 3,000-Sheet Stapler/Stacker
 - paper supported 3
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 90, 129
 - PS traditional driver settings 150
 - unidriver settings 191, 202
- HP Device Installer Customization Wizard 13
- HP Driver Preconfiguration
 - driver support 62
 - operating systems and drivers supported 31
 - status, PCL 6 traditional driver 125
- HP Driver Preconfiguration guide 12

- HP Embedded Web Server
 - about 26, 271
 - alerts page 36
 - AutoSend page 36
 - Configuration Page 35
 - Configure Device page 36, 37
 - Device Information page 33, 36
 - Device Status page 34
 - Email Server page 36
 - HP Web Jetadmin 32
 - Information tab 32
 - language, setting 36
 - links 33, 36
 - navigation 32
 - Networking tab 32
 - Security page 36
 - Settings tab 32
 - time settings 36
 - user guide 12, 32
- HP Hole Punch Unit
 - Driver configuration 26
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 90, 128, 129
 - PS traditional driver settings 150
 - supported 3
 - unidriver settings 191, 202
- HP Instant Support 33
- HP Jetdirect administrator's guide 13
- HP Jetdirect EIO cards, supported 2
- HP Jetdirect page, printing 32
- HP LaserJet Screen Font Installer 280
- HP LaserJet Utility
 - availability by operating system 18
 - firmware updates 52
 - printing PDF files 59
- HP Multifunction Finisher
 - Driver configuration 26
 - paper supported 3
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 90, 129
 - PS traditional driver settings 150
 - unidriver settings 191, 202
- HP Network Registry Agent (HPNRA) 27
- HP Post Insertion Kit
 - PCL 6 traditional driver Back Cover settings 113
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 128
 - PS traditional driver settings 150
 - supported 3
 - unidriver Back Cover settings 176
 - unidriver settings 202
- HP Software License Agreement dialog box, Windows 218
- HP Toolbox
 - alerts, setting up 45
 - bidirectional communication 27
 - disabling 294
 - navigation 42
 - opening 42
 - operating systems supported 18, 40
 - Status Tab 42
- HP Web Jetadmin
 - about 22
 - availability by operating system 18
 - downloading 6
 - Driver Configuration Plugin 26
 - firmware updates 53
 - HP Embedded Web Server 32
 - operating systems supported 22
- HPNRA (HP Network Registry Agent) 27
- HTML files, viewing 9
- I**
 - IBM operating systems, supported 25
 - Identify Printer dialog box, Windows 225
 - Ignore Application Collation settings, PCL 6 traditional driver 128
 - Image Shift settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 90
 - unidrivers 191
 - inches, settings 105
 - Include types in application source list option in drivers 132
 - Incompatible Print Settings messages. *See* constraint messages
 - INF file
 - Add Printer 17
 - Information tab, HP Embedded Web Server 32
 - input trays. *See* trays
 - install notes 10
 - Installable Options
 - PS traditional driver 149
 - PS unidriver 201
 - installation
 - Add Printer 205
 - Adobe Acrobat Reader 6
 - command-line silent 266
 - custom option 241
 - Customization wizard 13
 - dialog boxes, Mac OS Classic 276
 - dialog boxes, Mac OS X 282
 - dialog boxes, Windows 212
 - Installer Customization Wizard for Windows 244
 - Macintosh printing-system software 275
 - Point and Print 266
 - system requirements for Macintosh and Linux operating systems 269
 - system requirements for Windows operating systems 206
 - Windows printing-system software 212
 - Installation Type dialog box, Windows 234
 - installers
 - availability by operating system 17
 - common, features 6
 - customizing 244
 - fonts 17
 - Screen Fonts, Macintosh 280
 - Instant Support 33
 - IP address, locating 32
 - IP Settings dialog box, Customization Wizard 252
- J**
 - Jetadmin. *See* HP Web Jetadmin
 - Jetdirect EIO cards, supported 2
 - Job Storage
 - deleting jobs 198
 - enabling in PCL 6 traditional driver 130
 - operating systems supported 65
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 115
 - PS traditional driver settings 142
 - releasing jobs 120, 198
 - unidriver settings 192, 203
 - using 120, 145
 - job stream output support 61
 - Job Timeout settings, PS traditional driver 149
- L**
 - landscape orientation settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 83, 123
 - unidrivers 186, 189
 - Language dialog box, Customization Wizard 246

- languages
 - Choose Setup Language dialog box, Windows 215
 - HP Embedded Web Server 36
 - key to abbreviations 20, 21
 - localization of software components 19
 - printing-system software 15
- Last Page paper settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 111
 - unidrivers 175
- Layout Options, unidrivers 160
- license agreement dialog box, Windows 218
- light paper 292
- light paper, drivers supported 69
- links, HP Embedded Web Server 33, 36
- Linux operating systems
 - availability of software components 17
 - driver availability 8
 - MFP support Web site 270
 - model scripts 17
 - system requirements 269
- local port command line printing, Windows 57
- localization, software components 15, 19
- lockable features, drivers 30
- LPR commands
 - firmware updates 53
 - printing PDF files 60

M

- Macintosh operating systems
 - availability of software components 17
 - command-line printing 56, 59
 - components, software 270
 - dialog boxes, Mac OS Classic printing-system software installation 276
 - dialog boxes, Mac OS X printing-system software installation 282
 - directory structure, software CD-ROM 15
 - driver versions 8
 - files and folders added by installation 276
 - firmware, updating 52
 - fonts supported 271
 - HP Embedded Web Server 271
 - install notes 271
 - installers 17
 - installing printing-system software 275
 - network setup 274, 276
 - online help 271
 - PDEs 270
 - PPDs 270
 - printing PDF files with HP LaserJet Utility 59
 - Screen Fonts installer 280
 - setting up MFPs with Mac OS X 275
 - supported 25
 - system requirements 269
 - uninstalling printing-system software 276
- manuals. *See* documentation
- margins, PCL 6 driver 291
- measurement units 105
- media. *See* paper
- memory
 - installable options support 70
 - installation requirements for Macintosh and Linux operating systems 269
 - installation requirements for Windows operating systems 206
 - MFP features 2
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 132
 - PS traditional driver settings 148, 150
 - unidriver settings 202

- messages, constraint
 - driver support 63
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 75
 - unidrivers 154
- MFP control panel settings
 - traditional drivers 73
 - unidrivers 153
- MFP features 2
- Microsoft Point and Print installation 266
- millimeters, settings 105
- Mirrored Output setting, PS unidriver 159
- Model dialog box, Windows
 - Customization Wizard 254
 - Typical Installation 233
- model scripts, UNIX 8
- moire effect, handling 88
- Mopier settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 128
 - PS traditional driver 151
 - unidriver 203
- More Configuration Options, PCL 6 traditional driver 130
- MS EMF output support 61
- Multifunction Finisher
 - Driver configuration 26
 - paper supported 3
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 90, 129
 - PS traditional driver settings 150
 - unidriver settings 191, 202
- multipurpose tray, media supported 3

N

- name printer dialog box
 - Customization Wizard 258
 - Typical Installation 237
- Negative Output setting, PS unidriver 159
- Network Configuration Options dialog box, Windows 230
- Network Setup dialog box, Windows 220
- Networking tab, HP Embedded Web Server 32
- networks
 - accessories supported 23
 - bidirectional communication support 61
 - bidirectional communications 18
 - command line printing 58
 - Communication Mode dialog box, Windows 232
 - EIO Jetdirect page, printing 32
 - firmware updates 51
 - HP Jetdirect administrator's guide 13
 - HP Jetdirect EIO cards, supported 2
 - Macintosh setup 274, 276
 - Point and Print installation 266
 - Recommended Network Setup dialog box, Windows 224
 - settings 39
 - Windows printing-system software installation 212
- New IPX Port dialog box, Customization Wizard 253
- Novell NetWare operating systems
 - Enterprise AutoConfiguration support 29
 - Toolbox support 41
- NT Forms tab, PCL 6 traditional driver 125
- number of copies, setting
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 123
 - PS traditional driver 135, 151
 - unidrivers 157, 203

O

- online help. *See* help

- operating systems
 - availability of software components 17
 - bidirectional communication support 62
 - bins supported 70
 - constraints support 63
 - custom preference recall support 65
 - document layout features support 64
 - Enterprise AutoConfiguration support 27
 - Help feature support 63
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration support 62
 - installable options support 70
 - job storage support 65
 - job stream output support 61
 - localization, software components 19
 - paper sizes supported 67
 - paper types supported 68
 - print controls support 65
 - PS driver support 71
 - standalone drivers 16
 - stream output mode support 61
 - supported 25
 - Toolbox support 40
 - trays supported 69
 - user interface support 62
 - watermarks support 66
- Optimizations option, PCL 6 unidriver 158
- Optional Paper Destinations settings, PCL 6 traditional driver 129
- Optional Paper Sources, PCL 6 traditional driver 129
- ordering supplies 6, 36
- orientation settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 83, 123
 - PS traditional driver 135
 - unidrivers 186, 189
- Other Pages paper settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 110
 - unidrivers 174
- output accessories, enabling
 - PS traditional driver 150
 - unidrivers 202
- Output Protocol settings, PS traditional driver 148
- Output Settings, PCL 6 traditional driver 87
- Output tab
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 89
 - unidrivers 190

P

- Page Order settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 86
 - unidrivers 160, 188
- page orientation settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 83, 123
 - PS traditional driver 135
 - unidrivers 186, 189
- Page Setup tab, PS traditional driver 135
- pages per minute 2
- Pages per Sheet settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 83
 - unidrivers 188
- paper
 - custom sizes 292
 - custom sizes, PCL 6 traditional driver settings 99
 - Include types in application source list setting 132
 - margins 291
 - margins, PCL 6 driver 291
 - Pages per Sheet settings, PCL 6 traditional driver 83
 - Pages per Sheet settings, unidrivers 188
 - Print Document On settings, PCL 6 traditional driver 93
 - Print Document On settings, unidrivers 180
 - Print on Both Sides settings, unidrivers 186
 - Print on Both Sides, PCL 6 traditional driver 82
 - PS traditional driver settings 135
 - size commands 291
 - Size is settings, PCL 6 traditional driver 99
 - Size is settings, unidrivers 167
 - sizes supported 67
 - source commands 288
 - Source is settings, PCL 6 traditional driver 100
 - Source is settings, unidrivers 168
 - sources and destinations 287
 - trays included 3
 - trays supported 69
 - type commands 293
 - Type is settings, PCL 6 traditional driver 99
 - Type is settings, unidrivers 167
 - types and sizes supported 289
 - types supported 68, 291
- Paper Handling Options, PCL 6 traditional driver 127
- Paper Options
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 99
 - unidrivers 167
- paper trays. *See* trays
- Paper/Quality tab, unidrivers 161
- parallel connections, supported 2, 61
- PCL 5 driver
 - paper source commands 288
 - paper type commands 293
- PCL 6 traditional driver
 - about 7
 - About button 124
 - Basics tab 122
 - bidirectional communication support 62
 - bins supported 70
 - Configuration Status 125
 - Configure tab 126
 - connectivity support 61
 - constraints support 63
 - custom preference recall support 65
 - document layout features support 64
 - Document Options 82
 - Effects tab 92
 - features 73
 - Finishing tab 77
 - Help feature support 63
 - Help system 74
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration support 31
 - Include types in application source list setting 132
 - installable options support 70
 - Job Storage 115
 - job storage support 65
 - Job Storage, enabling 130
 - job stream output support 61
 - margins 291
 - memory settings 132
 - Mopier Enabled settings 128
 - More Configuration Options 130
 - NT Forms tab 125
 - operating systems supported 17
 - Optional Paper Destinations 129
 - Optional Paper Sources 129
 - Output Settings 87
 - Paper Handling Options 127
 - Paper Options 99
 - paper size commands 291
 - paper sizes supported 67
 - paper types supported 68
 - preconfiguration support 62
 - print controls support 65

- Print Quality Details settings 87
- Print Task Quick Sets 77
- PS 3 font emulation 133
- stream output mode support 61
- trays supported 69
- user interface support 62
- Watermarks settings 94
- watermarks support 66
- PCL 6 traditional driver and unidriver
 - custom paper sizes 292
 - media supported 289
- PCL 6 unidriver
 - accessing 153
 - Advanced tab 156
 - bidirectional communication support 62
 - bins supported 70
 - connectivity support 61
 - constraints support 63
 - Copy Count settings 157
 - custom preference recall support 65
 - Device Settings tab 198
 - document layout features support 64
 - Document Options 158
 - document preview image 177
 - Effects tab 179
 - External Fonts settings 200
 - features 153
 - Finishing tab 185
 - Font DIMM Installer 200
 - font settings 158
 - Form to Tray Assignment 199
 - Help feature support 63
 - Help system 154
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration support 31
 - Installable Options 201
 - installable options support 70
 - Job Storage 192
 - job storage support 65
 - job stream output support 61
 - Layout Options 160
 - Mopier settings 203
 - operating systems supported 17
 - Paper Options 167
 - paper sizes supported 67
 - paper types supported 68
 - Paper/Quality tab 161
 - preconfiguration support 62
 - print controls support 65
 - Print Optimizations option 158
 - Print Quality group box 178
 - Print Task Quick Sets 162
 - Resizing Options 180
 - stream output mode support 61
 - trays supported 69
 - unidriver 7
 - user interface support 62
 - Watermarks settings 181
 - watermarks support 66
- PCL documents, printing 33
- PDEs (Printer Dialog Extensions) 270
- PDF files
 - command-line printing 26
 - LPR commands, printing 60
 - printing using HP Embedded Web Server 33
 - printing with HP LaserJet Utility, Macintosh 59
 - viewing 3
- Percentage of Normal Size setting
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 94
 - unidrivers 181
- PINs, Job Storage
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 118
 - PS traditional driver 143
- PINs, using for private jobs
 - unidrivers 195
- Point and Print installation, Windows printing-system software 266
- port selection dialog box, Windows
 - Customization Wizard 248
 - Typical Installation 221
- portrait orientation settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 83, 123
 - unidrivers 186, 189
- Post Insertion Kit
 - PCL 6 traditional driver Back Cover settings 113
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 128
 - PS traditional driver settings 150
 - supported 3
 - unidriver Back Cover settings 176
 - unidriver settings 202
- poster, documentation 11
- PostScript Device settings
 - traditional driver 148
- PostScript Error Handler, PS unidriver 159
- PostScript Language Level, PS unidriver settings 159
- PostScript Options, HP PS unidriver 158
- PostScript Passthrough, PS unidriver 204
- PPD (PS Printer Description) files 17, 270
- Preconfiguration. See HP Driver Preconfiguration
 - preconfiguration
 - status, PCL 6 traditional driver 125
- Preparing to Install dialog box, Windows 216
- preview image
 - unidrivers 177
- Print All Text as Black
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 88
 - unidrivers 160
- print controls support in drivers 65
- Print Document On settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 93
 - unidrivers 180
- print drivers. See drivers
- Print Job Management dialog box, Windows 223
- print modes 83
- Print on Both Sides
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 82
 - unidriver settings 186
- Print Optimizations option, PCL 6 unidriver 158
- Print Page Borders settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 86
 - unidrivers 188
- Print Quality Details, PCL 6 traditional driver 87
- Print Quality group box
 - unidrivers 178
- Print Quality options in drivers 87
- Print Task Quick Sets,
 - Driver configuration 65
 - operating systems supported 65
- Print Task Quick Sets, PCL 6 traditional driver
 - about 77
 - booklet printing 81
 - custom 82
 - defaults 78
 - use guide 82

- Print Task Quick Sets, unidriver use guide 166
- Print Task Quick Sets, unidrivers
 - about 162
 - booklet printing 166
 - custom 166
 - defaults 162
- Printer Connection dialog box, Typical Installation 219
- Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs) 270
- Printer Location and Comment dialog box, Windows
 - Customization Wizard 261
 - Typical Installation 240
- Printer Name dialog box, Windows
 - Customization Wizard 258
 - Typical Installation 237
- Printer Port dialog box, Customization Wizard 248
- Printer Sharing dialog box, Windows
 - Customization Wizard 259
 - Typical Installation 238
- printer, setting default 267
- printing
 - files, using HP Embedded Web Server 33
 - Quick Reference Guide 10
- Private job settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 118
 - PS traditional driver 142
 - unidrivers 195
- PRN files, printing 33
- product support 33
- Proof and Hold job settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 117
 - PS traditional driver 142
 - unidrivers 194
- protocols
 - configuring 40
 - PS traditional driver 148
- PS 3 font emulation 133
- PS documents, printing 33
- PS fonts 18, 209
- PS Printer Description (PPD) files 17, 270
- PS traditional driver
 - about 7
 - accessing 133
 - Advanced tab 136
 - bidirectional communication support 62
 - bins supported 70
 - connectivity support 61
 - constraints support 63
 - Ctrl-D settings 149
 - custom preference recall support 65
 - Device Settings tab 146
 - document layout features support 64
 - features 71, 133
 - font settings 149
 - Form to Tray Assignment 147
 - help 134
 - Help feature support 63
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration support 31
 - Installable Options 149
 - installable options support 70
 - job storage support 65
 - job stream output support 61
 - Mopier settings 151
 - operating systems supported 17
 - Output Protocol settings 148
 - Page Setup tab 135
 - paper sizes supported 67
 - paper types supported 68
 - PostScript Device settings 148
 - PostScript Memory settings 148
 - preconfiguration support 62
 - print controls support 65
 - stream output mode support 61
 - timeout settings 149
 - trays supported 69
 - user interface support 62
 - watermarks support 66
- PS traditional driver and unidriver
 - media supported 289
 - paper source commands 288
- PS unidriver
 - about 7
 - accessing 153
 - Advanced tab 156
 - bidirectional communication support 62
 - bins supported 70
 - connectivity support 61
 - constraints support 63
 - Copy Count settings 157
 - custom preference recall support 65
 - Device Settings tab 198
 - document layout features support 64
 - Document Options 158
 - document preview image 177
 - Effects tab 179
 - features 71, 153
 - Finishing tab 185
 - Font DIMM Installer 200
 - font settings 158
 - Form to Tray Assignment 199
 - Help feature support 63
 - Help system 154
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration support 31
 - Installable Options 201
 - installable options support 70
 - Job Storage 192
 - job storage support 65
 - job stream output support 61
 - Layout Options 160
 - Mopier settings 203
 - operating systems supported 17
 - Paper Options 167
 - paper sizes supported 67
 - paper types supported 68
 - Paper/Quality tab 161
 - PostScript Options 158
 - PostScript Passthrough 204
 - preconfiguration support 62
 - print controls support 65
 - Print Quality group box 178
 - Print Task Quick Sets 162
 - Resizing Options 180
 - stream output mode support 61
 - trays supported 69
 - user interface support 62
 - Watermarks settings 181
 - watermarks support 66
- Punch Unit
 - Driver configuration 26
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 90, 128, 129
 - PS traditional driver settings 150
 - supported 3
 - unidriver settings 191, 202

- Q**
- Quick Copy job settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 118
 - PS traditional driver 143
 - unidrivers 195
 - Quick Reference Guide, viewing or printing 9
 - Quick Sets. *See* Print Task Quick Sets
- R**
- RAW output support 61
 - Ready to Install dialog box, Windows 241
 - Recommended Network Setup dialog box, Windows 224
 - regional versions for printing-system software 15
 - releasing Job Storage jobs 120, 198
 - remote firmware updates
 - about 26
 - determining current firmware level 47
 - downloading 47
 - FTP 48
 - HP Web Jetadmin 53
 - LPR commands 53
 - Macintosh 52
 - messages 50
 - troubleshooting 55
 - UNIX 52
 - verifying installation 54
 - Windows network 51
 - Windows, using local port 50
 - Resizing Options, unidrivers 180
 - resolution
 - MFP features 3
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 87
 - RFU. *See* remote firmware updates
 - RTF files, viewing 9
- S**
- Scale Patterns (WYSIWYG) feature 88
 - Scale to Fit setting
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 93
 - unidrivers 180
 - Screen Fonts installer, Macintosh 280
 - screen-readable documentation 9
 - Security page, HP Embedded Web Server 36
 - Select Printer dialog box 227
 - Select printer dialog box, Windows 228
 - Send Ctrl-D settings, PS traditional driver 149
 - Send PostScript Error Handler, PS unidriver 159
 - Send TrueType as Bitmaps
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 88
 - PCL 6 unidriver 160
 - serial number 33
 - Set Network Communication Mode dialog box, Windows 232
 - settings
 - continuous export 31
 - custom preference recall support 65
 - locking 30
 - overriding 73, 153
 - Print Task Quick Sets, PCL 6 traditional driver 77
 - Print Task Quick Sets, unidrivers 162
 - Settings tab, HP Embedded Web Server 32
 - shading, configuring for watermarks 184
 - sharing setup dialog box, Windows
 - Customization Wizard 259
 - Typical Installation 238
 - silent installation
 - command-line 266
 - Customization Wizard 244
 - sizes, paper
 - commands 291
 - custom 292
 - margins 291
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 99
 - Print on Both Sides settings, unidrivers 186
 - Print on Both sides, PCL 6 traditional driver 82
 - PS traditional driver settings 135
 - supported 67, 289
 - unidriver settings 167
 - Smoothing settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 88
 - unidrivers 160
 - Source is settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 100
 - unidrivers 168
 - sources, paper. *See* trays
 - Specify Printer dialog box, Windows 250
 - speed, MFP features 2
 - standalone drivers 16
 - Stapler/Stacker
 - paper supported 3
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 90, 129
 - PS traditional driver settings 150
 - unidriver settings 191, 202
 - status
 - alerts, HP Toolbox 45
 - devices 34
 - supplies 33
 - Status Tab, HP Toolbox 42
 - Stored job settings
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 118
 - PS traditional driver 143
 - unidrivers 195
 - stream output mode support 61
 - substitution table for fonts, PS traditional driver 148
 - supplies
 - AutoSend page, HP Embedded Web Server 36
 - ordering 6, 36
 - status, viewing with HP Toolbox 42
 - usage AutoSend page 36
 - viewing status 33
 - support, product 33
 - system requirements
 - Macintosh and Linux 269
 - Windows 206
- T**
- TBCP output protocol, PS traditional driver 148
 - TCP/IP address, locating 32
 - text, printing all as black
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 88
 - unidriver 160
 - time settings, HP Embedded Web Server 36
 - timeout settings, PS traditional driver 149
 - toner 3
 - Toolbox
 - alerts, setting up 45
 - bidirectional communication 27
 - disabling 294
 - navigation 42
 - opening 42
 - operating systems supported 40
 - Status tab 42
 - traditional drivers. *See* PCL 6 traditional driver; PS traditional driver

- traditional PCL 6 driver
 - Print Quality group box 87
 - traditional PS driver
 - Print Quality group box 87
 - transparencies
 - drivers supported 68
 - paper type commands 294
 - trays supported 292
 - trays
 - autoconfiguration 26
 - configurations 288
 - custom paper sizes 104
 - drivers supported 69
 - included 3, 287
 - installable options support 70
 - Installable Options, PS traditional driver 149
 - Installable Options, unidrivers 202
 - media supported 291
 - paper source commands 288
 - paper type commands 293
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 129
 - PS traditional driver Form to Tray Assignment 147
 - Source is settings, PCL 6 traditional driver 100
 - Source is settings, unidrivers 168
 - unidriver Form to Tray Assignment 199
 - Windows NT configuration 125
 - troubleshooting firmware updates 55
 - TrueType font settings
 - PS traditional driver 149
 - PS unidriver 159
 - Send as Bitmap, PCL 6 traditional driver 88
 - Send as Bitmap, PCL 6 unidriver 160
 - substitution table, PS traditional driver 148
 - unidriver 158
 - two-sided printing
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 82
 - unidriver settings 186
 - types, paper
 - driver support 68
 - Include in application source list setting 132
 - PCL 6 traditional driver settings 99
 - Print on Both Sides settings, unidrivers 186
 - Print on Both sides, PCL 6 traditional driver 82
 - unidriver settings 167
 - types, paper supported 291
 - Typical Installation
 - choosing 5
 - dialog boxes, Windows 212
- U**
- unattended installation
 - command-line 266
 - Customization Wizard 244
 - unidrivers
 - accessing 153
 - Advanced tab 156
 - automatic configuration 27
 - bidirectional communication support 62
 - bins supported 70
 - connectivity support 61
 - constraint messages 154
 - constraints support 63
 - Copy Count settings 157
 - custom preference recall support 65
 - Device Settings tab 198
 - document layout features support 64
 - Document Options 158
 - document preview image 177
 - Effects tab 179
 - features 153
 - Finishing tab 185
 - Font DIMM Installer 200
 - Form to Tray Assignment 199
 - Help feature support 63
 - Help system 154
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration 31
 - Installable Options 201
 - Job Storage 192
 - job storage support 65
 - job stream output support 61
 - Layout Options 160
 - Mopier settings 203
 - operating systems supported 17
 - Paper Options 167
 - paper sizes supported 67
 - Paper/Quality tab 161
 - preconfiguration support 62
 - print controls support 65
 - Print Task Quick Sets 162
 - Resizing Options 180
 - stream output mode support 61
 - trays supported 69
 - user interface support 62
 - Watermarks settings 181
 - watermarks support 66
 - uninstalling Macintosh printing-system software 276
 - units of measurement 105
 - UNIX operating systems
 - availability of software components 17
 - command-line printing 59
 - driver availability 8
 - model scripts 17
 - remote firmware update 52
 - Update Now feature 27
 - updating firmware remotely. *See* remote firmware update
 - usage page 33
 - Use Different Paper/Covers
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 99
 - unidrivers 169
- W**
- Wait Timeout settings
 - PS traditional driver 149
 - wall poster, viewing 11
 - Watermarks settings
 - drivers supported 66
 - PCL 6 traditional driver 94
 - unidrivers 181
 - Web Jetadmin. *See* HP Web Jetadmin
 - Web sites
 - Adobe 133
 - downloading software 16
 - firmware download 47
 - HP Embedded Web Server 32
 - HP Embedded Web Server links 33
 - HP Web Jetadmin 22
 - links, HP Embedded Web Server 36
 - Linux product support 270
 - support links 6
 - UNIX model scripts 8
 - Weekly Timer 36
 - Welcome dialog box, Windows
 - Customization Wizard 246
 - Typical Installation 217

- What's this? Help
 - PS traditional driver 134
 - unidrivers 154
- Windows operating systems
 - availability of software components 17
 - CD-ROM, print system 4
 - command-line printing 56
 - command-line printing, local port 57
 - command-line printing, networks 58
 - custom installation, printing-system software 241
 - default printer, setting 267
 - dialog boxes, Typical Installation 212
 - directory structure, software CD-ROM 14
 - driver versions 7
 - Enterprise AutoConfiguration support 27
 - fonts supported 206
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration support 31
 - Installer Customization Wizard 244
 - installers 17
 - installing printing software 212
 - LPR commands 60
 - NT Forms tab, PCL 6 traditional driver 125
 - PCL 6 traditional driver features 73
 - Point and Print installation 266
 - PS fonts supported 209
 - PS traditional driver features 133
 - remote firmware update 50
 - supported 25
 - system requirements 206
 - Toolbox support 40
 - unidriver features 153
 - versions supported 205



i n v e n t

© 2004 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, LP

www.hp.com